Your Owner's Manual

Digital version available on the Internet

http://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals

Tutorial videos

After reading in the following reference or the QR code, the website with the vehicle offer is displayed. By selecting the desired vehicle, the website with video instructions for selected vehicle functions is displayed.

http://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals

ŠKODA OCTAVIA 11.2020
Angličtina/English
V1, R1, RoW, en_GB
5E3012720AD

OWNER´S MANUAL

ŠKODA OCTAVIA

ŠKODA
SIMPLY CLEVER



Documentation of vehicle delivery
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

Date of vehicle delivery _____ / _____ / _____

ŠKODA Partner

Stamp and signature of the vendor

I confirm that I have taken delivery of the vehicle in good condition, have received information on how to operate it correctly, and have had the terms of the warranty explained to me.

Signature of the customer

Does the vehicle have an extended warranty?

☐ **YES**

☐ **NO**

Limitations of the ŠKODA extended warranty[a)]

Years: _____

or

km: _____

or

Miles: _____

[a)] Depending on which comes first.

5E3012720AD

Reprinting, reproduction or translation, either in whole or in part, is not permitted without the written consent of ŠKODA AUTO a.s..

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. expressly reserves all rights relating to copyright laws.

Subject to change.

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

© ŠKODA AUTO a.s. 2020

Vehicle owner

1. Vehicle owner

This vehicle with the official registration number

_____

belongs to (Title, Name / Company)

_____

_____

Address:

_____

_____

_____

Telephone:

_____

ŠKODA Partner

2. Vehicle owner

This vehicle with the official registration number

_____

belongs to (Title, Name / Company)

_____

_____

Address:

_____

_____

_____

Telephone:

_____

ŠKODA Partner

Service consultant:

_____

Telephone:

_____

Service consultant:

_____

Telephone:

_____

Table of Contents

1 Vehicle owner

5 About the Owner's Manual

6 About the Owner's Manual

6 Tutorial videos

7 Explanations

7 Digital Instructions in Vehicle Infotainment

7 Application Quick Start Guide

8 Vehicle overviews

8 Front vehicle area
10 Rear vehicle area
11 Driver's seat
11 Centre console and passenger seat
12 Engine compartment

12 Warning lights

12 Functionality
12 Warning lights overview

16 Correct and safe

16 Introductory notes for correct use
16 New vehicle or new parts
16 Regular checks
16 Improper vehicle adjustments
16 Keep sensors and cameras functional
17 Engine compartment
17 Handling operating fluids
17 12 volt vehicle battery
17 Use electrical sockets in the vehicle
17 Before your journey
18 Sitting safely
18 Correct belt webbing arrangement
18 Correct steering wheel position
18 Securing children properly
19 Transporting objects safely
19 Safe driving
20 Stop the vehicle safely!
20 Exiting the vehicle
20 Deviating weather conditions
20 Emergency call
21 After an accident

23 Keys, locks and alarm system

23 Key
24 Central locking
25 Keyless locking (KESSY)
26 Alarm system

27 Doors, windows and boot lid

27 Doors
27 Child safety lock on the rear doors
28 Window - with electrical operation
29 Sliding/tilting roof
30 Sunblind - with electrical operation
30 Sunblind for the rear window
30 Sun protection roller blinds for the rear door panes
31 Sun visors
31 Boot lid - with manual operation
31 Boot lid - with electrical control
32 Electrically operated contactless boot lid
33 Unlocking the boot lid

34 Seats, steering wheel and mirror

34 Front seat - with manual operation
34 Front seat - with electrical operation
35 Memory function of the seat
36 Seat massage function
36 Rear seats
37 Folding the backrests forward from the luggage compartment
37 Park position of rear seat belts
37 Headrests
37 Sleep package
38 Front armrest
38 Rear armrest
38 Load-through device
38 Steering wheel
39 Interior rear-view mirror
39 Wing mirror

41 Restraint systems and airbags

41 Seat belts
42 Child seat
43 Fasteners for child seats
45 Airbags
46 Key switch for the front passenger airbag

48 Lighting, windscreen wipers and washers

48 Exterior lighting
51 COMING HOME, LEAVING HOME exterior lighting
51 Light Assist high-beam assist system
51 Dynamic Light Assist headlight assist system
52 Interior lighting
53 Interior ambient light
54 Windscreen wipers and washers

56 Heating and air conditioning system

56 Manual air conditioning
57 Climatronic automatic air conditioning system
60 Auxiliary heating and ventilation
62 Heated windscreen
62 Seat heating and ventilation
63 Heated steering wheel

64 Driver information system

64 Analogue instrument cluster
65 Digital instrument cluster
66 Head-Up display
66 Driving data
68 Vehicle status

68 Button SET

69 Infotainment Swing
69 Infotainment overview
69 System
70 Screen
70 Infotainment keyboard
71 Control centre
72 Radio
75 Media
78 Mobile device management
79 Telephone
81 Wi-Fi
82 SmartLink

85 Infotainment Bolero
85 Infotainment overview
85 System
86 Screen
87 Infotainment keyboard
88 Voice control
89 Control centre
90 Radio
94 Media
98 Mobile device management
99 Telephone
102 Wi-Fi
104 SmartLink
106 Navigation

111 Infotainment Columbus
111 Infotainment overview
111 System
112 Screen
114 Keypad
115 Voice control
116 Control centre
116 Radio
120 Media
124 Mobile device management
125 Telephone
128 Wi-Fi
130 SmartLink
133 Navigation

138 Online Services
138 ŠKODA Connect
138 ŠKODA Connect application
139 User registration and activation of the ŠKODA Connect services
139 Setting personal data protection
140 User management
142 Personalisation
142 Management of online services
143 eSIM data connection
143 Online System Update
144 Shop
145 Information call
145 Breakdown call
146 Service schedules
146 Vehicle status report
146 Remote access to the vehicle

147 Starting and driving
147 Start
147 Starting issues
147 START STOP
148 Manual gearbox
148 Automatic gearbox
150 Vehicle driving mode
151 Economical driving style
151 Towing a trailer
153 Towing eye and towing procedure
154 Brakes
154 Electric parking brake
155 Auto Hold automatic holding function

156 Driver assist systems
156 Braking and stabilising systems
157 Front Assist
158 Pedestrian detection system
158 Speed limiter
159 Cruise control system
160 Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
163 Lane Assist
164 Travel Assist
164 Lane change assist system Side Assist
165 Traffic sign recognition
166 Crew Protect Assist proactive occupant protection
167 Driver Alert fatigue detection assistant
167 Emergency situation assist systemEmergency Assist
167 Hill descent assistant
168 Automatic recuperation assistant Eco Assist

169 Park Assist systems
169 Park Pilot parking aid
170 Rear view camera
171 Area View, Top View
172 Rear Traffic Alert
172 Exit warning
173 Park steering assistant

175 Engine, exhaust system and fuel
175 Bonnet
175 Engine oil
176 Coolant
178 Engine electronics
178 Particle filter
178 Exhaust control system
178 Fuel filter
178 Radiator blinds
179 Fuel filler flap
179 AdBlue
180 Petrol
181 Diesel
182 CNG (compressed natural gas)

185 12 volt vehicle battery and fuses
185 12 volt vehicle battery
186 Using the jump-starting cable
187 Fuses
187 Fuses in the dash panel
189 Fuses in the engine compartment

190 Wheels
190 Tyres and rims
191 All-season or winter tires
191 Snow chains
191 Spare and emergency spare wheel
192 Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle
194 Breakdown kit
195 Tyre pressure
195 Tyre pressure monitor
196 Wheel bolt cover caps
196 Full wheel frame

197 Storage space and interior equipment
197 Equipment in the boot
197 Emergency equipment
198 Tool kit
198 Storage compartment for the reflective vest
198 Fasteners in the boot
200 Bag hooks in the boot
201 Storage compartment with Cargoelements in the boot
201 Cargo elements in the luggage compartment
201 Fastening nets
201 Multifunctional pocket
202 Net partition
203 Double-sided floor covering
203 Rigid boot cover
204 Roll-up luggage compartment cover
204 Variable loading floor in the boot
205 Partition in the boot
206 Partition with fastening element in the boot
206 Through-loading bag
206 Interior equipment front
207 Interior equipment rear
207 Storage pocket for phone
207 Car park ticket holder
208 Bottle tray in the storage compartment of the front door
208 Bottle tray in the storage compartment of the rear door
208 USB-connections
209 Hook on the centre body pillar
209 Glasses compartment
209 Pen holder
209 Storage compartment for cards in the storage area on the driver's side
209 Storage compartment under the front seat
210 Storage compartment for an umbrella
210 Storage compartment for hand brush
210 Phonebox
211 Cup holder
211 Cup holder Easy Open
211 Multimedia holder
211 Waste container
211 Ceiling
211 Tablet holder
212 12-Volt power socket
213 230-Volt power socket
213 230 volt socket and USB connections
213 48-volt battery
214 Storage compartment with air outlet nozzle

214 Roof rack and hitch
214 Roof rack
214 Swivelling hitch

217 Maintaining and cleaning
217 Service events
217 Service work, adjustments and technical changes
218 Interior
219 Exterior
220 Ice scraper

221 Technical data and specifications
221 Requirements for the technical data
221 Vehicle identification data
221 Maximum permissible weights
222 Operating weight
223 Vehicle dimensions
224 Engine specifications
227 Accident data recorder (Event Data Recorder)
228 Personal data
228 Information about the radio systems in the vehicle
229 Rights arising from defective performance, ŠKODA warranties

231 Index

About the Owner's Manual

General points
This Owner's Manual applies to all **chassis variants** of the vehicle, including all **models** and **trim levels**.

All possible **trim levels** are described here without identifying them as special trims, model variants or market-dependent equipment. This means that **not all the trim components** described in this Owner's Manual are available in your vehicle.

The **Illustrations** in these operating instructions are purely illustrative and are to be understood as general information. The illustrations may differ from your vehicle.

ŠKODA AUTO is constantly working on the further development of all vehicles. It is therefore possible for changes to be made at any time to the scope of delivery in terms of shape, equipment and technology. The information contained in this Owner's Manual corresponds to the information available at the time of going to press.

No legal claims can therefore be derived from the technical data, illustrations and information in this Owner's Manual.

Digital version of the Owner's Manual
Keeping environmental protection in mind, the printed Owner's Manual only contains the most important information regarding vehicle operation and vehicle maintenance.

The digital version of the Owner's Manual includes full information regarding vehicle operation.

The digital version is available at the following places:

- On the ŠKODA web pages
- In the mobile application MyŠKODA
- In Infotainment Columbus

http://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals

Digital version of the Owner's Manual in Infotainment
Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.

The digital version of the Owner's Manual can be displayed in the Infotainment in the menu MENU > as follows.

Tutorial videos
After reading in the following reference or the QR code, the website with the vehicle offer is displayed. By selecting the desired vehicle, the website with video instructions for selected vehicle functions is displayed.

http://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals

About the Owner's Manual

General points
This Owner's Manual applies to all **chassis variants** of the vehicle, including all **models** and **trim levels**.

All possible **trim levels** are described here without identifying them as special trims, model variants or market-dependent equipment. This means that **not all the trim components** described in this Owner's Manual are available in your vehicle.

The **Illustrations** in these operating instructions are purely illustrative and are to be understood as general information. The illustrations may differ from your vehicle.

ŠKODA AUTO is constantly working on the further development of all vehicles. It is therefore possible for changes to be made at any time to the scope of delivery in terms of shape, equipment and technology. The information contained in this Owner's Manual corresponds to the information available at the time of going to press.

No legal claims can therefore be derived from the technical data, illustrations and information in this Owner's Manual.

Digital version of the Owner's Manual
Keeping environmental protection in mind, the printed Owner's Manual only contains the most important information regarding vehicle operation and vehicle maintenance.

The digital version of the Owner's Manual includes full information regarding vehicle operation.

The digital version is available at the following places:

- On the ŠKODA web pages
- In the mobile application MyŠKODA

http://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals

Tutorial videos
After reading in the following reference or the QR code, the website with the vehicle offer is displayed. By selecting the desired vehicle, the website with video instructions for selected vehicle functions is displayed.

http://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals

Tutorial videos

Tutorial videos
After reading in the following reference or the QR code, the website with the vehicle offer is displayed. By selecting the desired vehicle, the website with video instructions for selected vehicle functions is displayed.

http://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals

Explanations

Terms used

“Specialist garage” - A workshop that carries out specialist service tasks for ŠKODA vehicles. A specialist can be a ŠKODA Partner, a ŠKODA Service Partner, or an independent workshop.

“ŠKODA Service Partner” - A workshop that has been contractually authorised by ŠKODA AUTO or its distribution partner to perform service work on ŠKODA vehicles and to sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

“ŠKODA Partner” - A company that has been contractually authorised by ŠKODA AUTO or its distribution partner to sell new ŠKODA vehicles and, when applicable, to service them using ŠKODA Genuine Parts and sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

Text notes

“Press” - short press (e.g. a button) within 1 second

“Hold” - long press (e.g. a button) for more than 1 second

Direction indications

All direction indications, such as “left”, “right”, “front”, “rear”, relate to the forwards direction of travel of the vehicle.

⚠ DANGER

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, will result in death or serious injury.

⚠ WARNING

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, could result in death or serious injury.

⚠ CAUTION

Texts marked with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, could result in minor or moderate injury.

ⓘ NOTICE

Texts with this symbol indicate situations which, if the corresponding instructions are not observed, will result in damage to the vehicle.

ⓘ Texts with this symbol contain additional information.

Digital Instructions in Vehicle Infotainment

Application Quick Start Guide

Interactive images

In the pictures with the outside of the vehicle and the inside of the vehicle, there are touch points. Tapping a touch point displays a menu with topics or a detailed image.

Symbols

Information about symbols that can be shown on the instrument cluster display. By tapping the symbol, a detailed description is displayed.

Topics

The instruction content is organized according to topics.



Top bar of the displayed topic

A Title of the topic

B Type of information displayed / display menu with information

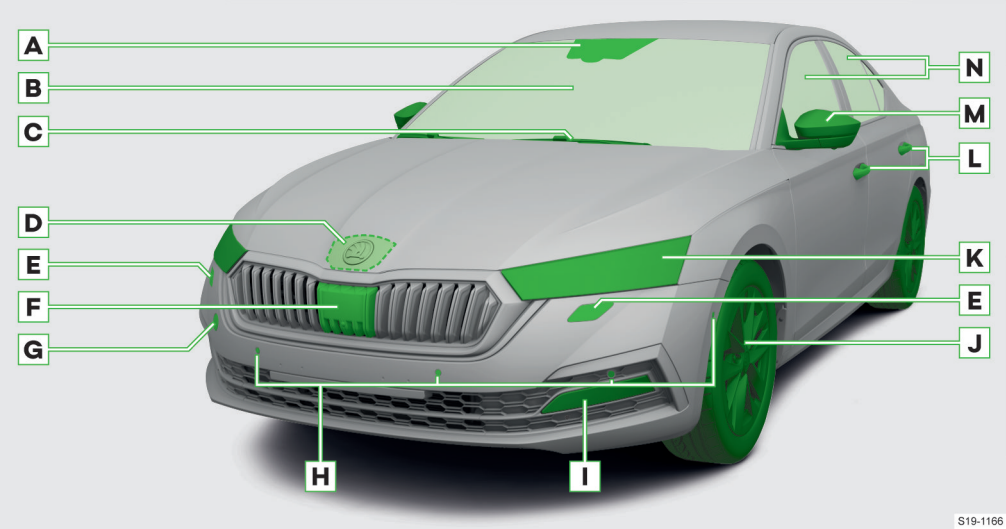
C Text search

About the instructions

Language selection for instructions and updates.

Vehicle overviews

Front vehicle area



A Under the windscreen (depending on the vehicle equipment):
- ▸ Camera for assist systems
- ▸ Light sensor for automatic driving light circuit » page 48
- ▸ Rain sensor for automatic wiping » page 54
- ▸ Sensors for humidity and solar radiation

B Windscreen - heating » page 62

C Windscreen wiper – operation » page 54

D Bonnet release lever (under the flap) » page 175

E Headlamp cleaning system » page 54

F Cover in the radiator grille (depending on the vehicle equipment):
- ▸ Front radar sensor for assist systems
- ▸ Camera for assist systems

G Cover for screw-in towing eye socket » page 153

H Ultrasonic sensors for assist systems

I Fog lights - operation » page 48

J Wheels:
- ▸ Tyres and rims » page 190
- ▸ Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle » page 192
- ▸ Breakdown kit » page 194.
- ▸ Tyre pressure » page 195
- ▸ Tyre pressure monitor » page 195

K Headlights (depending on vehicle equipment):
- ▸ Operation » page 48
- ▸ Light Assist high-beam assist system » page 51
- ▸ Dynamic Light Assist headlight assist system » page 51

L Door handles (depending on vehicle equipment):

- ▸ Open door » page 27
- ▸ Keyless locking (KESSY)» page 25.

M Exterior mirror (depending on vehicle equipment):

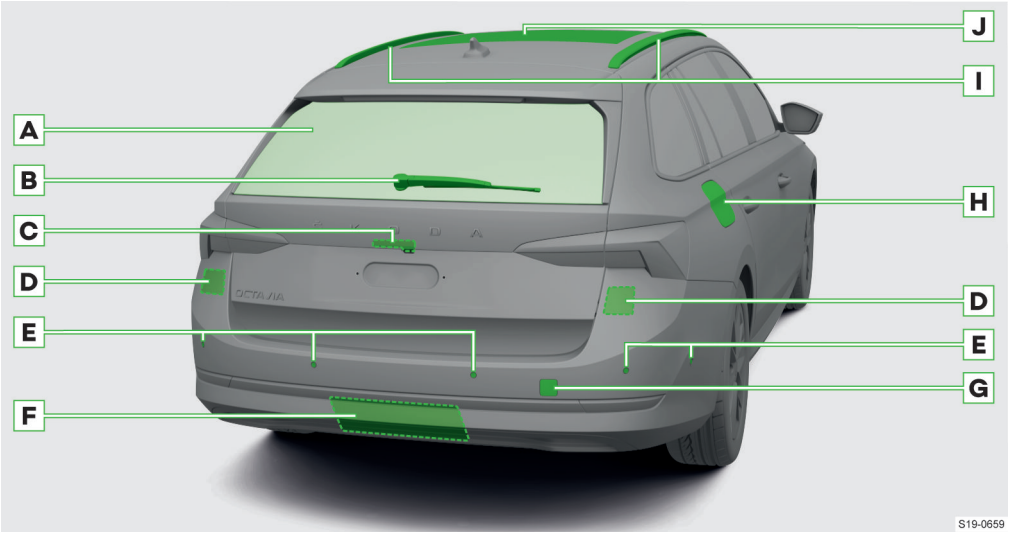
- ▸ Operation » page 39
- ▸ Camera for assist systems

N Side door windows - operation » page 28.

Functionality of the sensors and cameras

› Keep the sensors and cameras for the assist systems clean » page 16.

Rear vehicle area



A Rear window - heating » page 62

B Rear window wiper and washer - Operation » page 54

C Boot lid handle (depending on the vehicle equipment).
- ▸ Manually operated boot lid » page 31
- ▸ Electrically operated boot lid » page 31
- ▸ Camera for assist systems

D Radar sensors for assist systems (in the bumper)

E Ultrasonic sensors for assist systems

F Swivelling tow coupling » page 214

G Cover for screw-in towing eye socket » page 153

H Fuel filler flap (depending on vehicle equipment):
- ▸ Opening » page 179
- ▸ Sticker with tyre pressure values » page 195
- ▸ Sticker with prescribed fuel
- ▸ Ice scraper
- ▸ Filler neck of the AdBlue® tank » page 179
- ▸ CNG filler neck » page 183

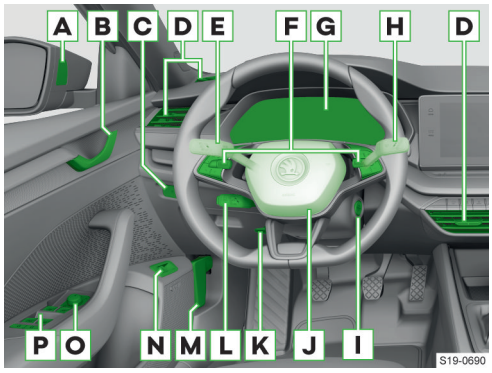
I Roof rack » page 214

J Sliding/tilting roof » page 29

Functionality of the sensors and cameras

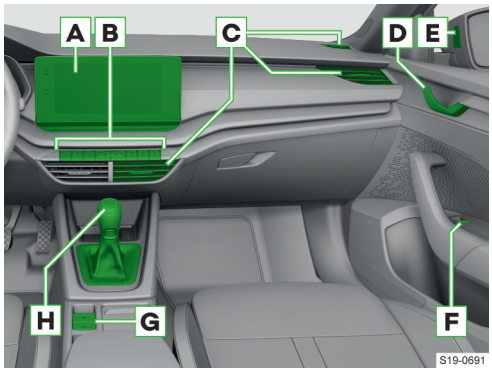
› Keep the sensors and cameras for the assist systems clean » page 16.

Driver's seat



- **A** Side Assist lane change assist system indicator light » page 164
- **B** Door opening lever » page 27
- **C** Light switch » page 48
- **D** Air outlet nozzle
- **E** Control lever (depending on vehicle equipment):
  - ▸ Turn signal and main beam » page 48
  - ▸ Speed regulating system » page 160
  - ▸ Speed limiter » page 159
  - ▸ High beam assist system » page 51
  - ▸ Headlight Assist System » page 52
- **F** Buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel » page 38
- **G** Depending upon vehicle equipment:
  - ▸ Analogue instrument cluster » page 64
  - ▸ Digital instrument cluster » page 65
- **H** Operating lever:
  - ▸ Windscreen wipers and washers » page 54
  - ▸ Information system » page 64
- **I** Starter button » page 147
- **J** Steering wheel with horn/with driver's front airbag » page 45
- **K** Safety lever for steering wheel adjustment » page 39
- **L** Operation of the automatic distance control » page 161
- **M** Bonnet release lever » page 175
- **N** Button for the electric boot lid » page 31
- **O** Exterior mirror operation » page 39
- **P** Window operation » page 28.

Centre console and passenger seat



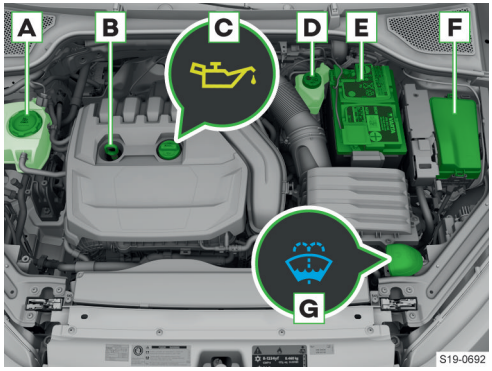
- **A** Infotainment (depending on vehicle equipment):
  - ▸ Columbus » page 111
  - ▸ Bolero » page 85
  - ▸ Swing » page 69
- **B** Keys (depending on vehicle equipment):
  - ▸ SET Quick access to the settings of specific vehicle systems (depending on vehicle equipment):
    - ▸ A OFF Switch off the START-STOP system » page 147.
    - ▸ Switch off ASR traction control » page 156.
    - ▸ Switch on the ESC Sport stabilisation programme » page 156.
    - ▸ Interior monitoring » page 27
    - ▸ Tyre pressure monitor » page 195
    - ▸ Access to other vehicle settings
    - ▸ Access to selection and settings for driver assistance systems
  - ▸ MODE Driving mode selection » page 150
  - ▸ P ASSIST Menu with Park Assist systems » page 169
  - ▸ Button for hazard warning light system » page 48
  - ▸ Central locking » page 24
  - ▸ CLIMA Display of the air conditioner operating screen in the Infotainment screen » page 56, » page 58.
  - ▸ MAX Quick ventilation/defrosting of the windscreen
  - ▸ REAR Heated rear window » page 62.
- **C** Air outlet nozzle
- **D** Door opening lever » page 27
- **E** Side Assist lane change assist system indicator light » page 164

F Window operation in the passenger door » page 28

G Buttons:
- Auto Hold » page 155
- Parking brake » page 154

H Depending upon vehicle equipment:
- Gearshift lever (manual gearbox) » page 148
- Selector lever (automatic gearbox) » page 148

Engine compartment



A Coolant expansion reservoir » page 177

B Engine oil dipstick » page 175

C Engine oil filler opening » page 175

D Brake fluid reservoir » page 154

E 12 volt vehicle battery » page 185

F Fuse box » page 189

G Windscreen washer fluid reservoir » page 55

Warning lights

Functionality

⚠ WARNING
Disregarding the lighting up of the warning lights and the associated messages on the display of the instrument cluster can lead to accidents, serious injuries or damage to the vehicle.

The warning lights in the instrument cluster indicate certain functions or faults.

The illumination of some of the indicator lights may be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages in the instrument cluster display.

Additional indicator lights
The additional indicator light will also light up in the display along with some of the indicator lights:

⚠ - Hazard

⚠ - Warning

Warning lights overview

After switching on the ignition, some indicator lights light up briefly as a function test of the vehicle systems. If the tested systems are in order, the respective indicator lights go out a few seconds after the ignition is switched on or after the engine has been started.

For further details » page 12, *Functionality*.

Symbol	Meaning
	Indicates a warning together with another warning light » page 12.
	Unfastened seat belts at the front and rear » page 41.
	12-volt vehicle battery is not charging » page 185.
	Along with - Engine fault » page 177, » page 186.
	Engine oil pressure too low » page 176.
	Engine oil level too low » page 176.
	Coolant level is too low » page 177.
	Coolant temperature too high » page 177.

Symbol	Meaning
	Brake fluid level is too low » page 154.
	Electromechanical brake booster faulty » page 157.
	Together with  - Brake system and ABS faulty » page 157.
	Parking on a slope with too much inclination » page 155.
	Parking brake on » page 154.
	**Illuminates** - Power assisted steering faulty » page 39.
	Flashing - Steering lock faulty » page 39.
	Automatic gearbox impaired » page 150.
	Automatic gearbox overheated » page 150.
	Take control immediately » page 164.
	AdBlue® level too low » page 179.
	AdBlue® system impaired » page 180.
	Warning if there is a risk of a collision » page 157.
	ACC does not decelerate sufficiently » page 161.
	Indicates a warning along with another warning light » page 12.
	The fuel supply has reached the reserve area. » page 181, » page 182.
	Low state of charge of the 48-volt battery » page 186.
	Windscreen washer fluid level too low » page 55.
	Bulb faulty » page 50.
	Rear fog light switched on » page 49.
	Engine oil level too high **or** engine oil level sensor impaired » page 176.
	Clogged particle filter » page 178.
	Parking brake error » page 155.

Symbol	Meaning
	ABS faulty » page 157.
	Worn brake pads » page 154.
	Automatic gearbox overheated » page 149.
	Automatic gearbox impaired » page 150.
	Water in the diesel fuel filter » page 178.
	AdBlue® system impaired » page 180.
	AdBlue® level too low » page 179.
	Tyre pressure control system faulty » page 196.
	Tyre pressure change » page 191, » page 195.
	**Illuminates** - Power assisted steering faulty » page 39.
	Flashing - Steering lock not unlocked » page 39.
	Flashing - Steering lock faulty » page 39.
	KESSY - starting problem » page 147.
	KESSY - no key found » page 26.
	Adaptive suspension faulty » page 151.
	Petrol engine control faulty » page 178.
	Emission control system faulty » page 178.
	**illuminates**, if relevant, does not illuminate after switching on the ignition - Diesel preheating system faulty » page 178.
	Flashing - Diesel engine control faulty » page 178.
	Front passenger airbag switched on » page 47.
	flashes together with  - Key switch for airbag deactivation is faulty » page 47.
	Front passenger airbag switched off » page 47.

Symbol	Meaning
	Airbag system faulty » page 46.
	Crew Protect Assist fault-ty » page 167.
	Illuminates for 4 seconds **and then flashes** - Airbag or belt tensioner de-activated with diagnostic de-vice » page 46.
	Ball rod not locked » page 216.
OFF	ASR deactiva-ted » page 157, » page 157.
	Illuminates - ESC or ASR fault-ty » page 157.
	Flashing - ESC or ASR is engag-ed » page 156.
OFF	Front Assist deactivated » page 158.
	Front Assist not availa-ble » page 158.
	ACC not available » page 163.
	Lane Assist intervenes » page 163.
	Auxiliary heating or ventilation switched on » page 61.
	Turn signal light, left » page 49, » page 50.
	Rear seat belt fastened » page 41.
	Turn signal light, right » page 49, » page 50.
1	Trailer turn signal light » page 50.
	Front fog lights switched on » page 49.
	Automatic gearbox is in P mode » page 149.
AUTO HOLD	Vehicle is secured by Auto Hold » page 155.
CNG	Natural gas operation » page 183.
	Lane Assist is activated and ready to intervene » page 163.
	ACC controls the driving speed » page 161.
	The cruise control system controls the driving speed » page 160.

Symbol	Meaning
	Travel Assist activated » page 164.
	Travel Assist activated - the cruise control is active » page 164.
	Travel Assist activated - the lane guidance is active » page 164.
	Low outside tempera-ture » page 19.
	High beam or flasher activa-ted » page 49.
	Unoccupied rear seat » page 41.
	A rear seat belt is not fas-tened » page 41.
	A rear seat belt is fas-tened » page 41.
A	High beam Assist System switched on » page 51.
A	Headlight assistant switched on » page 52.
	No light is switched on » page 48.
	AdBlue® level too low » page 179.
	AdBlue® system impaired. » page 180.
	Take control » page 164.
	Service event » page 217.
	Natural gas system test » page 183.
A	Engine was switched off automati-cally by START-STOP » page 148.
	Engine was not automatically switched off via START-STOP » page 148.
LIM	Speed limiter faulty » page 159.
LIM	Speed limiter activated » page 158.
	ACC activated » page 161.
	ACC controls the driving speed ac-cording to the approaching round-about » page 161.
	ACC controls the driving speed ac-cording to the approaching junc-tion » page 161.

Symbol	Meaning
	ACC controls the driving speed according to the road » page 161.
	ACC controls the driving speed according to the permissible speed » page 161.
	Cruise control system faulty » page 160.
	Cruise control activated » page 160.
	The Hill Descent Assist System is activated » page 167.
	Hill Descent Assist System intervenes » page 168.
	Front Assist is started » page 158.
	Safety distance too small » page 157.
	Consumption-friendly driving » page 151.
	Break recommendation » page 167.
	Driving mode Normal » page 150.
	Driving mode Eco » page 150.
	Comfort Driving Mode » page 150.
	Individual Driving Mode » page 150.
	Offroad driving mode » page 150.
	Sport Driving Mode » page 150.

Correct and safe

Introductory notes for correct use

- Read this Owner's Manual carefully, as proceeding in accordance with this manual is a prerequisite for the correct use of the vehicle. This Owner's Manual should therefore always be in the vehicle.
- When using the vehicle, the generally binding legal provisions that are specific to the country must be observed. Such as those for transporting children, switching off airbags, using tyres, road traffic and the like.
- Do not exceed the maximum permissible weights and loads.
- Do not exceed the maximum permissible roof load.
- Use the specified fuel and operating fluids.
- Drive on roads that meet the technical vehicle parameters. Obstacles that exceed the ground clearance of the vehicle » page 223 can damage the vehicle when driving over them.
- Care must be taken during operations related to operation, maintenance and self-help to avoid damage to the vehicle or injury. If required, seek the help of a specialised garage.
- All work on the vehicle's safety systems may only be carried out by a specialist garage. This concerns e.g. the seat belts or the airbag system.
- When using accessories, please note the instructions in the accessory manufacturer's instruction manual. These include child seats, roof racks, compressors etc.
- Please note the service intervals.

New vehicle or new parts

New vehicle - Running in the engine
Driving style during the first 1500 km determines the quality of the engine run-in process.

- During the first 1000 km, rev the engine to max. 3/4 of the highest permissible engine speed and avoid using a trailer.
- Over the next 500 km, the engine speed can be slowly increased.

Depending on driving style and operating conditions, the engine consumes some oil, up to 0.5 l/1000 km. Consumption may be higher over the next 5000 km.

New brake pads
New brake pads do not provide the optimum braking effect during the first 200 km, they have to be worn in first. Therefore, drive very carefully.

New tyres
New tyres do not have optimum grip for the first 500 km. Therefore, drive very carefully.

Regular checks

What should be taken into account before driving?
A vehicle with technical defects can increase the risk of accidents and injuries.

Eliminate any defects before driving. If required, seek the help of a specialised garage.

Pay special attention to the following points:

- Is the tyre undamaged?
- Is the tyre tread sufficient?
- Is the tyre pressure sufficient?
- Do the headlamps, brake and turn signals work?
- Is the windscreen in good condition?
- Is the engine oil, brake fluid and coolant level OK?
- Is the air intake in the engine compartment free from obstruction?
- Are the air outlet nozzles or air intake in front of the windscreen free from obstruction?
- Are the windscreen wiper and washer system and windscreen wiper blades functional?
- Is the windscreen washer fluid level sufficient?
- Are the windscreen wiper blades in good condition?
- Are all seatbelt system components in good working order? Are the seatbelts clean and have the buckles been unclogged?
- Is the spoiler working properly?
- Are parts and components of the vehicle still visibly attached?
- Are there no oil stains or other operating fluids under the vehicle?

Improper vehicle adjustments

Improper changes and maintenance can cause malfunctions and affect safety-relevant and other functions of the vehicle.

- Adjustments, repairs and technical changes to the vehicle should only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Never cover the engine with additional insulation material, e.g. with a cover.

Keep sensors and cameras functional

Some functions of your vehicle are supported by sensors and cameras inside and outside the vehicle.

Accessories additionally installed on the vehicle rear, such as bicycle carriers, can impair the functioning of the sensors and cameras.

- Do not cover or stick over the sensors and cameras and keep them clean.

- If you suspect damaged sensors or cameras, seek the help of a specialist company.

Engine compartment

Before opening the engine compartment flap
Risk of scalding! Do not open the engine compartment flap if steam or coolant comes out of the engine compartment.

- Stop the engine and allow it to cool.
- Open the driver door.

When working in the engine compartment
- Keep children away from the engine compartment.
- Do not touch the radiator fan. The radiator fan can turn itself on, even when the ignition is off.
- Do not touch electrical cables. Avoid short circuits in the electrical system, especially on the 12 Volt vehicle battery.
- Do not smoke near the vicinity of the engine and refrain from handling open flames or sparks.
- If you need to work in the engine compartment with the engine running, be mindful of rotating engine parts and electrical equipment.
- Do not leave any objects in the engine compartment.

Handling operating fluids

Your vehicle uses various operating fluids to operate that can affect health or the environment when they are emitted. These are fuel, oils, battery acid from the 12-volt vehicle battery, coolant and brake fluid or AdBlue®.

- Only use operating fluids outdoors or in well-ventilated areas. If required, wear protective equipment.
- Do not use or check operating fluids with the engine running.
- In the event of contact with operating fluids, wash affected areas with warm water. If required, seek medical help.
- The leaked engine oil in the engine compartment can cause a fire, so wipe it off with a cloth.
- Store cloths soiled by brake fluids in a well-ventilated place until disposal. Cloths with residues of engine oil can ignite and cause a fire.

12 volt vehicle battery

Handling the 12-volt vehicle battery
The battery acid of the 12-volt vehicle battery is very caustic. Improper handling of the 12 volt vehicle battery can cause an explosion, fire, chemical burns or poisoning!

- When handling the 12-volt vehicle battery, eye and skin protection must be worn.
- Do not tilt the 12-volt vehicle battery, as it may leak battery acid.
- If battery acid comes into contact with skin, wash the affected areas with water for a few minutes. Seek medical assistance without delay.
- Do not charge a frozen or thawed 12-volt vehicle battery. Replace a frozen 12-volt vehicle battery.
- Do not use a damaged 12-volt vehicle battery.
- Short circuit! The battery poles of the 12-volt vehicle battery are not connected.

Use electrical sockets in the vehicle

Improper handling of the sockets may lead to life-threatening electric shock or a fire.

- The sockets can become warm during operation. Do not touch warm sockets.
- Protect sockets from liquids.
- If moisture does manage to get into the power socket, completely dry out the socket before reuse.
- Do not insert any objects into the socket contacts.

Before your journey

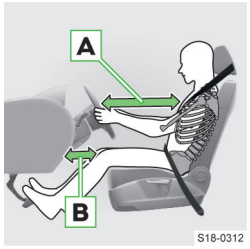
Adults and children, cargo and objects - everything has its place in the vehicle. Observe the following instructions so that all occupants are protected in the best possible way in the event of an accident.

Before you go
- Ensure that you have a good view of outside the vehicle. Attach external devices (e.g. navigation system) so that they do not restrict the view externally.
- Adjust the rearview mirrors.
- Close all doors and the engine compartment and boot flap.
- Take up the correct sitting position, adjust the seats correctly and fasten the seat belt properly. Ensure that passengers do likewise. Always leave the seat belt on while driving.
- Only one person can be secured with a seat belt.
- Make sure that the seat belts are not trapped, e.g. in the door or in the seat.
- Check seat belts, their locks and attachment points for damage.

Sitting safely

For the safety of the occupants and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, the following instructions must be observed:

- ▸ Stand the backrests upright. If the front passenger seat backrest has been folded forward, only the seat behind the driver's seat may be used for transporting passengers.
- ▸ Engage the rear seat backrests correctly.
- ▸ Adjust the height-adjustable headrest so that the top of the headrest is as close as possible to the top of the head.
- ▸ On the occupied rear seat, the headrest should not be in the lower position although the upper edge of the headrest should be at the same height as the top of the head.
- ▸ Keep your feet in the footwell.
- ▸ Use the entire seat.
- ▸ Do not lean forward or sit to the side.
- ▸ Do not hold your limbs out the window.



› Adjust the driver's seat in the longitudinal direction so that the pedals can be fully pushed through with slightly bent legs.

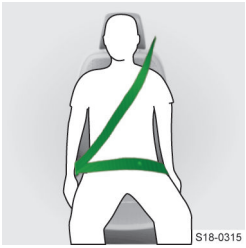
› Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance A between the steering wheel and sternum is at least 25 cm.

› For vehicles with driver's knee airbag, adjust the driver's seat longitudinally so that the distance B from the legs to the dash panel in the area of the knee airbag is at least 6 cm.

› Adjust the angle of the backrest so that the steering wheel can be reached at the top with your arms slightly bent.

› Move the passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a minimum distance of 25 cm from the dash panel.

Correct belt webbing arrangement



The webbing arrangement is extremely important for the seat belts to offer the best possible protection.

- ▸ The shoulder strap must run over the middle of the shoulder, must never run over the neck, and must lie firmly against the body (it must not run over loose layers of clothing).
- ▸ The lap belt part must be placed in front of the pelvis and fit tightly.
- ▸ In pregnant women, the lap belt part must be as low as possible on the pelvis, so that no pressure is exercised on the abdomen.
- ▸ The webbing must not be pinched or twisted and rub against sharp edges.
- ▸ The webbing must not pass over solid or fragile objects in clothing, such as a key ring, etc.
- ▸ The tongue may only be inserted into the buckle of the associated seat.
- ▸ The webbing must be tight. Therefore, do not attach clamps or similar items to the webbing for adjusting the seat belt according to body size.

Correct steering wheel position



- ▸ Hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outer edge in the “9 o'clock” and “3 o'clock” position. Otherwise, you may experience serious injury to the arms, hands and head when deploying the airbag.

Securing children properly

- ▸ Do not carry a child on your lap, and secure the child and yourself with a seat belt.
- ▸ Only transport children in a suitable child seat » page 43.

Children under 150 cm tall will not be properly protected without a child seat. Children that have been inadequately secured can be thrown through the vehicle in the event of an accident or a sudden manoeuvre. You can cause life-threatening injuries to yourself and other occupants.

If children lean forward or assume a wrong sitting position while driving, they are more likely to be injured in the event of an accident. This is especially true for children who are carried in the passenger seat - when the airbag system triggers, they can be seriously injured or killed!

A child that has been incorrectly secured in the wrong sitting position - endangered by the side airbag



The child should not be in the deployment area of the side airbag.

A child that has been properly secured in a child seat



There must be enough room between the child and the exit area of the side airbag for the side airbag to offer the best possible protection.

Transporting objects safely

When moving heavy objects, there is a shift in emphasis. Thus, the driving behaviour of the vehicle changes.

- ▸ Adjust driving speed and driving style to this changed driving behaviour.

Unsecured or misplaced items may be thrown around in the event of an accident or sudden manoeuvre. There is a risk of serious injury and loss of control of the vehicle!

In a rear-end collision at 50 km/h unsecured objects are thrown forward with up to 50 times their weight. A 1.5 litre water bottle is thrown with up to 75 kg.

- ▸ Transport objects securely.
- ▸ Stow objects so they do not hinder the driver. Keep the driver footwell clear.
- ▸ Stow small items in the storage compartments.
- ▸ Do not leave lockable storage compartments open.
- ▸ Do not let items protrude out of the slots. This note does not apply to bottles in bottle trays.
- ▸ Do not place any objects on the dash panel or on the luggage compartment cover.
- ▸ Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of fasteners and shelves.
- ▸ Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment and secure it, so that it cannot slip.
- ▸ Place heavy objects in the luggage compartment as far forward as possible.

Safe driving

Introductory notes

- ▸ Pay attention when you are driving! As a driver, you are fully responsible for road safety.
- ▸ Always adjust driving speed to the road conditions as well as the traffic and weather conditions.

Lights up when the outside temperature is low ❄ lights up in the instrument cluster.

Paying attention to warning signals

The driver information system warns you with indicator lights and messages in the event of any faults.

Failure to follow the warnings may increase the risk of accidents and injuries.

- ▸ If the vehicle issues a warning signal, then park the vehicle safely and follow the information in the instrument cluster, and in this Owner's Manual.

Use assistance systems

The assistance systems are only for support and do not absolve you from your responsibility for driving the vehicle.

The assistance systems are subject to physical and technical limitations. Therefore, in certain situations, system reactions may be perceived as undesirable or delayed.

- ▸ Stay alert and be ready to intervene.
- ▸ Familiarise yourself with the assistance systems, their limitations and operating conditions.
- ▸ Activate, deactivate and adjust the assistance systems so that you have full control of the vehicle in any traffic situation.

Driving with a substitute spare wheel or emergency wheel

A substitute spare wheel or emergency wheel is only used to reach the nearest specialist garage.

- ▸ Inflate the wheel with the max. prescribed inflation pressure.
- ▸ Follow the instructions on the warning label on the rim.
- ▸ Do not cover the warning sign.
- ▸ Avoid full accelerations, strong braking and fast cornering.
- ▸ Do not drive with more than one mounted spare wheel.

▶ Avoid using snow chains on the temporary spare wheel.

Driving with a loaded roof rack
When transporting objects on the roof rack, the vehicle's driving behaviour changes.

▶ Adapt your speed and driving style to this.

Towing a trailer
The vehicle's handling characteristics change with a trailer. The assistance systems may behave differently.

▶ Drive more slowly, excessive speed can lead to loss of control of the vehicle.
▶ Keep a larger distance from the vehicle in front.
▶ Do not exceed the max. vertical load and the permissible trailer load.

Driving through water
There must be no water ingress into the vehicle systems e.g. into the engine's air intake system!

▶ Therefore, determine the water depth before driving through water. The water level must not exceed the lower edge of the lower beam.
▶ Drive at max. walking speed. Otherwise, a wave may form in front of the vehicle, increasing the water level.
▶ Never stop in the water, do not drive backwards and never stop the engine.

Is something wrong?
▶ Pay attention to changes in vehicle handling.
▶ If in doubt about safety, stop driving and seek the help of a specialist garage.
▶ Unusual vibrations or the vehicle 'pulling' to the side may indicate a puncture.
▶ If tyre pressure loss is very quick, try to stop the vehicle carefully without heavy steering or heavy braking.
▶ Immediately remove foreign bodies stuck in the tyre tread.
▶ Do not remove foreign objects that have penetrated into the tyre. Check the tyre pressure and seek the help of a specialised garage.
▶ Immediately remove any objects jammed under the floor of the vehicle. These can damage the vehicle or ignite and cause a fire.

Stop the vehicle safely!

A vehicle that has not been secured may roll away and cause accidents.

▶ For parking, look for a place with suitable ground. Do not park the vehicle on flammable materials such as dried leaves, spilt fuel. Hot vehicle parts can cause a fire.

Carry out the following activities in the specified order when parking.

› Stop the vehicle and keep the brake pedal depressed.
› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
› For vehicles with automatic transmission, choose mode **P**.
› Turn off the engine.
› For vehicles with manual transmission, engage 1st gear or reverse gear.
› Release the brake pedal.

Exiting the vehicle

Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle!

▶ Children may injure themselves when handling the seats, releasing the parking brake etc.
▶ In emergency situations, children are not able to leave the vehicle on their own or help themselves.
▶ At very high or very low temperatures, there is danger to life!
▶ When locking the vehicle, the SAFE function switches on. As a result, no doors or windows can be opened from the inside. Turn off the SAFE function if people are left behind in the locked vehicle » page 24.

Deviating weather conditions

If you wish to operate your vehicle in countries with different weather conditions from those specified, please contact a ŠKODA partner. They will advise you if certain precautions need to be taken to ensure the full functioning of the vehicle or to prevent damage (e.g. coolant, 12 volt vehicle battery replacement, etc.).

Emergency call

What you should be mindful of

⚠ **WARNING**
Availability of a mobile network is indispensable for establishing a connection to the emergency number.

⚠ **WARNING**
This emergency service is only available in some countries.

⚠ **WARNING**
If the vehicle is located in an area without a functioning emergency call system infrastructure, no vehicle data shall be transmitted to the emergency call centre.

Functionality

After the start of the conversation, the emergency call centre also contains information as to the accident location and the severity of the accident, the number of occupants with seatbelts on and the vehicle identification number (VIN).

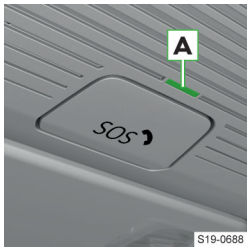
Once the connection has been established, communication with the emergency call centre takes place via the loudspeaker and microphone installed in the vehicle.

Serious accident - automatic call
In the event of an accident where the airbag or belt tensioner activates, a call is automatically started with the emergency call centre.

The automatic call to the emergency call centre is also started after the Emergency Assist assistant system has intervened.

Minor accident - call option
The Infotainment screen displays the option to set up a connection to the emergency call centre or breakdown service.

Indicator light



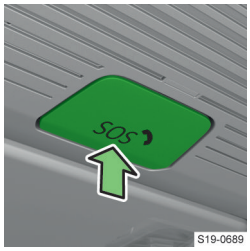
The system status is displayed after the ignition is switched on, by the illumination of warning lamp A.

- Green - lit up - the system is functional
- Green - flashing - a call is being made to the emergency call centre
- Red - lit up - there is a system failure, immediately seek the help of a specialist garage
- Not lit up - the system is out of order due to a long term unavailable mobile network, if this circumstance persists, the system will require the assistance of a specialist garage

⚠ **WARNING**
If there is a system fault, no emergency call is possible.

Operation

Manual call



The emergency button is located below the cap with the icon SOS.

› To **open** the cap, press on it.
› To **close** the cap, press on it until it clicks into place.



› Press and hold the SOS button under the flap.
› Confirm the connection to the emergency call centre in the Infotainment screen.
› To cancel the connection to the emergency call centre before starting the call, press the SOS button again or confirm the cancellation of the connection in the Infotainment screen.

Starting a manual conversation can then be used, for example, if you also report an accident in which you are not directly involved.

After an accident

What to do after an accident
Where possible, please observe the following instructions:

› Switch off the ignition.
› Turn on the hazard warning lights.
› Put on the reflective vest.
› In the case of natural gas vehicles, remove any objects that spark or set fire to the vehicle (e.g. put out cigarettes, etc.).
› Set up the warning triangle to warn other road users.
› Stay at a safe distance from the vehicle, along with any passengers.
› Report the accident to the emergency services. If it is a natural gas vehicle, inform the emergency services.
› Wait for the emergency services to arrive.

Safety systems
After an accident, the safety systems of the vehicle, e.g. seatbelts and airbag system, may be out of action.

- ▶ Have the vehicle's safety systems checked by a specialist garage, even if no load or trip has occurred.
- ▶ Have damaged, loaded or triggered components of the safety systems replaced by a specialist garage.

What to do in the event of a fire

Where possible, please observe the following instructions:

- › Switch off the ignition.
- › Turn on the hazard warning lights.
- › Put on the reflective vest.
- › Set up the warning triangle to warn other road users.
- › Stay at a safe distance from the vehicle, along with any passengers.
- › Report the fire to the emergency services. If it is a natural gas vehicle, inform the emergency services.
- › Wait for the emergency services to arrive.

⚠ **WARNING**

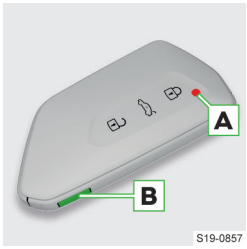
If it concerns a natural gas vehicle, follow the instructions below:

- ▶ Do not try to extinguish the fire yourself.
- ▶ Do not stand close to the burning vehicle.

Keys, locks and alarm system

Key

Key Overview



- Locking the vehicle
- Operating the boot lid
- Unlocking the vehicle

A Battery status warning light

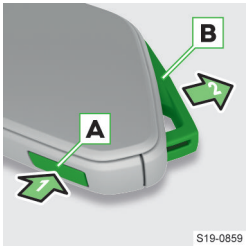
B Locking tab for removal of the key bit

NOTICE

- Protect the key from moisture and strong vibrations.
- Keep the grooves in the key clean.

The effective range of the key signal is about 30 m. The effective range can be reduced, e.g. due to signal interference from other transmitters.

Removing the key bit



› Press securing tab A. The pendant part B of the key bit folds out.
› Press the securing tab A again.
› Remove the key bit.



Troubleshooting

The battery in the key is almost empty

- After pressing a button on the key, the warning light does not flash.

Or:

- A message stating it is necessary to change the battery will be displayed.

› Replace the battery » page 23.

The vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the remote control

There may be the following reasons:

- The battery in the key is empty.

› Replace the battery » page 23.

- The key is not synchronized.

Synchronize the key as follows:

› Press any button on the key.
› Unlock the door within 1 minute with the key via the locking cylinder » page 25.

If necessary, the key must be synchronized if a favoured button on the key has been repeatedly pressed outside of the effective range of the remote control.

Changing the key battery

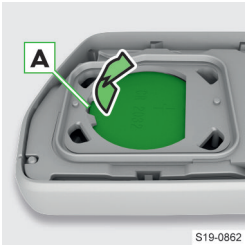
The new battery must comply with the specification of the original battery.



› Remove the key bit and partially insert it into the opening.
› Press down on the key fob to release the top cover.



› Open the battery cover.



› Insert a thin screwdriver into the recess A and remove the battery.
› Press any button on the remote key to reset the key.
› Insert the new battery.
› Fit the battery cover and press until it clicks into place.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of death!
If the battery is swallowed, serious or even fatal injuries can result from burns in the digestive tract.
▸ Always keep children away from the vehicle key and batteries.
▸ If the battery is swallowed, seek medical help immediately.

Central locking

Functionality

Central locking system
The system unlocks and locks all doors, the fuel filler flap and the boot lid at the same time.

Unlock indicator: double flashing of the indicator lights.

Lock indicator: single flashing of the indicator lights.

The warning light in the driver's door will flash for about 2 seconds in quick succession after the vehicle is locked, then it will start flashing regularly at longer intervals.

If none of the doors or the boot lid is opened within 45 seconds of unlocking, the vehicle automatically locks again.

SAFE function
Depending on the equipment, the central locking system can include the SAFE function.

The SAFE function prevents the doors from opening from the inside once the vehicle is locked.

The SAFE function is activated when the vehicle is locked from the outside.

In the display of the instrument cluster after the ignition is switched off, a message regarding the SAFE function is displayed.

⚠ **DANGER**
Risk of death!
▸ No people are allowed in the locked vehicle with the SAFE function.

Turn off the SAFE function
▸ By double locking within 2 seconds.

Or:

▸ Together with the deactivation of the interior monitoring » page 27, *Settings*.

The warning light in the driver's door will flash for about 2 seconds in quick succession after the vehicle is locked, then goes out and starts flashing regularly at longer intervals after about 30 secs.

When the SAFE function is switched off, the door can be opened from the inside by pulling once on the opening lever.

The SAFE function is switched on again after unlocking and locking the vehicle.

Operation

Ways in which central locking operates
Depending upon vehicle equipment:
▸ Key » page 23
▸ Keyless locking (KESSY)» page 25.
▸ Central locking button

Lock/unlock using the central locking button
› The button in the middle part of the control panel.

The symbol in the button comes on when locked.

The button locks/unlocks all of the doors and the boot lid.

The vehicle is also unlocked when a door is opened from the inside.

⚠ **WARNING**
A locked vehicle with a central locking button makes it difficult for responders to enter the vehicle in an emergency.

Setting the unlocking and locking function

› In Infotainment, select the following menu:

CAR > > *Outside* > *Opening and closing*

Or:

MENU > > > *Outside*

› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Central locking* .
› Select *Central locking* .

All doors
Unlocking of all doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap.

Single door
Using the button on the key, the driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked.

In vehicles equipped with a keyless locking system, the door near to which the key is located and the

fuel filler flap are unlocked by touching the door handle.

When unlocked again, the other doors and the boot lid are unlocked.

Doors on one side of the vehicle
Using the button on the key, the doors on the driver's side and the fuel filler flap are unlocked.

In vehicles equipped with a keyless locking system, the doors on the passenger's side near to which the key is located and the fuel filler flap are unlocked by touching the door handle.

When unlocked again, the other doors and the boot lid are unlocked.

Troubleshooting

Central locking fault
- ▸ The warning light in the driver's door first flashes for 2 secs in quick succession.
- ▸ Then it lights up continuously.
- ▸ After 30 secs, it flashes slowly.

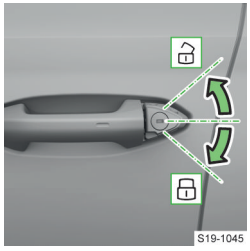
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Mechanically unlocking and locking the door

Unlocking and locking the door with the lock cylinder



Remove the cover
› Pull the handle on the front left door and hold it in place.
› Insert the key bit into the recess on the underside of the cover.
› Lift the cover in the direction of the arrow.
› Release the door handle.



Locking and unlocking
› Insert the removed key bit with the pendant facing **downwards** into the lock cylinder, then unlock or lock it.

Install cover
› Pull on the door handle and hold it.
› Replace the cover.

› Release the door handle.

Locking the door without the lock cylinder



› Open the door.
› For vehicles with a panel over the opening, remove the panel.
› Insert the key or a flat-head screwdriver into the slot.
› Turn the key or flat-head screwdriver towards the outside of the vehicle (spring-loaded position).

After closing, the door is locked.

Keyless locking (KESSY)

Usage

The keyless locking system, KESSY, enables unlocking and locking of the vehicle without actively using the remote control key.

Operation

Keep the key with you when unlocking and locking.

The sensors on the handle are intended to be operated with bare hands, e.g. wearing gloves may affect the function of the sensors.

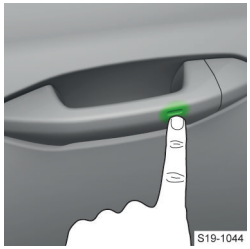
The recess on the door handle is also present on vehicles without the keyless locking system.

Release



› Grab the door handle.
› Open the door.

Lock



› Touch the sensor.

After locking, it is not possible to unlock within 2 seconds by touching the door handle. This can be used to check whether the vehicle is locked.

Unlocking the boot lid

› Press the handle of the boot lid.

Protection against inadvertently locking the key in the vehicle

If the key is locked inside the vehicle, the vehicle will unlock itself automatically. If no door is opened within 45 seconds, the vehicle automatically locks again.

If the key is locked in the luggage compartment, the luggage compartment lid can be opened within 2 minutes.

Settings

Deactivate keyless locking

› Lock the vehicle with the button on the key.

› Within 5 s, touch the sensor on the door handle with your finger.

Deactivation is confirmed by a single flash of the direction indicators.

› To check the deactivation, wait at least 10 seconds and then pull the door handle.

The door must remain locked.

Keyless locking is automatically activated once again after the vehicle is unlocked.

Permanently deactivate keyless locking

› In Infotainment, select the following menu:

CAR > > *Outside* > *Opening and closing*

Or:

MENU > > > *Outside*

› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Central locking* .

› Select *Central locking* > *Keyless Access* .

Activate / deactivate automatic unlocking when the key approaches the vehicle

› In Infotainment, select the following menu:

CAR > > *Outside* > *Opening and closing*.

Or:

MENU > > > *Outside*

› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Central locking* .

› Select *Central locking* > *Unlock the vehicle when approaching* .

If the vehicle is not unlocked for a longer period of time, the function can be deactivated automatically.

If single door locking or unlocking of the doors on one side of the vehicle is set, there is no vehicle unlocking when the key approaches the rear of the vehicle.

Troubleshooting

The vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked using the sensors on the handle

› Lock or unlock the vehicle with the button on the key.

› Then try to unlock or lock the vehicle using the sensors on the handle.

› If keyless locking does not work, seek the help of a specialist garage.

If the vehicle is not unlocked for a longer period of time, the function can be deactivated automatically.

When the ignition was switched on, no key was found

illuminates
Message that no key was found in the vehicle

› Insert the key into the vehicle.

Alarm system

Functionality

The alarm system triggers audible and visual signals during a break-in or towing attempt.

The alarm system is activated automatically approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked.

The alarm system is automatically deactivated after the vehicle is unlocked.

Alarm triggering

The activated alarm system triggers an alarm when one of the following events occurs:

- Opening the bonnet
- Opening the boot lid
- Opening the door
- Manipulation of the ignition lock
- Towing the vehicle
- Movement in the vehicle
- Sudden and significant voltage drop of the electrical system
- Uncoupling the trailer
- Opening the door unlocked via the lock cylinder

Switching off the triggered alarm
› Unlock the vehicle.

Or:

› Turn on the ignition.

Operating conditions

For the correct functioning of the alarm system, all windows must be closed.

A trailer is integrated into the alarm system under the following conditions:

✓ The vehicle is factory-fitted with a towing device.
✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the vehicle via the trailer socket.
✓ The trailer is not equipped with LED taillights.

If the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted on a vehicle with an activated alarm system, warning signals are triggered.

ⓘ Disable the alarm before connecting or disconnecting a trailer.

Settings

The following functions of the alarm system can be deactivated at the same time:

▸ Interior monitoring
▸ Towing protection

Deactivation will also switch off the SAFE function » page 24, *Functionality*.

Deactivation
▸ By double locking within 2 seconds.

Or:

▸ In the Infotainment system, in the menu **CAR** > > *Outside* > *Opening and closing*
› Remove the hook to disable the interior monitoring.

Or:

▸ In the Infotainment system, in the menu **MENU** > > > *Outside*
› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Central locking* .
› Select *Central locking* and deactivate the interior monitoring by moving the slider to the left.

The deactivated functions are reactivated after the vehicle is unlocked and locked again.

ⓘ Deactivation is to be carried out if the vehicle is, for example, towed or transported.

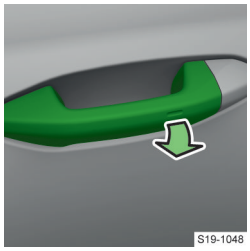
ⓘ After switching off the engine, a menu is displayed on the Infotainment screen, showing where the interior monitoring can be deactivated.

Doors, windows and boot lid

Doors

Opening/closing the door

Opening from the outside



› Unlock the vehicle and pull on the door handle.

Opening from the inside



› Pull the door opening lever and push the door away from you.

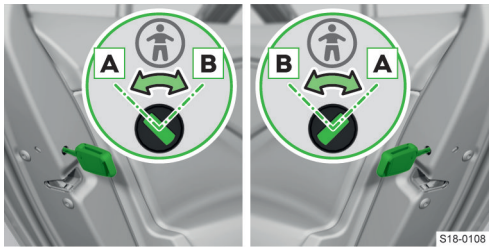
Closing from the inside
› Grasp the pull handle and close the door.

Child safety lock on the rear doors

Operation

The child lock prevents the rear doors from being opened from the inside.

Switching on and off



› Turn the child lock with the vehicle key or a flat-head screwdriver.

A Child lock switched off

B Child lock switched on

Electrically operated child lock



› Press the **left** button to switch on/off the child lock in the **left** rear door.

› Press the **right** button to switch on/off the child lock in the **right** rear door.

The fact that the child lock is switched on can be seen by the illuminated displayed in the button.

After switching on the child lock the electric window is also blocked in the respective door.

Window - with electrical operation

What you should be mindful of

Force limiter
To reduce the risk of pinch injuries when closing the windows, the vehicle has a force limiter.

If there is an obstacle, the window closing process is stopped and the pane retracts by several centimetres.

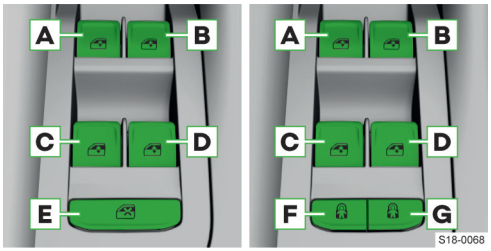
If the obstacle prevents it from being closed for the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within 10 seconds of the window being moved down for the second time, even though the obstacle was not yet been removed, the closing process is only stopped. During this time, it is not possible to automatically close the windows by pulling the button all the way. The force limiter is, however, switched on.

The force limiter is only not operational if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds – the window will now close with full force! If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.

⚠ **CAUTION**
Risk of injury!
▸ Close the windows carefully, even though they have a force limiter.

Overview of the operating buttons on the driver's door



Depending upon vehicle equipment:

A Front left window

B Front right window

C Rear left window

D Rear right window

E Deactivation/activation of the buttons in the rear doors

F Deactivation/activation of the key in the left rear door (part of the child safety lock with electric operation) » page 27, *Operation*

G Deactivation/activation of the key in the right back door (part of the child safety lock with electric operation) » page 27, *Operation*

Operation

ⓘ When the windows are open, irritating noises may occur at certain speeds.

Opening
› Press the corresponding button slightly downwards and hold it until the window has reached the desired position.

Or:

› Press the corresponding button until it stops; the window opens automatically. Pressing the button again will stop the opening process.

Closing
› To close, pull gently upwards on the top edge of the corresponding button and hold until the window has reached the desired position.

Or:

› Pull the corresponding button until it stops; the window closes automatically. By pressing the button again, the closing process is stopped.

ⓘ After switching off the ignition, the windows can still open and close for about 10 minutes so long as none of the doors are opened.

Open all of the windows at the same time
› Press and hold the button on the key.

Or:

› Turn off the ignition, open the driver's door, and hold down the driver's window button until it stops.

Close all of the windows at the same time
› Press and hold the button on the key.

Or:

› Turn off the ignition, open the driver's door, and pull upwards on the driver's window button until it stops.

Or:

› For vehicles with a keyless locking system, hold one finger on the sensor on the outside of the handle on the front door.

Settings

The window operation is set in the following menu in the Infotainment system:

CAR > > *Outside* > Menu item for window operation

Or:

MENU > > > *Outside*

› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the window operation menu item.
› Select the menu item for window operation.

Troubleshooting

The window regulator has stopped working after repeated opening and closing
The window regulator mechanism could have overheated.

› Allow the window regulator mechanism to cool down.

The window operation does not work after disconnecting the 12 volt vehicle battery
› Enable window operation » page 29.

Activation after disconnecting the 12-volt vehicle battery

Activate automatic window operation
› Turn on the ignition.
› Pull the corresponding button upwards and the window closes.
› Release the button.
› Pull up the respective button and hold for 1 second.

Sliding/tilting roof

What you should be mindful of

To reduce the risk of pinch injuries when closing the tilt/slide sunroof, the vehicle has a force limiter.

If the operation is activated in the closed direction and the closing process is hindered by an obstacle, the movement of the glass pane is stopped and the pane moves back a few centimetres.

If the obstacle is not removed, the force limit is disabled when you try to close again by moving and holding a finger in the closed direction (if the time span between the closing attempts is less than 5 s). The sliding/tilting roof will then close with full force.

⚠ **CAUTION**
Risk of injury!
▶ Close the sliding/tilting roof carefully, even though there is a force limiter.

NOTICE
▶ During winter time, if necessary, remove any ice and snow around the area of the sliding/tilting roof before opening.
▶ Always close the sliding/tilting roof before disconnecting the 12 volt vehicle battery.

Operating conditions

✓ Ignition is switched on.
✓ The outside temperature is higher than -20 °C (applicable for the opening of the sliding/tilting roof).

Operation

Opening



› Move backwards using your finger.

Closing



› Move forwards using your finger.

Stop/restore the movement of the sliding/tilting roof

› To **stop** the movement of the sliding/tilting roof, press .

› To **restore** the movement of the sliding/tilting roof, move your finger in the desired direction.

Open/slide back the sliding/tilting roof

› To **open** or **slide back** the sliding/tilting roof, press .

After switching off the ignition, the sliding / tilting roof can be operated for about 10 minutes as long as none of the doors are opened.

Comfort operation of the tilting/sliding sunroof

The comfort operation makes it possible to lock the sliding/tilting roof with the key if necessary.

› Press and hold the button to **turn it off**.

› Press and hold the button to **close** it.

On vehicles with a keyless locking system, it is possible to **close** the sliding/tilting roof via the sensor in the door handle of the front door.

› Hold one finger on the sensor on the outside of the handle on the front door » page 25.

Sunblind - with electrical operation

Operation

Opening



› Move backwards using your finger.

Closing



› Move forwards using your finger.

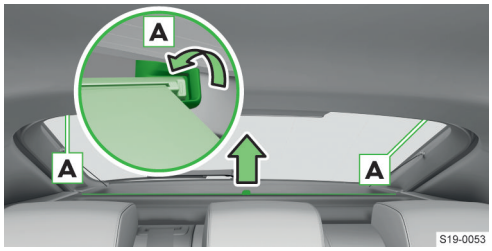
Stop/restore the movement of the roller blind

› To **stop** the movement of the roller blind, press .

› To **restore** the movement of the roller blind, move your finger in the desired direction.

Sunblind for the rear window

Operation



Brightness protection

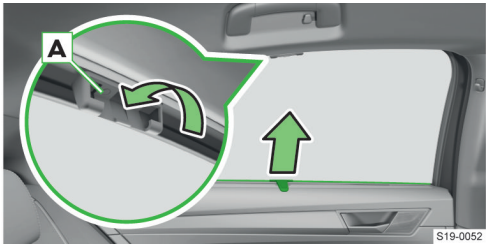
› Pull out the sun protection blind by the handle and hang it into the holders A.

Rolling up

› Remove the sun protection blind from the holders at the handle and let it roll in slowly.

Sun protection roller blinds for the rear door panes

Operation



Brightness protection

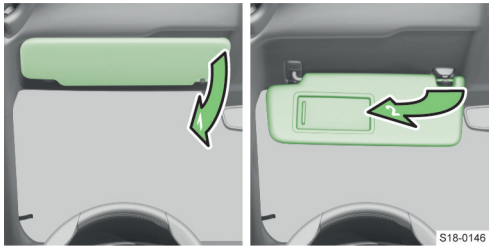
› Pull out the sun protection blind by the handle and hang it into the holder A.

Rolling up

› Remove the sun protection blind from the holder at the handle and let it roll in slowly.

Sun visors

Folding up and folding down



1 Swivel the front visor towards the windscreen

2 Swivel the visor towards the door

⚠ **CAUTION**

Objects attached to the sun visors can restrict the view to the outside.

In the event of sudden braking or an impact, these can also cause injuries.

▸ Do not attach anything to the sun visor.

Boot lid - with manual operation

What you should be mindful of

ⓘ **NOTICE**

▸ Do not attach a bike rack to the tailgate.

Operation

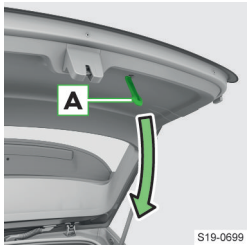
Opening



› Press the handle and lift the lid.

The option to open by pressing the handle is deactivated once a speed of 5 km/h is reached. This is activated again after the vehicle has stopped and a door is opened.

Closing



› Grasp the fixture A and pull the lid down.

⚠ **CAUTION**

Danger of opening the tailgate while driving!

▸ Make sure that the latch engages after the flap is closed.

Set a delayed lid lock

If the lid is unlocked with the button on the key, the lid is automatically locked again after closing.

The period after which the lid is locked automatically can be extended by a specialist garage.

Boot lid - with electrical control

What you should be mindful of

ⓘ **NOTICE**

▸ Do not attach a bike rack to the tailgate.

Operation

⚠ **CAUTION**

Risk of injury!

▸ Only operate the tailgate when there is nobody or no objects in the swivel area.

⚠ **CAUTION**

Danger of opening the tailgate while driving!

▸ Make sure that the latch engages after the flap is closed.

ⓘ **NOTICE**

▸ Do not manually close the tailgate when moving.

▸ Before operating the tailgate, check that there are no objects in the swivel area that could damage the tailgate. Also check that there are no objects within the immediate vicinity of the vehicle that could damage the vehicle interior and the transported objects.

ⓘ If the tailgate hits an obstacle when closing, it stops and an audible signal sounds.

When automatically closing the tailgate, e.g. under the weight of snow, a broken beep sounds.

The rear parking light flashing twice indicates that the flap is closed.

Handle in the tailgate



› Press the handle to open, close or stop the movement of the tailgate.

The option to open by pressing the handle is deactivated once a speed of 5 km/h is reached. This is activated again after the vehicle has stopped and a door is opened.

Button in the tailgate



› Press the button to open, close or stop the movement of the tailgate.

Button in the door



› To open the tailgate, pull and hold the button until the tailgate starts to open.

› To close the tailgate, pull and hold the button until the tailgate is fully closed.

› To stop the movement of the tailgate, pull or release the button.

Button on the key



› Press the button to open, close or stop the movement of the tailgate.

The option to lock exists only on vehicles with a keyless locking system. The key must not be in the vehicle and must be at a distance of max. 2 m from the tailgate.

The tailgate can also be closed by pulling it briefly downwards.

Settings

Set the uppermost position of the tailgate and store it

It makes sense to set the top position of the tailgate, e.g. setting for the opening of the tailgate in a limited space due to the garage height.

› Stop the tailgate in the desired position.

› Press the button and hold down on the lower edge of the tailgate until an audible signal sounds.

Re-adjusting the top starting position of the tailgate

› Carefully raise the tailgate manually to the limit.

› Press the button and hold down on the lower edge of the tailgate until an audible signal sounds.

Troubleshooting

The tailgate does not react to the opening signal

› There is a possible obstacle, e.g. snow; remove it.

Or:

› Press the handle in the tailgate and lift the lid.

Or:

› Mechanically unlock the flap » page 33.

The tailgate does not react to the closing signal

› Close the tailgate manually.

NOTICE

▸ Close the tailgate slowly, push down the tailgate and push in the lock on the centre of the rear edge of the tailgate.

Electrically operated contactless boot lid

Operating conditions

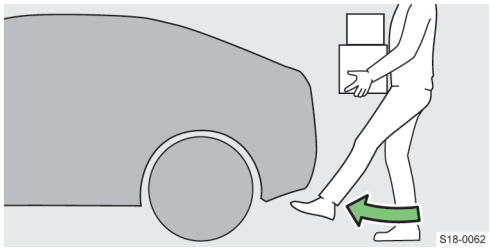
✓ Ignition off.

✓ You have the vehicle key with you.

✓ No trailer or other accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

Operation

Opening/closing the lid



› Stand in the middle behind the bumper.
› Move one foot quickly under the bumper and remove it again.

If the lid doesn't move, wait a few seconds and repeat the swing motion.

Display of the opening/ closing process
The rear turn signal lights light up when the lid is opened and closed. When you close the lid, audible signals are additionally sounded.

Stopping/ restoring lid movement
The lid movement can be stopped by a rapid swinging motion with your foot. Lid movement is restored by a subsequent swinging motion with your foot.

Restriction

The system function may be restricted in the following cases:

▸ Downpour
▸ Dirty rear bumper

Settings

Activating and deactivating

› In Infotainment, select the following menu:

CAR > ⚙ > *Outside* > *"Easy Open"*

Or:

MENU > 🚗 > 🚗 > *Outside*

› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *"Easy Open"* .
› Select *"Easy Open"* .

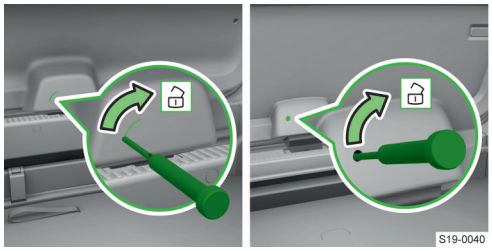
We recommend that the function is deactivated in the following cases:

▸ Installation of a roof rack
▸ Coupling a trailer or another accessory to the hitch
▸ Car wash
▸ Maintenance and repair work in the back of the vehicle

Unlocking the boot lid

Release

If the boot lid does not open, it can be unlocked manually by the following procedure.

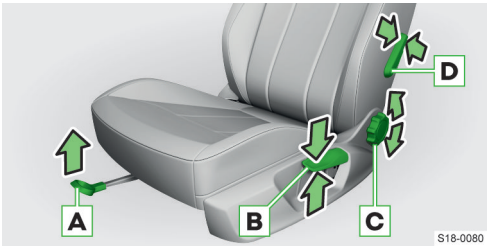


› Insert a screwdriver into the opening in the panel.
› Release the tailgate by moving it in the direction of the arrow.

Seats, steering wheel and mirror

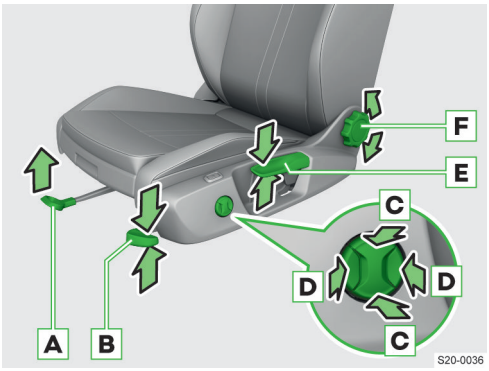
Front seat - with manual operation

Controls on the seat



Version 1

- **A** Adjusting the seat in the longitudinal direction - after releasing the operating lever, the lock must audibly click into place
- **B** Adjusting the height
- **C** Adjusting the angle of the backrest - do not lean against the backrest during adjustment
- **D** Adjusting the lumbar support: Extent of the curvature



Version 2

- **A** Adjusting the seat in the longitudinal direction - after releasing the operating lever, the lock must audibly click into place
- **B** Adjusting the inclination of the seat
- **C** Adjusting the lumbar support: Position of the curvature
- **D** Adjusting the lumbar support: Extent of the curvature
- **E** Adjusting the height
- **F** Adjusting the angle of the backrest - do not lean against the backrest during adjustment

After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.

Set the length of the seat manually

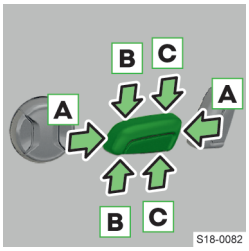


› Press the release handle.
› Push the front part of the seat forwards or backwards.

Front seat - with electrical operation

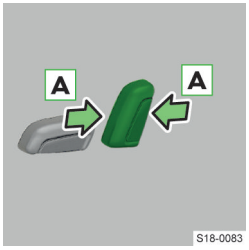
Controls on the seat

Adjusting the seat



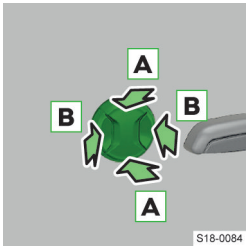
- **A** Adjust in a longitudinal direction
- **B** Adjust the inclination
- **C** Adjusting the height

Adjusting the seat back



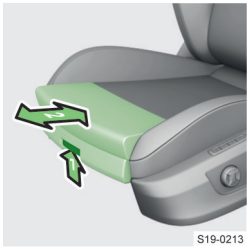
- **A** Adjust the inclination

Adjusting the lumbar support



- **A** Set the position of the curvature
- **B** Set the extent of the curvature

Set the length of the seat manually



› Press the release handle.
› Push the front part of the seat forwards or backwards.

Memory function of the seat

Functionality

Valid for vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat.

Each of the memory buttons on the driver's seat can be used to store and recall the set driver's seat and exterior mirror position.

Depending on the equipment, the front passenger seat may also have a memory function.

Operation

Retrieve stored position
› With the ignition off and the driver's door open, **press** the desired memory button.
› In other instances, **hold** the button for example with the ignition switched on or the driver's door closed.

The passenger seat position can be retrieved in the same way.

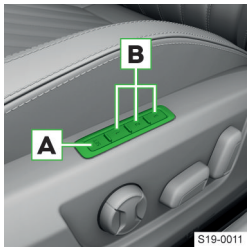
Stop position change
› With the ignition off and the driver's door open, **press** any button on the seat to be adjusted.

Or:

› Press the button on the key.
› In other cases, **release** the held memory button.

Settings

Storing driver's seat and exterior mirror position for driving forwards



› Turn on the ignition.
› Adjust the seat and the exterior mirrors.
› Press the button A and within 10 seconds one of the memory buttons B.

Storing is confirmed by an acoustic signal.

The seat position can be stored if the angle of inclination of the seat back relative to the seat surface is less than approximately 110° and the seat is not in any of the end positions.

Save front passenger seat position
Storing the passenger seat position is analogous to storing the driver's seat position.

Storing front passenger´s exterior mirror position for reversing
Applies to Infotainment Swing.

› Turn on the ignition.
› In the Infotainment system, in the menu **CAR** > > *Outside* > *Mirrors and wipers* .
› Activate the folding function of the mirror.
› Turn the exterior mirror knob to the position **R**.
› Engage reverse gear.
› Adjust the mirror to the desired position.
› Disengage reverse gear.

The set mirror position is saved.

Storing front passenger´s exterior mirror position for reversing
to Infotainment Amundsen and Columbus.

› Turn on the ignition.
› In the Infotainment system, select the menu **MENU** > > > *Outside* .
› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Mirror* .
› Select *Mirror* and activate the mirror's fold function.
› Turn the exterior mirror knob to the position **R**.
› Engage reverse gear.
› Adjust the mirror to the desired position.
› Disengage reverse gear.

The set mirror position is saved.

When changing the stored seat and exterior mirror position for forward driving, the passenger exterior mirror position for reverse driving must be restored.

Driver's seat - entry assist function
Depending on the equipment, the vehicle can have an entry assist function.

When the driver's door is opened, the seat moves into a position that enables easy entry.

The seat moves back to the saved position as soon as the door is closed and the ignition is switched on.

The seat moves to a position that allows easy exit as soon as the ignition is switched off.

This function is activated in the following menu in the Infotainment system:

CAR > ⚙ > *Interior* > *Seats*

Or:

MENU > 🚗 > 🚗 > *Interior* > *Seats*

Seat massage function

Turn on/turn off



Version 1



Version 2

› Press the 💺 button.

Function switches off automatically after 10 minutes.

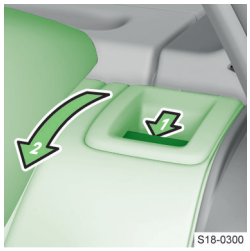
⚠ **CAUTION**
▸ Only switch the function on and off when the vehicle is stationary.

Rear seats

Folding down the seat backs

Before folding down
› Insert the rear headrests as far as they will go or remove them.
› Adjust the position of the front seats in such a way that they are not damaged by the folded-down seat backrests.
› Pull the outer seat belt to the side trim.

Folding forwards from the passenger compartment



› Press the release handle and fold the seat forwards.

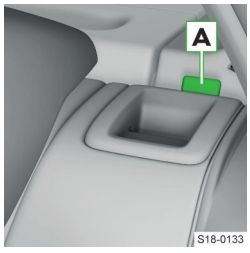
Folding forwards from the boot



› Pull on the lever.

The seat back is unlocked and partly folded forwards.

Folding back up



› Pull the outer seat belt to the side trim.
› Fold the seat backrest back up.

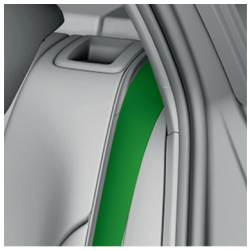
The release handle must audibly click into place.

› Check that the seat backrest has locked in place. The pin A must not be visible.

Folding the backrests forward from the luggage compartment



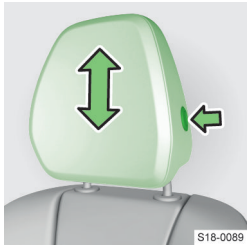
Park position of rear seat belts



Headrests

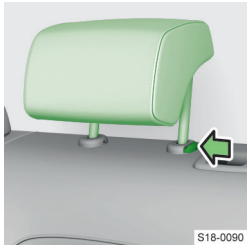
Adjusting the headrests

Front headrests



› Hold the safety button and move the headrest in the desired direction.

Rear headrests



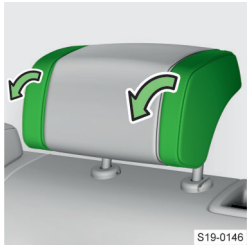
› Move the headrest in the desired direction.

When pushing down, press and hold the safety button.

Folding side bolsters on the rear headrest

The folded down side bolsters reduce uncontrolled sideways head movement , e.g. when sleeping.

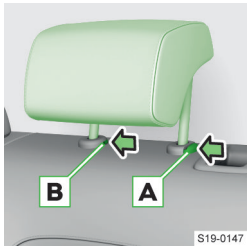
› Adjust the headrest to the initial pulled out position.



› Fold down the side bolsters on the head rest.

Removing and inserting the rear headrests

Removing



› Partially fold the respective seat back forwards.
› Move the headrest up to the stop.
› Press safety buttons A and B at the same time and remove the support.

Inserting

› Insert the headrest into the seat backrest.

The safety button must click into place.

Sleep package



The package includes folding side bolsters for the headrest and a bag with a blanket.

Front armrest

Settings



Adjusting the height

› Raise the backrest to one of the locked positions.

Folding down

› Raise the backrest beyond the highest locked position and fold it down again.

Adjust in a longitudinal direction

› Move the backrest to the desired position.

⚠ **WARNING**

Danger of a functional restriction of the central airbag!

▸ The front armrest must be folded down while driving or raised in one of the locking positions.

Rear armrest

Settings



› Fold down the armrest.

The folded-down armrest can be used as a storage table.

Load-through device

Open and close

Open from the passenger compartment



› Press the lid in the upper area and pull on the handle.

› Open the lid.

Open from the luggage compartment



› Press the store button.

› Open the lid.

Closing

› Fold back the lid from the passenger compartment until it clicks into place.

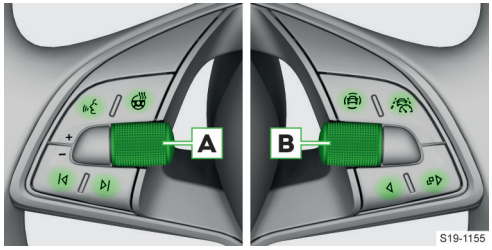
After closing, the red mark on the back of the cover above the safety button must not be visible.

⚠ **WARNING**

▸ The through-loading channel is only intended for transporting skis in a secured through-loading bag.

Steering wheel

Buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel



Switch voice control on/off

Heated steering wheel » page 63

A **Rotate** - Adjust the volume
Press - Switch the sound off/on

Switch to the next track/station played

Switch to the previous track/station played

Show menu of assistance systems

Switching the Travel Assist assistance system on / off » page 164

B Depending upon vehicle equipment:

▸ Operating an analogue instrument cluster » page 64

▸ Operating a digital instrument cluster » page 65

Depending upon vehicle equipment:

▸ Operating an analogue instrument cluster » page 64

▶ Operating a digital instrument cluster » page 65

◁ Depending upon vehicle equipment:

▶ Operating an analogue instrument cluster » page 64

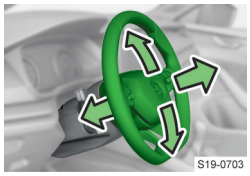
▶ Operating a digital instrument cluster » page 65

Setting the steering wheel position

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
▶ Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.



› Swing the safety lever downwards.



› Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



› Press the safety lever as far as it will go.

Troubleshooting

Power assisted steering faulty

illuminates - total failure of the power assisted steering, failure of steering assistance

› Turn off the ignition, start the engine and drive a few meters.
› If the indicator light does not go out, do not continue driving. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

illuminates - partial failure of the power assisted steering, possible reduction in power steering

› Turn off the ignition, start the engine and drive a few meters.
› If the indicator light does not go out, you can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Steering column lock faulty

flashes
Message regarding a fault in the steering column lock

› Stop the vehicle.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

After switching off the ignition, it is then no longer possible to switch on the ignition, to lock the steering and to switch on the electrical components.

flashes
Message regarding a fault in the steering lock

› You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Steering column lock not unlocked

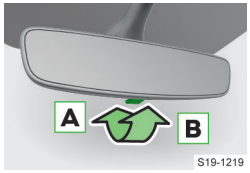
flashes
Message concerning the required steering wheel movement

› Move the steering wheel slightly back and forth.
› If the steering does not unlock, stop the vehicle and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Interior rear-view mirror

Operation

Interior mirror with manual darkening



A Mirror is not darkened
B Mirror darkens

Interior mirror with automatic darkening
Darkening of the mirror is automatically controlled through the sensors in the mirror once the engine is started.

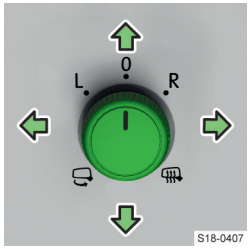
⚠ **CAUTION**
Risk of an accident!
A glowing display e.g. a mobile phone or navigation device may affect the function of the automatic mirror darkening.
▶ Do not attach these devices close to the mirror.

Wing mirror

Operation

Depending on the equipment, the mirrors can be folded in manually or electrically.

Positions of the rotary knob



- **L** Adjust the left-hand exterior mirror
- **0** Switch off operation
- **R** Adjust the right-hand exterior mirror
- Fold mirror in electrically (to fold back out, select a different position)
- Heat the mirror when the engine is running

Adjusting the mirror surface

› Select position **L** or **R**.

› Turn the rotary knob in the direction of the arrows.

Folding electrically folding mirrors automatically

If this function is activated, the mirrors are folded in when the vehicle is locked and folded back when it is unlocked.

Locking of the vehicle is not indicated by the fact that the mirrors fold in. Locking of the vehicle is indicated by the turn signal lights flashing.

Manually foldable mirrors

› Fold the mirror towards the side window by applying pressure with your hand.

Setting the mirror surfaces synchronously

If this function is activated, the mirror surface of the passenger mirror is also set when the mirror surface of the driver's mirror is set.

Mirror with memory function

Valid for vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat.

The current setting for the exterior mirror surfaces can be stored in the memory of the driver's seat » page 35.

Lower the passenger mirror surface when reversing

Valid for vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat.

The mirror surface of the passenger mirror takes in the memory of the driver's seat » page 35 stored position to improve visibility when reversing.

Operating conditions

✓ The function can be activated in Infotainment.

✓ The mirror position is saved.

✓ The reverse gear is engaged.

✓ The adjustment knob is in the **R** position.

The mirror automatically resumes the home position when driving forward at speeds above 15 km/h or after the ignition is switched off.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

The exterior mirrors make objects appear farther away.

▸ Use the rear-view mirror to determine the distance from vehicles behind.

ⓘ NOTICE

Danger of mirror damage!

▸ If the electrically foldable mirror is swung out by external influences (e.g. due to an impact during manoeuvring), fold the mirror in using the rotary knob and wait for an audible folding sound.

Settings

Activation or deactivation of the automatic folding of the exterior mirrors, the synchronous adjustment of the mirror surfaces as well as the lowering of the passenger-side mirror surface when reversing are carried out as follows:

› In the Infotainment system, in the menu **CAR** > > *Outside* > *Mirror* .

› Perform activation or deactivation.

Or:

› In the Infotainment system, select the menu **MENU** > > > *Outside* .

› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Mirror* .

› Select *Mirror* and perform activation or deactivation.

Troubleshooting

Electric mirror operation impaired

› Adjust the mirror surface by pressing it lightly with your finger.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of burns!

▸ Do not touch heated exterior mirror surfaces.

Restraint systems and airbags

Seat belts

Functionality

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer very good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

⚠ **WARNING**

- The seat belts must not be removed or altered in any other way.
- If the driver's seat belt is damaged, stop driving.
- If another seat belt is damaged, the seat must not be occupied.
- Do not repair damaged seat belts yourself.
- Have a damaged seat belt replaced immediately by a specialist garage.

Automatic belt retractor

The automatic retractor locks the belt in the event of a jerky pull on the belt. The belts lock, for example, when full braking, when the car accelerates, when driving downhill and when cornering.

⚠ **WARNING**

- If the seat belt does not lock when pulled jerkily, have the retractor checked by a specialist garage.

Belt tensioners

The safety of the driver, front passenger and passengers on the outer rear seats **who are wearing their seat belts** is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels on the front and rear external seat belts.

If there is a collision with a certain severity, the seat belt is tightened by the belt tensioner so that unwanted body movement is prevented.

The belt tensioner can also be deployed when the seat belt is not fastened.

Belt tensioners are **not activated** in the event of a roll-over, **minor** collisions or in accidents in which no major forces are produced.

ⓘ Smoke is released when the belt tensioner is deployed. This does not indicate a vehicle fire.

Reversible belt tensioner

Vehicles with a proactive occupant protection system include reversible belt tensioners » page 166.

The reversible belt tensioners increase safety for the belted driver and front passenger by automatically tightening the seat belt tightly over the body in critical driving situations and then releasing it again.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

Depending on the type of display, the display can be as follows:

illuminated – a front or rear seat belt is not fastened

lights up - rear seat not occupied

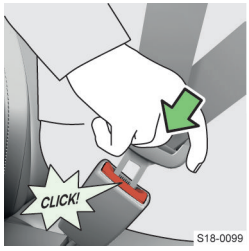
illuminated – a rear seat belt is not fastened

illuminated – a rear seat belt is fastened.

illuminated – a rear seat belt is fastened.

Operation

Fastening the seat belt



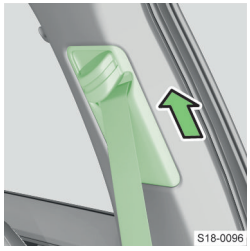
- › Grasp the buckle latch and slowly pull the belt over the chest and pelvis towards the buckle.
- › Insert the buckle latch into the buckle until there is an audible click.
- › Pull on the belt to ensure that the buckle is securely fastened.

Unfastening the seat belt

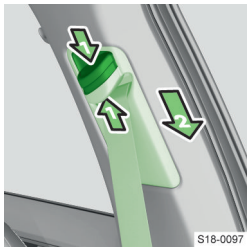


- › Grasp the buckle latch and release it by pressing the red button.
- › Hold the belt so it does not twist when rolling up.

Settings



- › Move the seat belt height adjuster upwards to increase the height.



› Press the safety button and move the seat belt height adjuster down to reduce the height.

› After adjustment, firmly pull on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place and that the belt is locked securely.

Troubleshooting

Blocked belt retractor



› Grasp the strap in the middle and pull quickly.

› Hold the strap and let it roll up slowly.

› Pull on the strap to see if the retractor is working properly.

› If the strap is still blocked, repeat the unlocking procedure once or twice.

› If the strap is still blocked, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Child seat

What you should be mindful of

For how to install and use the child seat, please note the instructions in this Owner's Manual as well as the instructions of the child seat manufacturer.

For safety reasons, we always recommend that children are transported on the back seats. Carry children on the front passenger seat only in exceptional cases.

Use child seats according to standard ECE-R 44 and ECE-R 129 of the European Economic Commission.

Child seats according to standard ECE-R 44 and ECE-R 129 are marked with the test symbol: large E in a circle, with the test number below.

We recommend using child seats from the ŠKODA Original Accessories range. These child seats have been developed and tested for use in ŠKODA vehicles. They satisfy the standard ECE-R 44 or ECE-R 129.

⚠ WARNING

▶ When installing the child seat on the rear seat, adjust the front seat so that there is no contact between the front seat and the child seat or the child carried in the child seat.

▶ Before installing a forward-facing child seat, adjust the headrest so that it is as low as possible.

▶ If the headrest prevents the child seat from being fitted, adjust the headrest to the highest position.

▶ When installing the child seat, avoid contact between the roof and the rear pillar. If the head airbag is deployed, there is a risk of injury.

▶ If using a separate child seat cushion, adjust the headrest so that the child's head is flush with, but not protruding above the height of the top edge of the headrest.

Using a child seat on the front passenger seat

When using a child seat on the passenger seat, any country-specific regulations must be observed.

Never use a child seat in which the child is carried with his or her back to the direction of travel on a seat protected by an active airbag placed in front of the seat. This could cause serious injury to the child, even death.

This is also indicated by the following stickers:



A Sticker on the passenger sun visor

B Sticker on the central body pillar on the passenger side

The following instructions must be followed when using a child seat on the front passenger seat:

▶ It is essential to deactivate the front passenger airbag if using a child seat in which the child is transported with its back facing the direction of travel » page 47.

▶ If possible, adjust the front passenger seat backrest so that it is vertical, to ensure that there is secure contact between the backrest and the child seat.

▶ If possible, move the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and the child seat behind it.

▶ Adjust the height-adjustable front passenger seat as much as possible.

▶ Set the front passenger seat belt as high up as possible.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of the seat belt causing a neck injury to the transported child!
- ▸ For child seats in groups 2 and 3, ensure that the guide fitting attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the seat belt height adjuster on the central body pillar.
- ▸ Adjust the height of the front passenger seat belt so that the belt passes through the guide fitting without kinking and is not bent over the edge of the guide fitting.

⚠ **WARNING**
- ▸ As soon as the rear-facing child seat is no longer being used on the front passenger seat, activate the front passenger airbag again.

Recommended child seats

Grouping of child seats according to standard ECE-R 44.

Group	Weight of the child
0	up to 10 kg
0+	up to 13 kg
1	9-18 kg
2	15-25 kg
3	22-36 kg

Recommended child seats

Group	Manufacturer	Type	Attachment	Order number	Approval number (E1 ...)
0+ (up to 13 kg)	Britax Römer	Baby Safe Plus	Isofix base frame	1ST019907	04 301146
1 (9-18 kg)	Britax Römer	Duo Plus TT	ISOFIX and TOP TETHER	DDA000006	04 301133
2-3 (15-36 kg)	Britax Römer	Kidfix XP [a)]	ISOFIX	000019906K	04 301198
	Britax Römer	Kidfix II XP	ISOFIX	000019906L	04 301323

[a)] For optimum protection, especially in the event of a side impact, it is recommended that you use this child seat complete with the backrest.

Fasteners for child seats

Use of child seats

Overview of usability of child seats according to standard ECE-R 16.

Child seats with the ISOFIX system

Group	Size category of child seat [a]	Front passenger's seat		Rear seats	
		With activated front airbag	With deactivated front airbag [b]	Outer seats [b]	Centre seat
0 (up to 10 kg)	E	X	IL	IL	X
0+ (up to 13 kg)	E D C	X	IL	IL	X
1 (9-18 kg)	D C B B1 A	IUF	IL IUF	IL IUF	X
2 (15-25 kg)	-	IUF	IL	IL	X
3 (22-36 kg)	-	IUF	IL	IL	X

[a] The size category of the child seat is indicated on the child seat plate.

[b] The seat is suitable for the fixing system ISO/R3.

IL The seat is suitable for the ISOFIX child seats with "Semi-Universal" approval.

IUF The seat is suitable for forward-facing child seats and is permitted for use in this weight category.

X The seat is not equipped with eyelets for the ISOFIX system.

i-Size

Front passenger's seat		Rear seats	
With activated front airbag	With deactivated front airbag	Outer seats	Centre seat
i-UF	i-U	i-U	X

i-UF The seat is only suitable for forward-facing i-Size child seats of the "Universal" category.

i-UF The seat is suitable for forward- and backward-facing i-Size child seats of the "Universal" category.

X The seat is not suitable for i-Size child seats of the "Universal" category.

Child seat fastened with a safety belt

Group	Front passenger's seat		Rear seats	
	With activated front airbag	With deactivated front airbag	Outer seats	Centre seat [a]
0 (up to 10 kg)	X	U [b]	U	U
0+ (up to 13 kg)	X	U [b]	U	U
1 (9-18 kg)	UF	U	U	U
2 (15-25 kg)	UF	U	U	U
3 (22-36 kg)	UF	U	U	U

[a] It is forbidden to install a child seat with a support foot in the middle rear seat.

[b] Adjust the height-adjustable front passenger seat as much as possible.

U The seat is suitable for the child seat category “Universal” and is permitted for use in this weight group.

UF The seat is suitable for forward-facing child seats in the “Universal”category and is permitted for use in this weight group.

X The seat is not suitable for children in this weight group.

Overview

ISOFIX

⚠ **WARNING**

- On the retaining eyelets that are used to install the child seat with the ISOFIXSystem provided, do not attach any other child seats, belts or objects.

The ISOFIX system allows for the fast and secure installation of the child seat. The eyelets for installing the child seat using the ISOFIX system are located on the outer rear seats and possibly on the front passenger seat.

A child seat that uses the ISOFIXsystem can only be installed in the vehicle if it is approved for this vehicle type. Further information can be obtained from a ŠKODA partner or from a list of vehicles enclosed with the child seat.

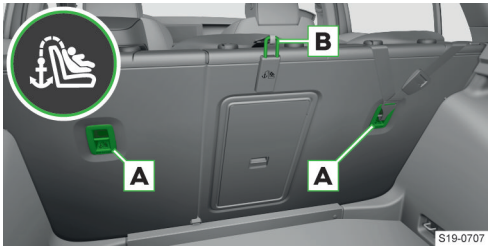


› Fold back the covers before installing the child seat.

TOP TETHER

⚠ **WARNING**

- Child seats with the TOP TETHER- Only use the system on the seats with the eyelets TOP TETHERSymbol are provided.
- Only attach one belt from the child seat to a locking eye TOP TETHER-Fasten the system.
- When attaching the child seat with the TOP TETHER- No other object may be attached to the eyelet TOP TETHERSystem.



Holding eyelets on the rear seats



Holding eyelet on the passenger seat

The belt fastened into the TOP TETHER system restricts the movement of the upper part of the child seat. The holding eyelets for attaching the belt are located on the outer rear seats A, as well as on the middle rear seat B or passenger seat when necessary.

Airbags

Usage

The airbag system provides, as a supplement to the seat belts, additional occupant protection during severe frontal and side-on collisions.

The best possible protective effect of the airbag is achieved only when the seat belt is also worn. The airbag system is no substitute for the seat belts.

What you should be mindful of

Airbag systems can only properly protect if all occupants have been secured and they are in the correct seating position.

No persons, animals or objects such as cup holders or hangers for clothes may be in the deployment area of the airbags » page 46.

- Do not cover or stick anything over the steering wheel or the dash panel. The front airbags were not able to deploy.

The front passenger airbag should be switched off in some situations » page 47.

Functionality

When sinking into the inflated airbag, the forward movement of the body is damped and the risk of injury is reduced.

ⓘ As the airbags inflate, smoke is released. This does not indicate a vehicle fire.

Airbag deployment in the event of an accident
Airbag deployment is influenced by many factors. The deceleration rate at the time of impact is crucial.

⚠ **WARNING**
Danger of serious or fatal injuries!
- Maintain the correct seating position.
- Do not keep your limbs in the deployment area of the airbags.

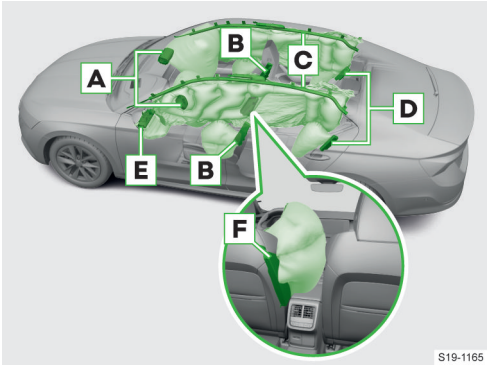
⚠ **WARNING**
Danger of a functional restriction of the central airbag!
- The front armrest must be folded down while driving or raised in one of the locking positions.

In the following situations, **no** airbags are deployed:
- Minor frontal and side collisions
- Rear-end collision
- Vehicle rollover

If the measured deceleration rate is below the reference values programmed into the control unit, the airbags will not be deployed despite possible serious vehicle damage.

Airbag overview

The installation location of the airbags is marked with the lettering AIRBAG.



A Front airbags
B Side airbags - front
C Head airbags
D Side airbags - rear
E Driver's knee airbag
F Central airbag between the driver and front passenger seats

⚠ **WARNING**
Danger of a functional restriction of the side airbags!
- Do not exert excessive forces, e.g. impacts, on the seat backs.
- Do not use seat covers that have not been approved by ŠKODA.
- Have damaged seat covers at the installation location of the side airbags repaired by a specialist garage.

Deactivating the airbags
We recommend having airbags other than the front passenger airbag deactivated » page 47, *Operation*by a ŠKODA service partner.

Deactivation of the airbags should be considered in cases such as the ones below:
- If the driver's seat adjustment is correct, the distance of at least 25 cm between the centre of the steering wheel and the sternum cannot be maintained.
- Additional operating controls for a physically disadvantaged driver are installed in the vehicle.
- The vehicle has special seats, e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags.

illuminates for 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on and then flashes for 12 seconds
- Airbag or belt tensioner deactivated with the diagnostic device
Message regarding the deactivated airbag or belt tensioner

⚠ **WARNING**
If an airbag is deactivated during the sale of the vehicle, inform the buyer!

Requirements

✓ Ignition on

Troubleshooting

Airbag system faulty
illuminates
Message regarding an airbag fault

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Key switch for the front passenger airbag

Usage

Deactivation of the front passenger airbag is provided for the following cases, for example:
- A rear-facing child seat is mounted on the front passenger seat.
- The minimum distance to the control panel cannot be maintained.

What you should be mindful of

⚠ **WARNING**
Danger of fault in the passenger airbag deactivation system!
▸ Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off.

⚠ **WARNING**
Danger of unexpected deployment of the passenger airbags in an accident!
▸ After switching off the passenger airbag with the key bit, do not leave the key bit inserted in the key switch while driving. Shocks can cause the Key assignment to turn in the slot and trigger the airbag.

Operation

Before switching off/switching on the front passenger airbag
› Remove the key bit.

Switch front passenger front airbag on/off



› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the passenger door.
› Insert the key bit into the slot in the key switch as far as it will go.
› To **Switch off**, carefully rotate the key switch into the position **OFF**.
› To **Switch on**, carefully rotate the key switch into the position **ON**.
› Remove the key bit from the slot.
› Close the passenger door.
› Turn on the ignition and check that the front passenger airbag indicator lights are lit up.

Warning lights



▸ After switching on the ignition, the two indicator lights light up briefly.
▸ If the system is OK, both of the indicator lights go out.
▸ One of the indicator lights then lights up again depending on the position of the key switch:

OFF lights up - front passenger airbag switched off

ON lights up 65 secs after the ignition is switched on – passenger front airbag switched on

Troubleshooting

Key switch for airbag deactivation is faulty

ON flashes together with OFF
The front passenger airbag will not be deployed in the event of an accident!

› Have the airbag system checked by a specialist garage immediately.

Lighting, windscreen wipers and washers

Exterior lighting

Functionality

Unless otherwise stated, the light works when the ignition is switched on.

Daylight running lights
The daytime running lights illuminate the area in front of the vehicle.

In vehicles for certain markets, this also provides lighting for the rear area of the vehicle.

Operating conditions
✓ The light switch is located in mode AUTO.

Automatically switch lights on/off
The light is automatically switched on or off according to the given lighting conditions and vehicle operation (standstill/travel).

Some of the following lighting functions turn on/off automatically:
▶ Dipped beam and parking lights
▶ Daylight running lights

Operating conditions
✓ The light switch is located in mode AUTO.

The automatic dipping and parking light switching is indicated by the illumination of the symbol in the light switch.

Switching low beam on automatically in rain
Operating conditions
✓ The light switch is located in mode AUTO.
✓ The function is activated.
✓ The windscreen wipers are switched on for longer than 30 seconds.

The automatic headlight circuit is indicated by the illumination of the symbol in the light switch.

Full LED Headlights
When the light switch is in mode AUTO, the headlights provide the best possible beam of light in front of the vehicle. The **Dynamic cornering light** function ensures the best possible illumination of the curve area.

CORNER function
The CORNER function is intended for turning or manoeuvring (e.g. when parking).

The function illuminates the vicinity of the vehicle front in the direction of travel.

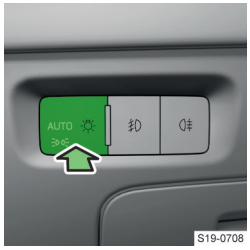
Operating conditions
✓ The turn signal is switched on or the front wheels are steered sharply.
✓ The low beam is switched on.
✓ Visibility is reduced in the area around the vehicle.
✓ The fog lights are not switched on.
✓ The driving speed is lower than 40 km/h.

When no light is switched on
The control light may also light up in the instrument cluster, indicating that it is necessary to switch on the light.

illuminates
› Switch on the light.

Operation

Light modes



The light mode can be selected using the switch .

› Press the switch repeatedly and select the desired mode.

The information of selected mode is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster display.

The menu with available light modes varies depending on the given lighting conditions and the vehicle operation (standstill/drive).

▶ AUTO - **Automatic mode**

Automatic switching on/off of dipped, parking or daytime running lights.

In the light switch, is illuminated AUTO. Even if the dipped beam is automatically turned on, the switch also lights up .

▶ - **Dipped beam**

Turning on the dipped beam.

In the light switch, is illuminated .

▶ - **Sidelights**

Switching on the sidelights.

In the light switch, is illuminated .

▶ OFF - **Light turned off**

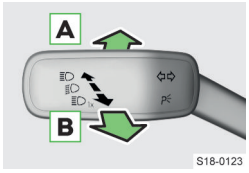
Turn off the light.

There is no green warning light in the light switch.

After switching on the ignition, the AUTO mode is automatically set.

Switching on the parking light and switching off the light is only possible when the vehicle is stationary or driving at a speed of max. 10 km/h up to a distance of max. 100 m. When one of the values is exceeded, automatic driving light switching takes place.

High beam and headlight flasher
The high beam works when the low beam is on.



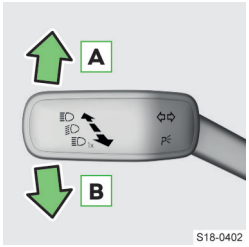
A Switch on high beam

B Switch off main beam / switch on headlight flasher

When the main beam or headlight flasher is switched on, the indicator lamp lights up in the instrument cluster.

⚠ CAUTION
Risk of an accident!
▸ Do not dazzle other road users with the high beam.

Turn signal



A Switching on the turn signal light on the right - the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster

B Switching on the turn signal light on the left - the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster

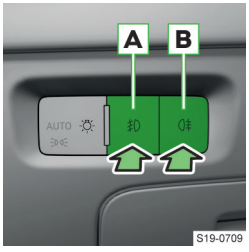
Turn signal - convenience signalling
Convenience signalling enables three flashes of the turn signal lights without having to move the lever up or down.

› Tap the control lever up or down.

The corresponding turn signal lights flash three times.

Tap the lever in the opposite direction ahead of time to stop signalling.

Fog light



Front/rear fog light switch

A Fog lights - the warning light in the instrument cluster illuminates

B Rear fog light - the warning light in the instrument cluster illuminates

› Switch on the respective switch (for fog lamp/rear fog lamp).

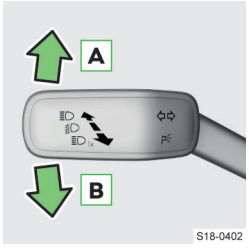
The rear fog light does not illuminate when an accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

Hazard warning light system
› Press the button to switch on or off ⚠ in the middle part of the control panel.

The hazard warning lights can be switched on automatically during hard braking. The hazard warning lights are then switched off again automatically when starting off or accelerating.

When the hazard warning system is on and the turn signal is switched on, the hazard warning lights will be switched off temporarily and only the turn signal will flash on the relevant side of the vehicle.

One-sided parking light
The one-sided parking light allows one side of the parked vehicle to be illuminated through activation of the corresponding sidelights.



A Switch on the sidelights on the right

B Switch on the sidelights on the left

› Switch off the ignition.
› Move the lever to the appropriate position.
› Lock the vehicle.

When the parking light is switched on, an acoustic warning signal sounds and the driver's door is opened. After a few seconds or after the driver's door is closed, the warning signal will stop.

Double-sided parking light
The two-sided parking light allows the parked vehicle to be illuminated through activation of the sidelights.

› Turn on the ignition.
› Choose light mode.
› Switch off the ignition.
› Lock the vehicle.

When the parking light is switched on, an acoustic warning signal sounds after the ignition is switched off and the driver's door is opened. After a few seconds or after the driver's door is closed, the warning signal will stop.

The light may switch off automatically if the 12-volt vehicle battery is too low. If the parking lights on both sides are switched on with the ignition off, the lights will not be switched off automatically and the 12 volt vehicle battery may be discharged.

Settings

Activating/deactivating the automatic headlights system in rain
› In the Infotainment system, in the menu **CAR** > ⚙ > *Outside* > *Headlights* .

› Activate or deactivate the automatic driving light switch function when it rains.

Or:

› In the Infotainment system, select the menu **MENU** > > > *Outside* .
› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Headlights* .
› Select *Headlights* and activate or deactivate the function of the automatic driving light switch function when it rains.

Activating/deactivating convenience signalling

› In the Infotainment system, in the menu **CAR** > > *Outside* > *Headlights* .
› Activate or deactivate the function *Comfort flasher* .

Or:

› In the Infotainment system, select the menu **MENU** > > > *Outside* .
› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Headlights* .
› Select *Headlights* and actiavte or deactivate the function *Comfort flasher* .

Headlamp levelling, LED headlights

› In the Infotainment system, in the menu **CAR** > > *Outside* > *Headlights* .
› Select the menu item for headlight range control.
› Adjust the headlight range using the slider. The headlight range must correspond to the vehicle's load.

Or:

› In the Infotainment system, select the menu **MENU** > > > *Outside* .
› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Headlights* .
› Select *Headlights* .
› Select the menu item for headlight range control.
› Adjust the headlight range using the slider. The headlight range must correspond to the vehicle's load.

0 Front seats occupied, boot empty
2 All seats occupied, boot empty
4 All seats occupied, boot loaded
6 Driver's seat occupied, boot loaded

In the event of another vehicle loading condition, the positions **1**, **3**, **5** can be used.

For the Full LED headlights, the headlight range control is adjusted automatically.

⚠ WARNING
Risk of an accident!
An incorrectly adjusted headlight range can cause insufficient vehicle lighting or can dazzle other road users.
▸ Adjust the headlight range correctly.

Activate / deactivate the dynamic cornering lights function

Applies to full LED headlights.

› In the Infotainment system, in the menu **CAR** > > *Outside* > *Headlights* .
› Activate or deactivate the function *Dynamic cornering light* .

Or:

› In the Infotainment system, select the menu **MENU** > > > *Outside* .
› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Headlights* .
› Select *Headlights* and actiavte or deactivate the function *Dynamic cornering light* .

Adjust headlights for driving in right / left-hand traffic

Applies to full LED headlights.

› In the Infotainment system, in the menu **CAR** > > *Outside* > *Headlights* .
› Activate or deactivate the function *Travel mode:* .

Or:

› In the Infotainment system, select the menu **MENU** > > > *Outside* .
› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Headlights* .
› Select *Headlights* and actiavte or deactivate the function *Travel mode:* .

Troubleshooting

Turn signal light defective

flashes faster - turn signal light on the right defective

› Check the turn signal light on the right.

flashes faster - turn signal light on the left defective

› Check the turn signal light on the left.

does not flash when the trailer is hitched - trailer turn signal light defective

› Check the trailer lighting.

LED bulb or light bulb is defective

illuminates together with ⚠
Information appears in the display regarding the defective lights.

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

The headlights are misted up on the inside

Inside the headlights, moisture may occur. This is not a defect.

Malfunction of the automatic headlight circuit
› Clean the windscreen in the area of the rain/light sensor.

Beam of light in front of the vehicle has shortened
Headlight defective.

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Driving lights defective
If a message regarding the failed driving lights is displayed, the light will work in emergency mode.

› Drive on, exercising appropriate caution.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

COMING HOME, LEAVING HOME exterior lighting

Functionality

The COMING HOME function turns on the light after turning off the ignition and opening the driver's door. The light switches off automatically after the set lighting time has elapsed.

The LEAVING HOME function switches on the light when unlocking the vehicle with the wireless remote control.

Operating conditions

✓ Visibility has worsened.
✓ The light switch is located in mode **AUTO**.

Settings

› In the Infotainment system, select the menu **MENU** > > > *Outside* .
› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Comfort light* .
› Select *Comfort light* select and set the speed limit.

After switching off the ignition, a menu is displayed on the Infotainment screen, showing where the COMING HOME function can be activated/deactivated.

Light Assist high-beam assist system

Functionality

The high beam assist system automatically switches the high beam on and off.

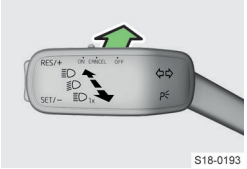
⚠ WARNING
Risk of accident!
▸ If necessary, manually switch the high beam on or off.

Operating conditions

✓ The system is activated.
✓ The light switch is located in mode **AUTO**.
✓ The driving speed is higher than 30 km/h.
✓ The low beam is switched on.

Operation

Switching on



› Push the lever in the direction of the arrow.

It lights up in the instrument cluster from the isolation box.

Switching off
› Manually switch the high beam on or off.

Function restriction

The system may dazzle other road users if their headlights/lights are not detected for the following reasons, for example:

▸ The headlights/lights of oncoming vehicles are covered by crash barriers, for example.
▸ The headlamps/lights of the oncoming or preceding vehicle are dirty or not functioning.

Settings

Activation/deactivation
› In the Infotainment system, select the menu **MENU** > > > *Outside* .
› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Headlights* .
› Select *Headlights* and actiavte or deactivate the function *Light Assist* .

Dynamic Light Assist headlight assist system

Functionality

The headlight assist system automatically switches the high beam on and off.

When the high beam is switched on, it adjusts the light cone so that the drivers of oncoming and preceding vehicles are not dazzled.

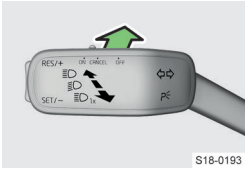
⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of accident!
▶ If necessary, manually switch the high beam on or off.

Operating conditions

✓ The system is activated.
✓ The light switch is located in mode AUTO.
✓ The driving speed is higher than 30 km/h (for some countries, higher than 60 km/h).
✓ The low beam is switched on.

Operation

Switching on



› Push the lever in the direction of the arrow.

It lights up in the instrument cluster from the isolation box.

Switching off

› Manually switch the high beam on or off.

Function restriction

The system may dazzle other road users if their headlights/lights are not detected for the following reasons, for example:

▶ The headlights/lights of oncoming vehicles are covered by crash barriers, for example.
▶ The headlamps/lights of the oncoming or preceding vehicle are dirty or not functioning. The system can also recognize a vehicle as a single-lane means of transport.

Settings

Activation/deactivation

› In the Infotainment system, select the menu MENU > > > *Outside* .
› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Headlights* .
› Select *Headlights* and actiavte or deactivate the function *Dynamic Light Assist* .

Interior lighting

Operation

Switching on automatically

The lighting switches on when one of the following events occurs.

▶ The vehicle is unlocked
▶ One of the doors is opened
▶ The ignition is switched off

Automatic switch off

The lighting switches off when one of the following events occurs:

▶ The vehicle is locked
▶ The ignition is switched on
▶ About 45 seconds after all the doors have been closed

Operation of the lighting

Turn the front and rear lights on/off
OFF Deactivation of automatic activation (OFF lights up yellow when deactivated)

The individual lights can be switched on/off by touching the corresponding light.

The brightness level of the lighting can be adjusted by holding a finger on the light. The set brightness level is not saved once the lighting is switched off.

If a door remains open and the ignition is switched off, the lights will turn off automatically after 10 minutes.

Automatic switching on/off of the footwell lighting

The lighting only works when the dipped or parking lights are on.

The lighting is also switched on automatically after opening the door (e.g. when getting in or out).

Turn on the lighting for the make-up mirror in the sun visors on the windscreen

› Slide off the cover of the make-up mirror.

Settings

Switch and instrument lighting

Adjusting the brightness of the switch and instrument lighting is done in Infotainment in one of the following ways:



› Press the bar at the top of the screen and drag down.

A window showing the slider for setting the brightness level opens.

› Adjust the brightness level using the slider.

Or:

› The menu MENU > > > *Interior* .
› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the interior lighting menu item.
› Select the menu item for the interior lighting and adjust the brightness level using the slider.

Backlight of the infotainment screen and the centre console
Applies to vehicles that do not have the background lighting.

The following functions can be set in infotainment:

▸ Setting the lighting colour of the infotainment screen:
  ▸ Automatic depending on the selected driving mode
  ▸ Manually with the slider
▸ Centre console lighting brightness

› The menu MENU > > > *Interior* .
› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item for the Background lighting.
› Select the background lighting menu item and set the desired settings.

Footwell lighting
Applies to vehicles that do not have the background lighting.

› In the Infotainment system, select the menu MENU > > > *Interior* .
› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the interior lighting menu item.
› Select the menu item for the interior lighting and adjust the brightness level and color using the slider.

Interior ambient light

Usage

The ambient lighting ensures a comfortable atmosphere in the vehicle interior.

The lighting only works when the dipped or parking lights are on.

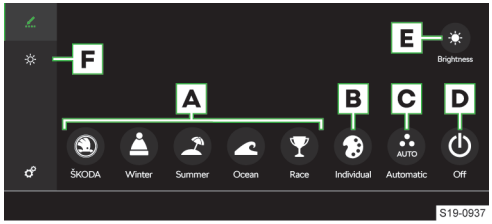
The lighting is also switched on automatically after opening the door.

When the vehicle is locked, the lighting briefly turns red. When the vehicle is unlocked, the lighting briefly turns green. When one of the doors is opened, the respective door light is illuminated in red to indicate that the door is open.

Settings

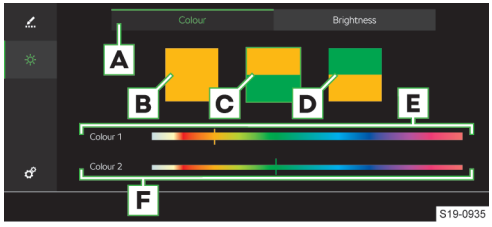
The ambient lighting is set in the Infotainment system, in the following menu MENU > .

Pre-selection options for background lighting



A Factory-set pre-selection options
  ▸ Only the general brightness level of the lighting is adjustable.
B User-selectable pre-selection option
  ▸ The lighting colour can be adjusted together for the dash panel and door area, as well as independently for the footwell.
  ▸ The brightness level for the lighting can be set independently for the control panel, central console and door area, as well as the footwell.
C Automatic selection option AUTO
  ▸ The colour and the brightness will change automatically depending on the selected driving mode.
D Turn off the lights
E Settings for the general brightness level
F Setting the colours and the brightness level for the pre-selection option

Setting the colour for the selection options



A Tab for adjusting the lighting colour
B Option for uniform illumination colour
  ▸ The colour is set using the slider E.
C Option for two-colour lighting
  ▸ Use the slider bar E to set the colour for the dash panel and door area.
  ▸ Use the slider bar F to set the colour for the footwell.
D Option for two-colour lighting

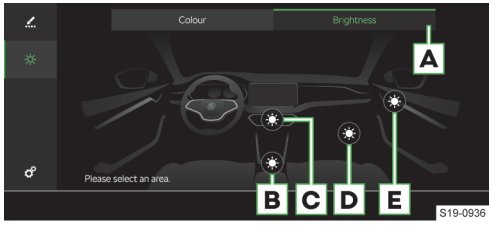
▸ The colour for the dash panel and door area is replaced with the colour for the footwell.

E Slider for adjusting the illumination colour

F Slider for adjusting the illumination colour

› Choose the preset option .
› Select the tab for setting the lighting colour.
› Choose whether to set a uniform lighting colour, if necessary, a different colour for the dash panel and door area and a different colour for the footwell.
› Set the desired lighting colour using the sliders.

Setting the brightness level for the selection options



A Tab for setting the brightness level

B Setting the brightness level for the centre console

C Setting the brightness level for the control panel area

D Setting the brightness level for the footwell

E Setting the brightness level for the door area

› Choose the preset option .
› Select the tab for setting the brightness level.
› Select the area for which the brightness level should be set.
› Set the desired brightness level using the slider.

Windscreen wipers and washers

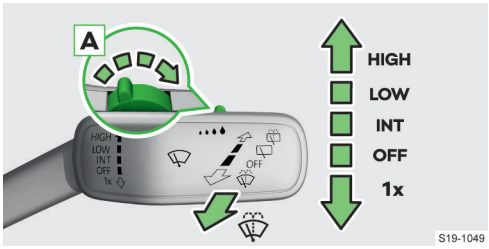
Operating conditions

✓ Engine compartment flap closed
✓ Boot lid closed
✓ Ignition on

Operation

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
At low temperatures, windscreen washer fluid can freeze on the windscreen and restrict visibility.
▸ Only use the windscreen washer when the windscreen is warm.

Wipe and wash the windscreen



HIGH Fast wiping

LOW Slow wiping

INT Depending upon vehicle equipment:
▸ Intermittent wiping
▸ Automatic wiping controlled by the rain sensor

OFF Switching off

1x Tip-wiping (spring-loaded position)

A Setting the wiping speed for the position **INT**

Washing and wiping (spring-loaded position)

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the windscreen washer nozzles of the windscreen can be heated automatically.

Clean headlights
When the headlights are switched on, they are cleaned the first time and after every tenth wash of the windscreen. Setting the spray interval can be carried out by a specialist garage.

Wipe and wash the rear window



Spring-loaded position:
▸ Washing and wiping the windscreen
▸ Cleaning the rear view camera

Wiping

OFF Switching off

Automatic rear window wiping
If the windscreen wiping is performed without interruption, then the automatic regular intermittent wiping of the rear window takes place.

When the windscreen wipers are switched on, the rear window is automatically wiped when the reverse gear is engaged.

Settings

Activating/deactivating automatic wiping
The functions for automatic rear window wiping and automatic wiping in the rain can be activated or deactivated as in the Infotainment system.

› The menu **CAR** > > *Outside* > *Mirrors and wipers* .

Or:

MENU > > > *Outside*

› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Mirrors and wipers* .
› Select *Mirrors and wipers* .
› Activate or deactivate the functions.

Refilling windscreen washer fluid

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
▸ Use windscreen washer fluid that is suitable for the weather conditions.

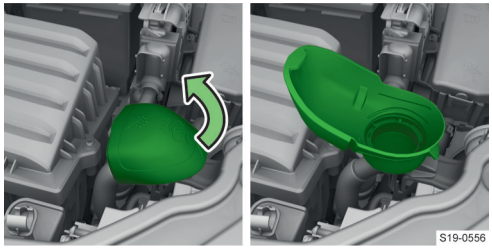
ⓘ **NOTICE**
Risk of damage to the windscreen washer system!
▸ When refilling the washer fluid, do not remove the strainer from the neck of the container.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Risk of damage to the headlights!
▸ Only use washer fluid that does not attack polycarbonates.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Risk of damage to engine compartment components!
▸ Close the container after refilling the windscreen washer fluid.

The windscreen washer tank is located in the engine compartment » page 12.

The container can hold a volume of 3 litres and 4.7 litres for vehicles with a headlight cleaning system.



Sealing cap of the tank

› Open the engine compartment lid » page 175.
› Gently open the top of the sealing cap.
› Top up the windscreen washer fluid.
› Close the sealing cap of the tank.

Troubleshooting

Windscreen washer fluid level too low
illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠

› Top up the windscreen washer fluid.

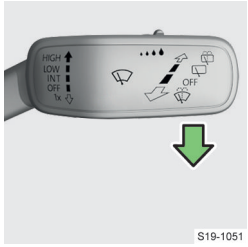
Frozen windscreen wipers
› Carefully remove frozen windscreen wipers from the windscreen before switching on the ignition and free them from snow and ice.

Folding down windscreen wiper arms and replacing windscreen wiper blades

For folding down the windscreen wiper from the screen you must first adjust the wiper arms to the folded position.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Risk of damage to the windscreen wipers and the engine compartment lid!
▸ Close the bonnet before lowering the wiper arms from the window.
▸ Do not turn on the ignition when the windscreen wiper arms are folded away.

Set the windscreen wiper arms into the folding position - using the operating lever
› Switch the ignition on and off again.



› Within 10 seconds, press the control lever down and hold for about 2 seconds.

Set the windscreen wiper arms into the folding position - using the Infotainment system
› The menu **CAR** > > *Outside* > *Mirrors and wipers* .
› Select the menu item for the service position of the windscreen wiper arms.

Or:

› The menu **MENU** > > > *Outside* .

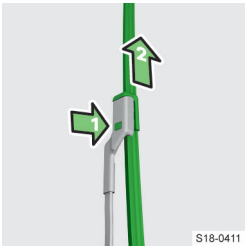
› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Mirrors and wipers* .
› Select *Mirrors and wipers* and then select the service position of the windscreen wiper arms.

After switching off the ignition, a menu is displayed on the Infotainment screen, showing where the windscreen wiper arms can be set to folding position.

Replace the windscreen wiper blade

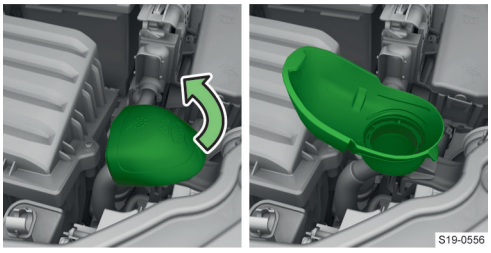
⚠ **CAUTION**
Risk of accident!
▸ Change the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year.

› Fold the windscreen wiper arm away from the windscreen.



› Press the catch and remove the wiper blade.
› Insert the new wiper blade until it clicks into place.
› Fold the windscreen wiper arm back onto the windscreen.
› Turn on the ignition and push the control lever down.

Cap for refilling the windscreen washer fluid



Heating and air conditioning system

Manual air conditioning

What you should be mindful of

▸ We recommend keeping the interior temperature no more than 5 ° C lower than the outdoor temperature.
▸ We recommend switching the cooling system off about 10 minutes before the end of the journey to prevent odour formation.
▸ Annual disinfection of the air conditioning is recommended.

⚠ **WARNING**
Danger of misting!
▸ Always keep the fan on.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of accident!
In recirculation mode, there is no fresh air supply from the outside. This can result in loss of driver attention and fogging up of windows.
▸ Keep the recirculation mode switched on for a short time only.

Operating conditions for the cooling system

✓ Outside temperature above 2 ° C
✓ Running engine
✓ Fan switched on

Operation

Menu for operating the air conditioning
› Press CLIMA under Infotainment.

Or:

› Tap **A/C** in the status bar of the infotainment screen.

The following menu is displayed:

Show classic settings for the air conditioning
Further settings for air conditioning

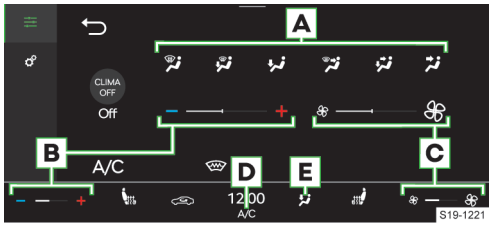
Settings

› Press CLIMA under the Infotainment and tap › in the Infotainment screen.

Or:

› Tap **A/C** in the status bar of the infotainment screen › in the infotainment screen.

The following menu is displayed:



A Set the direction of the air outlet

B Set the temperature

C Set the blower speed

D Display menu and switch on air conditioning

E Overview of the currently selected air distribution

CLIMA OFF Switch air conditioning on or off

A/C Switch the cooling system on/off

Switching the windscreen heater on/off » page 62, *Operation*

Switch the seat heating on/off » page 63, *Operation*

Switch recirculated air mode on/off

More settings

› Tap the functional surface on the Infotainment screen for further settings.

▸ *Automatic supplementary heater* - switch the quick interior heating on/off.

Cooling system

When the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and humidity in the vehicle will drop.

Switching on the cooling system prevents the windows from misting up.

After pressing the **A/C** button, the indicator light in the button illuminates, even if the conditions for switching on the cooling system are not met. The cooling system switches on when the conditions for switching on the cooling system are met.

Recirculated air mode

The recirculation mode prevents contaminated outside air getting into the interior of the vehicle.

Briefly switching on recirculation mode can increase the cooling effect.

When the air conditioner is operating, the engine idle speed may increase automatically.

Troubleshooting

Water under the vehicle

When the cooling system is switched on, water can drip off the air conditioning system. This is not a leak.

Fogging

› Increase the blower speed, switch on the cooling system, and set the air distribution to the windscreen.

Automatic switch-off of the cooling system

If the coolant temperature is too high, the cooling system may switch off automatically. This ensures sufficient engine cooling.

Climatronic automatic air conditioning system

What you should be mindful of

▸ We recommend keeping the internal temperature at most 5 °C lower than the external temperature.

▸ We recommend switching the cooling system off about 10 minutes before the end of the journey to prevent odour formation.

▸ Annual disinfection of the air conditioning is recommended.

⚠ **WARNING**

Danger of misting!

▸ Always keep the fan on.

⚠ **WARNING**

Risk of accident!

In recirculation mode, there is no fresh air supply from the outside. This can result in loss of driver attention and fogging up of windows.

▸ Keep the recirculation mode switched on for a short time only.

Functionality

Smart and classic air conditioning

Smart air conditioning is an automatic mode with preset selection options.

The classic air conditioning system enables the individual functions to be set.

Automatic mode

Automatic mode keeps the temperature constant and prevents the windows from misting.

Cooling system

When the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and humidity in the vehicle will drop.

Switching on the cooling system prevents the windows from misting up.

After pressing the **A/C** button, the indicator light in the button illuminates, even if the conditions for switching on the cooling system are not met. The cooling system switches on when the conditions for switching on the cooling system are met.

Recirculated air mode
The recirculation mode prevents contaminated outside air getting into the interior of the vehicle.

Air Care
Applies to Infotainment Swing.

The Air Care function reduces the penetration of pollutants into the vehicle interior. At the same time, the air is both circulated and cleaned.

For proper operation, the doors and windows must be closed.

The function is started/switched off by tapping on the function surface ≈ › *Activate* in the operating menu of the air conditioning system.

The air purification process is displayed in the Infotainment.

Air Care
Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.

The Air Care function reduces the penetration of pollutants into the vehicle interior. At the same time, the air is both circulated and cleaned.

For proper operation, the doors and windows must be closed.

The function is started/switched off by tapping on the function surface ≈ › *Air Care* in the operating menu of the air conditioning system.

When the Air Care function surface turns green, this indicates that the function has been switched on. *Air Care* is displayed in the status bar.

When the Air Care function surface turns white, this indicates that the function has been switched on. *Air Care* is displayed in the status bar.

After the function is switched off, the function surface *Air Care* lights up green for a certain time.

Operating conditions for the cooling system

✓ Outside temperature above 2 °C
✓ Running engine
✓ Fan switched on

Operation

Menu for operating the air conditioning
› Press CLIMA under Infotainment.

Or:

› Tap **A/C** or **CLIMA** in the lower status bar of the infotainment screen.

The following menu is displayed:

- Display smart air conditioning with pre-determined pre-set options
- Show classic settings for the air conditioning
- ≈ Air Care
- Further settings for air conditioning

After it is switched on, the air conditioning is started according to the settings, before it is switched off.

Settings

Set smart air conditioning
› Press CLIMA under the Infotainment and tap › in the Infotainment screen.

Or:

› Tap **A/C** or **CLIMA** in the lower status bar of the infotainment screen.

Depending on the equipment, a menu with a number of the following functions is displayed:

- CLIMA OFF Switch air conditioning on or off
- *Front* Show the front settings
- *Rear* Show the rear settings
- Preselect option for ventilation/defrosting of windscreen
- Preselect option for the flow of warm air into the footwell
- Preselect option for the flow of warm air in the hand area and switching on the steering wheel heating
- Preselect option for the flow of cold air into the footwell
- Preselect option for the flow of external air into the interior
- **A/C** Switch the cooling system on/off
- **SYNC** Switch maintenance of the interior temperature on/off according to the temperature setting for the driver's side
- Switch recirculated air mode on/off
- Switching the windscreen heater on/off » page 62, *Operation*
- Switch the seat heating or ventilation on/off » page 63, *Operation*
- − Decrease the temperature
- + Increase temperature

The selected preset option is activated for a limited period of time.

To start the preset option, certain conditions must be met due to the condition of the vehicle. These conditions can neither be influenced nor detected.

When switching off the preselect option the steering wheel heating is also switched off. This also applies to the situation where the steering wheel heating was switched on manually before starting this preselect option.

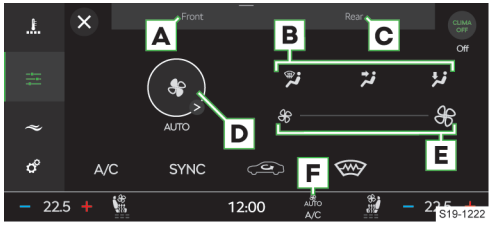
Set the classic air conditioning system for the infotainment Swing

› Press CLIMA under the Infotainment and tap › in the Infotainment screen.

Or:

› Tap A/C in the lower status bar of the infotainment screen.

The following menu is displayed:



A Show the front settings

B Set the direction of the air outlet

C Show the rear settings

D Switch on automatic mode and set the operating power

E Set the blower speed

F Display menu, overview of the currently selected functions

CLIMA OFF Switch Climatronic on/off

A/C Switch the cooling system on/off

SYNC Switch maintenance of the interior temperature on/off according to the temperature setting for the driver's side

Switch recirculated air mode on/off

Switching the windscreen heater on/off » page 62, *Operation*

Switch the seat heating or ventilation on/off » page 63, *Operation*

REAR Lock the increase in the heating output of the rear seat heating and set the rear temperature » page 63, *Settings*

The function is displayed after tapping the function surface C.

\- Decrease the temperature

\+ Increase temperature

The rear temperature can also be set on the display in the centre console at the rear.

With a temperature setting outside of the number range, one of the following icons will be displayed in the Infotainment screen:

LO Maximum cooling power

HI Maximum heating power

Additional Climatronic settings for the infotainment Swing

› Tap the functional area in the operating menu for the air conditioning.

The following menu is displayed:

▸ *Automatic air recirculation* - Automatic air circulation mode on/off

Also included depending on vehicle equipment:

▸ *Automatic supplementary heater* - Switch fast interior heating on/off

▸ *Automatic windscreen heating* - Switch on/off the automatic windscreen heating » page 62, *Settings*

▸ Switching on/off the automatic start of seat heating and ventilation as well as the steering wheel heating when the engine is started (depending on the interior temperature)

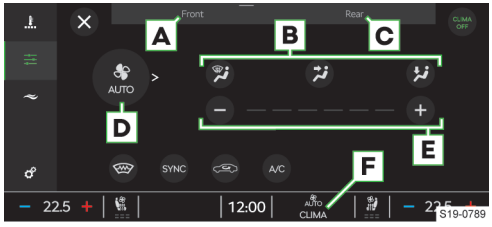
Set classic air conditioning for the infotainment Bolero and Columbus

› Press CLIMA under the Infotainment and tap › in the Infotainment screen.

Or:

› Tap CLIMA in the lower status bar of the infotainment screen.

The following menu is displayed:



A Show the front settings

B Set the direction of the air outlet

C Show the rear settings

D Switch on automatic mode and set the operating power

E Set the blower speed

F Display menu, overview of the currently selected functions

CLIMA OFF Switch Climatronic on/off

Switching the windscreen heater on/off » page 62, *Operation*

SYNC Switch maintenance of the interior temperature on/off according to the temperature setting for the driver's side

Switch recirculated air mode on/off

A/C Switch the cooling system on/off

Switch the seat heating or ventilation on/off » page 63, *Operation*

REAR Lock the increase in the heating output of the rear seat heating and set the rear temperature » page 63, *Settings*

The function is displayed after tapping the function surface C.

\- Decrease the temperature
\+ Increase temperature

The temperature can also be set using two fingers in the progress bar under the temperature setting area.

The rear temperature can also be set on the display in the centre console at the rear.

With a temperature setting outside of the number range, one of the following icons will be displayed in the Infotainment screen:

LO Maximum cooling power
HI Maximum heating power

Additional Climatronic settings for the infotainment Bolero and Columbus

› Tap the functional area in the operating menu for the air conditioning.

The following menu is displayed:

- *Automatic air recirculation* - Automatic air circulation mode on/off

Also included depending on vehicle equipment:

- *Automatic supplementary heater* - Switch fast interior heating on/off
- *Automatic windscreen heating* - Switch on/off the automatic windscreen heating » page 62, *Settings*
- Switching on/off the automatic start of seat heating and ventilation as well as the steering wheel heating when the engine is started (depending on the interior temperature)

When the air conditioner is operating, the engine idle speed may increase automatically.

Troubleshooting

Water under the vehicle
When the cooling system is switched on, water can drip off the air conditioning system. This is not a leak.

Fogging
› Switch on automatic mode.

Or:

› Increase the blower speed, switch on the cooling system, and set the air distribution to the windscreen.

Automatic switch-off of the cooling system
If the coolant temperature is too high, the cooling system may switch off automatically. This ensures sufficient engine cooling.

Auxiliary heating and ventilation

Usage

The auxiliary heater heats the vehicle interior and the engine.

The auxiliary ventilation makes it possible to supply fresh air to the vehicle interior when the engine is switched off. As a result, the interior temperature is lowered, e.g. when the vehicle is parked in the sun.

What you should be mindful of

⚠ **DANGER**
Risk of poisoning!
- The auxiliary heater must not be operated in enclosed spaces.

⚠ **DANGER**
Risk of fire!
- Switch off the auxiliary heater before refuelling.
- The exhaust pipe for the auxiliary heater is located on the underside of the vehicle. Therefore, do not stop the vehicle in places where the exhaust gases could come into contact with easily flammable materials, e.g. dry grass, spilled fuel etc.

Functionality

The interior is heated or ventilated according to the temperature that is set in the auxiliary heating menu.

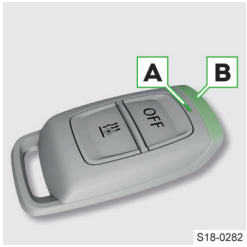
The system consumes fuel from the fuel tank when operating the heating.

Operating conditions

✓ The charge state of the 12-volt vehicle battery is sufficient.
✓ The fuel supply is sufficient, the instrument cluster does not light up .

Operation

Switch on/off with the radio remote control
› Hold down the corresponding key.



A Indicator light

B Antenna

OFF Switching off

Switching on

Hold the radio remote control with the antenna facing upwards.

NOTICE

▸ Protect the remote control from moisture, strong vibrations and direct sunlight.

Display of the radio remote control indicator light

▸ Lit up green for 2 seconds - switch on

▸ Lit up red for 2 seconds - switch off

Range of the radio remote control

The range of the wireless remote control is a few hundred meters when the battery is full. For example, obstacles or weather conditions can reduce the range.

Switching on/off in Infotainment

› Tap on MENU > > .

Setting runtime

› Tap on MENU > > > .

› Set the running time.

Warning light display in the instrument cluster.

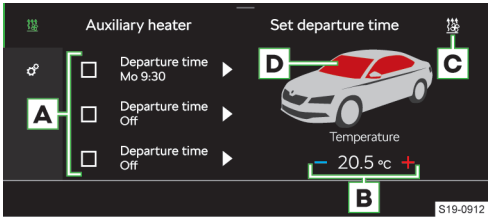
Lights up when the auxiliary heater is switched on from the isolation box.

Set automatic switching on

Display menu

› Tap on MENU > in the Infotainment screen.

Settings and information in the Infotainment screen



A List of pre-selected times, activation / deactivation of the preset time

B Temperature setting

C Immediate switch-on

D When the heating is running, the windows are displayed in red

When ventilation is running, the windows are displayed in blue

Setting the running time for immediate switch-on

Only one preset time can be active. The activated preset time will be deactivated again after it has started automatically. To start the next preset time, this preset time must be activated.

When selecting the day in the preset time, there is an option between Sunday and Monday without the specified day. When this position is selected, the system is switched on at the next set time.

Troubleshooting

Smoke in the engine compartment

In the engine compartment, smoke and odours may form during the operation of the auxiliary heater. This is not a defect.

Running the auxiliary heater after stopping the engine

After switching off the system, the coolant pump and the auxiliary heating will continue running a little while longer in order to burn the remaining fuel in the heating.

Indicator light in the radio remote control

▸ Flashes green in a slow sequence - the switch-on signal was not received

▸ Flashes red in a slow sequence - the switch-off signal was not received

▸ Flashes green in an irregular pattern – the parking heater is locked, e.g. because the fuel tank is almost empty or there is an error

› Check the level of fuel.

› If the fuel quantity is OK, seek the help of a specialist company.

▸ Lights up orange first, then green/red – the battery is weak, the on/off signal has been received

▸ Lights up orange first, then flashes green/red – the battery is weak, the on/off signal has not been received.

▸ Flashing orange – the battery is nearly discharged, the on/off signal has not been received

▸ Not lit up – the battery is discharged, the on/off signal has not been received

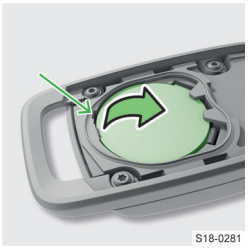
› Replace the battery.

Change the battery in the remote control

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of death!
If the battery is swallowed, serious or even fatal injuries can result from burns in the digestive tract.
▸ Always keep children away from the radio remote control and batteries.
▸ If the battery is swallowed, seek medical help immediately.



› Use a thin screwdriver to remove the cover in the marked area.
› Open the cover and push it out.



› Use a screwdriver to loosen the battery in the marked area.
› Replace the battery.
› Insert the cover and push it until it audibly locks into place.

Heated windscreen

Usage

Windscreen heating is used for defrosting or ventilating the windscreen.

Requirements

✓ Running engine
✓ Outside temperature approximately below 35 ° C

Operation

Heated rear window
› Press the REAR button under the Infotainment.

Heated windscreen
› Press the CLIMA button under the Infotainment.
› Tap on function surface / › *Front* › in the Infotainment screen.

Or:

› Press CLIMA under Infotainment.
› Tap the functional surface › on the Infotainment screen.

Windscreen heating switches off automatically after some time.

If the engine is switched off when the heating is on and turned back on again within about 10 minutes, the heating is continued.

Mode for ventilation/defrosting of windscreen
› Press the MAX button under the Infotainment.

Settings

Automatic heated windscreen
The heated windscreen switches on automatically if the windscreen mists up.

› Press the CLIMA button below the Infotainment › and tap the Infotainment screen.
› Select the menu item for automatic windscreen heating.

Troubleshooting

The indicator light in the button or below the button flashes
The heating does not work as the battery charging level of the 12 volt vehicle battery is too low.

Seat heating and ventilation

What you should be mindful of

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of burns!
▸ Do not switch on the seat heater for persons with limited perception of pain or temperature.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Risk of seat damage!
▸ Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply concentrated pressure to them.
▸ Do not turn on the heater in the following situations:
  ▸ The seat is not occupied.
  ▸ There are objects on the seat, such as a child seat.
  ▸ There are additional seat covers or protective covers on the seat.

Requirements

✓ Running engine

Operation

Depending on the equipment, the front seats can be heated or heated and ventilated. The outer rear seats can only be heated.

Models without seat ventilation

› Tap the or function surface in the Infotainment screen to turn on front seat heating.

› Press the or button in the rear centre console to switch on the rear seat heating.

The heating is switched on with maximum heating output. By repeatedly pressing the button, the heating output is reduced until it is switched off.

The output level of the heating is indicated by the number of illuminated indicator lights in the button or in the Infotainment screen.

Models with seat ventilation

› Tap the or function surface in the Infotainment screen to turn on front seat heating.

A menu is displayed for operating the front seat heater and ventilation.

› Adjust the heating output/ventilation level.

› Press the or button in the rear centre console to switch on the rear seat heating.

The heating is switched on with maximum heating output. By repeatedly pressing the button, the heating output is reduced until it is switched off.

Display heating output/ventilation level in the button

- - - Seat heating switched on
- - - Seat ventilation switched on

If the engine is switched off with the heating/ventilation switched on and then started again within approximately 10 minutes, the heating/ventilation will continue according to the setting before the engine was switched off.

Settings

Lock increases in heat output for the rear seat heater

› Press the CLIMA button under the Infotainment system > > *Rear* Tap on > REAR/REAR in the Infotainment screen.

When the function is switched on, the heating output can only be turned down.

The function also blocks the possibility of setting the temperature in the display in the rear centre console.

Heated steering wheel

Requirements

✓ Running engine

Operation

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

The heating is switched on with maximum heating output. By repeatedly pressing the button, the heating output is reduced until it is switched off.

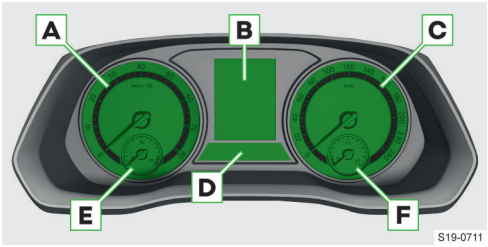
By holding down the button on the multifunction steering wheel, the heating can be switched off or switched on at the level of the heating output that was set before the heating was switched off.

Driver information system

Analogue instrument cluster

Overview

Overview of instrument cluster



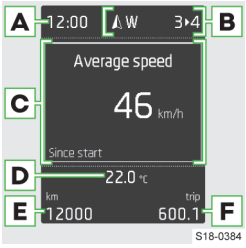
A Tachometer with indicator lights
B Display
C Speedometer with indicator lights
D Bar with indicator lights
E Depending upon vehicle equipment:
- ▸ Coolant temperature gauge
- ▸ Gas gauge

F Petrol/diesel fuel gauge

NOTICE
Risk of serious damage to the engine and the exhaust system!
▸ **Never run the fuel tank completely empty!**

In poor visibility and with dipped headlights off, the brightness of the instrument cluster lighting is reduced to remind the driver to turn on the light.

Display overview
Depending on the equipment, the following information is shown in the display.



A Time
B Selected gear/gear recommendation
Also included depending on vehicle equipment:
- ▸ Compass direction display
- ▸ Automatic gearbox selector lever positions
- ▸ Detected road signs

C Menu, indicator lights and information
D Outside temperature
❄ - low outside temperature
E Total distance travelled
F Trip - Distance travelled after resetting the memory

Overview of the main menu items
- ▸ Driving data » page 66, *Overview*
- ▸ Assist systems - Activate/deactivate assist systems
- ▸ Navigation - e.g. Display driving recommendations, compass, list of destination
- ▸ Audio - Using radio and media
- ▸ Telephone - Call list, accept or reject an incoming call
- ▸ Vehicle - Vehicle condition » page 68, *Display*.

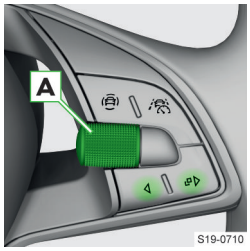
Operation

Operation via the control lever



A **Press** - Switch between menu items / set values
Hold - Display the main menu
B **Press** - Confirm menu item

Operation via the multifunction steering wheel



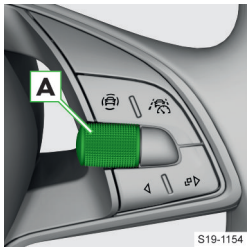
A **Turn** - Switch between menu items / set values
Press - Confirm menu item
◁ **Press** - Show main menu / Movement in the main menu
▷ **Press** - Show main menu / Movement in the main menu

Settings

Setting the language
The language is set in the Infotainment in menu **MENU** › ⚙.

Setting the time
The time is set in the Infotainment in menu **MENU** › ⚙.

Resetting the odometer in the instrument cluster
› Select *Trip* in the menu in instrument cluster display.



A **Turn** - Select information
Press - Confirm information
Hold - Reset counter

Setting the brightness of the instrument cluster lighting
The brightness is adjusted automatically according to the given lighting conditions.

The manual brightness adjustment is carried out as follows when the dipped beam is switched on:

› In Infotainment, select the following menu:

CAR > ⚙ > *Interior* > *Ambient light*

Or:

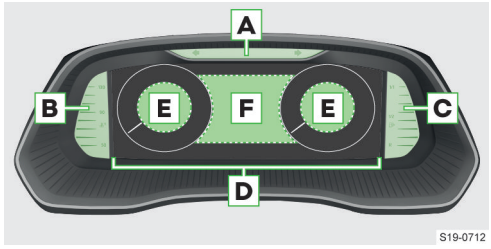
MENU > 🚗 > 🚗 > *Interior* > *Ambient lighting*

› Adjust the setting.

Digital instrument cluster

Overview

Overview of instrument cluster



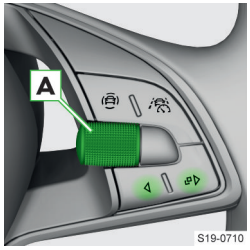
A Bar with indicator lights
B Depending upon vehicle equipment:
- ▸ Coolant temperature gauge
- ▸ Gas gauge

C Fuel gauge
D Display
E Display area with selected information for the driver
F Central display area

NOTICE
Risk of serious damage to the engine and the exhaust system!
▸ **Never run the fuel tank completely empty!**

Operation

Overview of the buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel



A **Rotate** - Switch between menu items / set values / change map scale manually
Press - Confirm menu item
Turn and press - Switch on automatic change of map scale
◁ Change variant of the display presentation / Show menu items of the submenu on the left side of the display
▷ Change variant of the display presentation / Show menu items of the submenu on the right side of the display

Show menu with selected information in the display
› To display the menu on the right side of the display, press the setting wheel A.
› To display the menu on the left side of the display, press the control wheel **A** **twice**.
› To switch between information, turn the setting wheel A.
› To confirm the information selection, press the setting wheel A.

Certain information contains a submenu.

› To display the submenu, press the ▷ or ◁ key.
› To switch between menu items on the submenu, turn the control wheel A.

The option to switch between information is indicated by arrows. This is only possible for a short time.

Settings

Setting the language
The language is set in the Infotainment in menu **MENU** > ⚙.

Setting the time
The time is set in the Infotainment in menu **MENU** > ⚙.

Setting the brightness of the instrument cluster lighting
The brightness is adjusted automatically according to the given lighting conditions.

The manual brightness adjustment is carried out as follows when the dipped beam is switched on.

› In Infotainment, select the following menu:

CAR > ⚙ > *Interior* > *Ambient light*

Or:

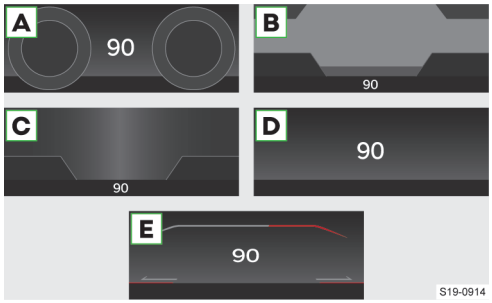
MENU > > > *Interior* > *Ambient lighting*

› Adjust the setting.

Set the variant of the display

› Press the button or on the multifunction steering wheel to change the variant of the display presentation.

Select displayed variants



Depending upon vehicle equipment:

A Classic display

B Navigation announcements

C Driver Assist

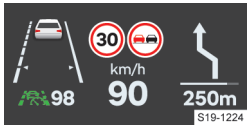
D Basic display

E Sporty display (depending on equipment)

Head-Up display

Functionality

The head-up display projects selected information onto the windscreen into the driver's field of vision.



Restriction

The function may, for example, be restricted or unavailable due to strong sunlight.

Sunglasses with polarisation filters can negatively affect the visual perception of the display.

Settings

› Select the following menu:

CAR > > *Interior* > *Head-Up display*

Or:

MENU > > > *Interior*

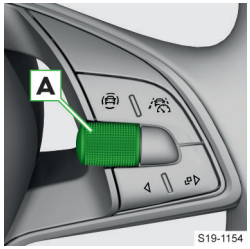
› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Head-Up display* .

› Select *Head-Up display* .

In the displayed menu, the following menu items can be set:

- Activation/deactivation
- Position
- Brightness
- Colour scheme
- Selection of projected information

The position can also be set by turning the dial A on the multifunction steering wheel.



Driving data

Overview

The driving data display works with the ignition switched on.

In the instrument cluster display

Depending on the equipment, the display of the instrument cluster shows information such as speed, fuel consumption, range, etc.

For natural gas vehicles, the display of the instrument cluster shows the natural gas quality in percent from 70 % to 100 %. The higher the value, the lower the consumption of natural gas.

In Infotainment

The following information is displayed in the Infotainment:

- Distance travelled
- Driving time
- Average speed
- Average fuel consumption
- Range

Memory

The system saves the driving data in the following memories:

Since start

▸ Driving data from the time of switching on the ignition until the ignition is switched off again is stored in the memory. If the journey is interrupted for more than 2 hours, the memory will be reset.

Long-term

▸ The driving data of all trips up to a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes driving time or 9999 km driving distance is stored in the memory. If one of the listed values is exceeded, the memory is reset.

Since refuel

▸ Driving data from the time the fuel tank was last filled is stored in the memory. The memory is reset the next time the tank is filled.

Operation

Display driving data in the display of the instrument cluster via the operating lever

› Select the menu item for the driving data in the main menu in the instrument cluster display.



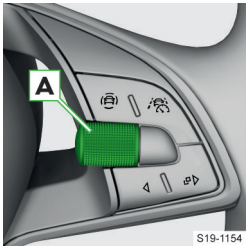
A **Press** - Select information/Set values

B **Press** - Confirm information

Display driving data in the display of the instrument cluster via the multi-functional steering wheel

Applies to the analogue instrument cluster.

› Select the menu item for the driving data in the main menu in the instrument cluster display.

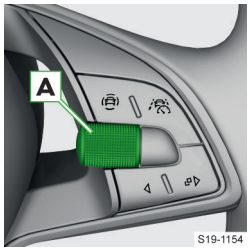


A **Rotate** - Select information/Set values

Press - Confirm information

Display driving data in the display of the instrument cluster via the multi-functional steering wheel

Applies to the digital instrument cluster.



› To display the menu on the right side of the display, press the control wheel A.

› To display the menu on the left side of the display, press the control wheel A **twice**.

› To switch between information, turn the control wheel A.

Displaying driving data in the infotainment system

The driving data is displayed in the following menu in the infotainment system:

CAR > ⛽

Or:

MENU > 🚗 > ⛽

Select and reset the memory for driving data in the display of the instrument cluster using the control lever

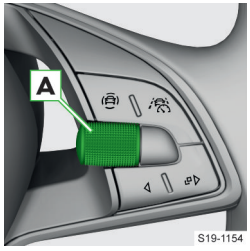


› To **select** the memory for the displayed driving data, press button A repeatedly.

› To **reset** the memory, press and hold button A.

Select memory for driving data in the display of the instrument cluster via the multifunction steering wheel and reset it

Applies to the analogue instrument cluster.

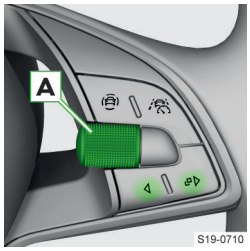


› To **select** the memory for the displayed driving data, press control wheel A repeatedly.

› To **reset**the memory, hold the dial A.

Select memory for driving data in the display of the instrument cluster via the multifunction steering wheel and reset it

Applies to the digital instrument cluster.



› To **set** the memory for the displayed driving data on the right, press button ⏢▷. Turn the dial A to select the corresponding memory or press the dial to confirm the memory.

› To **select** the memory for the displayed driving data on the left, press button ◁. Turn the dial A to select the corresponding memory or press the dial to confirm the memory.

› To **re-set** the memory for the displayed driving data, press button ⏢▷ or ◁. Turn the dial A to select reset corresponding memory or press the dial to confirm the re-set.

Selecting the memory in the infotainment system
The memory selection is made by touching the corresponding tab in the infotainment screen in the following menu:

CAR > 🚘

Or:

MENU > 🚗 > 🚘

Resetting the memory in the infotainment system
The memory is reset in Infotainment as follows:

› In Infotainment, select the following menu:

CAR > ⚙ > *Interior* > *Instrument cluster*

Or:

MENU > 🚗 > ⚙ > *Interior* > *Instrument cluster*

› Reset the associated memory by pressing the button **0.0**.

Settings

Setting units
The units are set in the Infotainment in menu MENU > ⚙.

Vehicle status

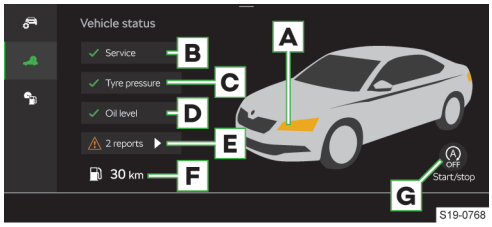
Display

The vehicle status is displayed in the following menu in the infotainment system:

CAR > 🚗 > 🔧

Or:

MENU > 🚗 > 🔧



A Vehicle areas displayed in colour indicate associated warnings

B Service appointments and vehicle identification number (VIN)

C Tyre pressure monitor

D Information regarding engine oil level

E Warning messages regarding the vehicle condition and their quantity

F Range

G Deactivation/activation of the START-STOP system

Functionality

In the event of a system fault, messages regarding the fault in question are displayed on the instrument cluster display when the ignition is switched on.

Messages in relation to faults can also be displayed in the Infotainment.

ⓘ The warning messages will continue to be displayed until the malfunctions have been remedied. After the first display of the message, only the indicator lights ⚠ (Hazard) or ⚠ (Warning) are displayed.

Button SET

Overview

The SET button allows quick access to the settings of the following vehicle systems (depending on the vehicle fittings):

▸ Switch off the START-STOP system » page 147, *Usage*.

▸ Switch off ASR traction control » page 156, *Overview*.

▸ Switch on the ESC Sport stabilisation programme » page 156, *Overview*.

▸ Interior monitoring » page 27, *Settings*.

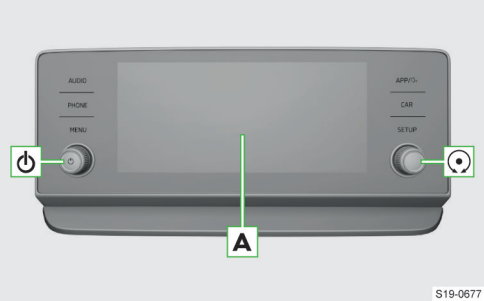
▸ Tyre pressure monitor » page 195, *Functionality*.

▸ Access to selection and settings for driver assistance systems

▸ Access to other vehicle settings

Infotainment Swing

Infotainment overview



A Touchscreen

Control dial left
- **Press:** Switch Infotainment on/off
- **Turn:** Set volume

Control dial right
- **Press:** Confirm menu item
- **Turn:** select menu item/set value

AUDIO **Radio** and **Media** menus

PHONE **Phone** menu

MENU All menus

APP/ **SmartLink** menu
- **Tap:** Display menu
- **Hold:** Switch voice control of the SmartLink application on / off

CAR Information about vehicle settings

SETUP Infotainment settings

System

Limitation

For safety reasons, operation of some Infotainment functions while driving is not possible or is restricted.

The Infotainment system indicates this by means of a message in the screen.

Basic settings

Setting basic functions
To **display** the available Infotainment system settings, proceed as follows:

› Tap on MENU > .

Or:

› Tap on SETUP.

The following basic functions can be set:

- Time and date
- Language
- Units
- Restore factory settings

Sound settings
The Infotainment sound is set in the menu MENU > .

The following menu items can be set:

- Setting the equalizer
- Adjusting the volume ratio
- Volume adjustment of individual Infotainment functions

  The volume can be adjusted on e.g. one of the following menu items:
  - Setting the maximum volume when Infotainment is turned on
  - Speed-dependent volume setting
  - Setting the Infotainment to mute with the parking aid switched on

Depending on the equipment, the following advanced sound settings can be set

- Setting space optimisation
- Setting the audio profiles according to genre
- Adjusting the subwoofer volume

Configuration wizard
The configuration wizard helps to set certain Infotainment functions.

The configuration wizard is automatically displayed if the ignition is switched on and if there are at least two menu items that have not been set after switching on the Infotainment.

› To **switch off the automatic display**, when the configuration wizard is displayed tap *Don't show again* .

› For **manual display**, tap MENU > > *Configuration wizard* .

Set up menu MENU
The position of the functional surfaces in the MENU menu can be customized as follows:

› Press and hold the desired functional surface until it is free.

› Move the functional surface to a different position.

Factory settings
Resetting the Infotainment to factory defaults restores all factory defaults.

› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.

› Tap on MENU > .

› *Reset to factory settings* select and confirm the reset.

 To check the factory reset was successful, we recommend that you check all user accounts have been deleted.

Troubleshooting

Infotainment not responding
If the infotainment does not respond, restart it as follows:

› Hold ⏻ for longer than 10 s.
› Wait for the restart to complete.

System update

We recommend having the system update carried out by a specialist company.

The system update ensures optimal function of the Infotainment system, e.g. compatibility with new phones.

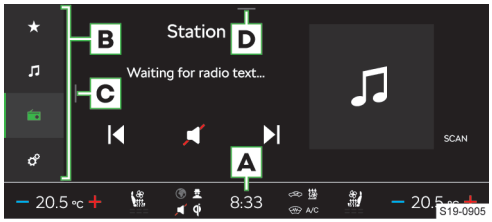
Determine system version
› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *System information*.

Or:

› Tap **SETUP** > *System information*.

Screen

Overview



A Status bar
B Bar with the functional surfaces of the displayed menu
C Display/close the submenu window
D Display of the Infotainment control centre

Operation

NOTICE
Danger of screen damage!
▸ The Infotainment screen is operated **by touching it lightly with your finger**.

In principle, operation by touch is identical to the operation of a mobile phone.

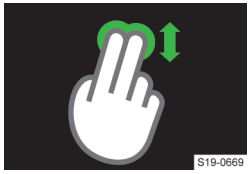
The following operating modes are specific to the Infotainment system.

Tap



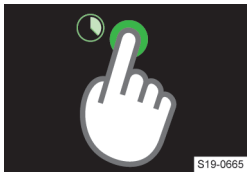
▸ Select function or menu item

Dragging up or down with two fingers



▸ Quickly look through the lists

Press and hold



▸ Release certain Infotainment menus with the option to move them to another location on the screen

Settings

The following basic screen functions are set in the menu **SETUP** > *Screen*:

▸ Image of the screen background
▸ Brightness level of the screen
▸ Switch off the screen
▸ Display the time
▸ Confirmation tones

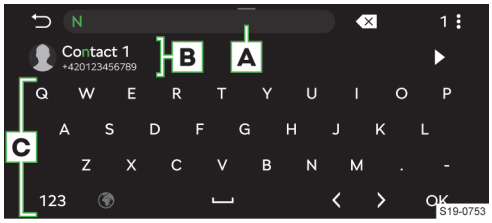
Infotainment keyboard

Keypad overview

The arrangement of the keyboard characters depends on the set infotainment language.

Depending on the context, the following types are used in infotainment:

▸ Alphanumeric
▸ Numeric
▸ Keyboard for input
▸ Keyboard for search



Keypad example

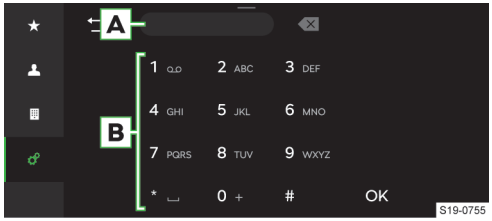
A Input line
- Delete characters before the cursor
  - **Tap:** delete the last character
  - **Hold:** delete all characters in sequence

⋮ Show list of searched entries

B Entries searched for
- Show details of searched entries

C Keypad functional surfaces
- Switch to lowercase/uppercase
- ABC/АБВ Switch to the language keypad
- 123 Switch to the numeric and character keypad
- / Show additional keypad languages
- Insert a space
- < / > Move cursor to the left/to the right
- OK Confirm the characters that have been entered

Numeric keypad



Keypad example

A Input line
- Delete characters before the cursor
  - **Tap:** delete the last character
  - **Hold:** delete all characters

B Keypad functional surfaces

- OK Confirm the characters that have been entered

If context-sensitive, alphanumeric characters can be entered by holding a functional surface with a digit.

Operation

The Infotainment keypad is used to enter characters, letters and numbers.

The keypad will be **automatically displayed** when Infotainment prompts for characters.

Find
When entering characters, corresponding entries are searched for.

The entry to be searched for can be entered including diacritics.

› To tap **Display searched entries** ⋮.

Show additional keypad languages
To use the additional keypad languages, the desired languages must be set first.

› Tap or repeatedly tap the flag symbol until the desired language keypad is displayed.

Further character variants
You can display further character variants by holding down the symbol.

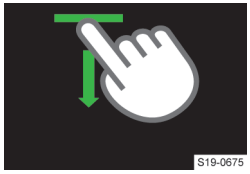
Setting up additional keyboard languages

› Tap **MENU** > > *Additional keypad languages*.
› Select the desired language.

Control centre

Overview

Display of the control centre



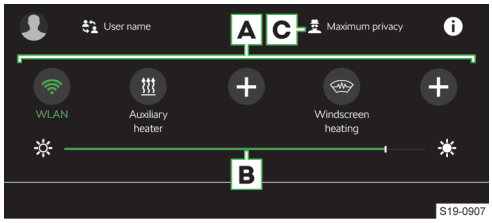
› Press the bar at the top of the screen and drag down.

Closing the control centre
› Press the bar at the bottom of the screen and drag up.

Or:

› Wait 5 seconds.

Control Centre
The Infotainment control centre can be used for quick access to the following functions:



A Preferred functions
B Setting the instrument and key illumination
C Setting the personal data protection level
Display user account management

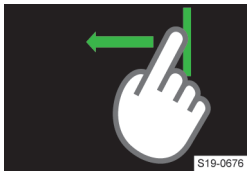
Settings

Set functional surfaces of preferred features
› To **display** the edit mode, tap on the empty functional surface with the + icon or hold down the occupied functional surface.
› To **add** the preferred feature, tap on the functional surface of the desired function.
› To **remove** the preferred feature, tap on 🗑.
› To **close** edit mode, tap on ⮌.

Radio

Overview

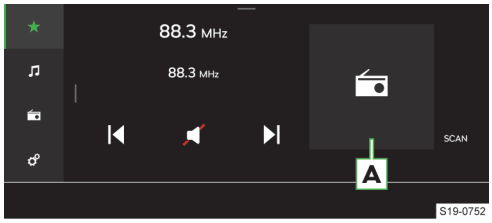
Display the player



› Tap on MENU > ♫.
› Press the bar button on the right edge of the screen and drag to the left.

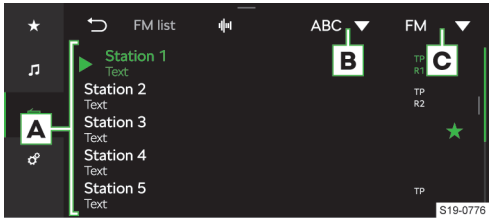
Close player
› Press the bar button on the left edge of the player and drag to the right.

Analogue and digital radio player



A Radio station logo
⏮ / ⏭ Switch to the previous/next station
The type of switching depends on the setting of the arrow buttons ⚙ > *Radio* > *Arrow buttons:*.
Activate/deactivate muting
SCAN Switch the SCAN function on/off

List of available analogue and digital radio stations
› To **display**, tap on MENU > ♫ > 📻.
› Select the desired frequency range.

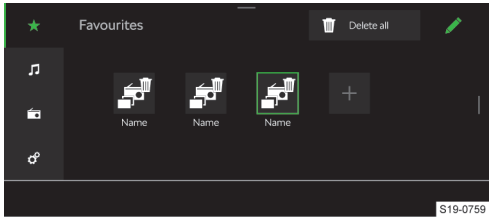


A List of available stations
⮌ Show available frequency ranges
After selecting a frequency range, the desired station must still be selected
▶ Station currently being played
★ Station stored on the presets
TP A traffic radio station is set
⟲ Manual update of the AM and DAB station list
B Option for sorting the stations in the list in alphabetical order, by name of station groups or by genre
C Select frequency range
After selecting a frequency range, the last station to be played in the respective frequency range is set.

ⓘ In the station list, information about the program type and the type of the regional station can be displayed.

Preset buttons for preferred stations
The preset buttons for preferred stations can store stations in all available frequency ranges.

› Tap on MENU > ♫ > ★.



+ Store current station
✎ Switch edit mode on/off
▶ 🗑 *Delete all* – Delete all preferred stations

▶ 🗑 - Delete the desired station
▶ 🖼 - Change station logo

ⓘ The position of the stored preset buttons for stations can be changed.

› Tap on ✎.
› Press and hold the desired preset button until it is free.
› Move the preset button to a different position.

Operation

SCAN function
The function plays receivable stations of the selected frequency range in succession for a few seconds each.

› To **start automatic playback** in the player displayed in the **Radio** menu, tap on SCAN or press the right-hand rotary control ⊙.
› To **stop automatic playback** in the player displayed in the **Radio** menu, tap on SCAN or press the right-hand rotary control ⊙.

Find stations manually
Manual search is available for AM and FM stations.

› In the list of available FM or AM stations, tap on ⏮.
› To **search in sequence**, tap ◁ or ▷ next to the displayed frequency range scale.

Or:

› Hold down the scroll mark on the frequency range scale and move it to the desired value.

Or:

› Turn the right rotary control.

Limitation

▶ Infotainment supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.
▶ Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can restrict radio reception.
▶ In the rear side windows, there are antennas for receiving the radio signal.

  Covering the panes with foils or metal-coated labels may affect the reception of the radio signal.
▶ The ŠKODA AUTO company assumes no responsibility for the availability, correct functioning and broadcast information of the RDS service.

Settings

Store the current station to a preset button for preferred stations
› To **store**, tap on ★ > ★ in the **Radio** menu.

Store stations to a preset button for favourite stations from the list of available stations
› To **display the station list**, tap on 📻 in the **Radio** menu.
› Hold the line with the name of the desired station.
› Tap on + or the preset button for favourite stations that you want to replace.

Delete the stored preset button for the favourite station
› To **erase**, tap on ★ > ✎ in the **Radio** main menu.
  ▶ To delete **one** preset button, tap on 🗑.
  ▶ To delete **all** preset buttons, tap on 🗑 and confirm the deletion.

Functional areas ⏮/⏭ for analogue and digital radios
Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

The variant for **changing stations in the radio player** is set as follows using the functional areas ⏮/⏭:

› In the menu **Radio** ⚙ > *Radio* > *Changing the station:* .
› Select the variant for switching between the stations stored on the station buttons or the stations stored in the list of available stations.

Switch traffic reception (TP) for stations on/off
Applies to FM and DAB frequency range.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙.
› *Radio* > *Traffic program (TP)* .

Switch RDS on/off
Applies to the FM frequency range.

The menu item is only available for some countries.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙.
› *Radio* > *Radio Radio Data System (RDS)* .

If the **RDS function is disabled**, the following menu items in **FM station** settings are not available:

▶ Traffic program (TP)
▶ Radio text
▶ RDS Regional
▶ Automatic frequency change (AF)
▶ Regional station logo.

Switch automatic frequency control (AF) on/off
Applies to the FM frequency range.

When the function is switched on and the signal of the FM station currently being listened to is weak, Infotainment automatically sets the same station to a different frequency with a better signal.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙.
› *Radio* > *Automatic frequency change (AF)* .

Display the set station in the instrument cluster display
› Select the menu in which the travel time and the travelled distance are displayed.

› Hold the button on the multifunction steering wheel for at least 5 seconds.

When the button is released, a menu is displayed.

› In the menu, select menu item *Info when changing tracks* .

Automatic change of frequency to a regionally linked FM station
Applies to the FM frequency range.

Infotainment provides the option of automatically switching to a regionally linked FM station in case of signal loss of the FM station being listened to.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap .
› *Radio* > *RDS Regional:* .
› Select one of the following menu items:

▶ *Fix* - When the signal is lost, another station must be set manually.
▶ *Automatic* - automatic selection of the station with the best signal reception.

If reception is lost in the given region, Infotainment will automatically set another available region.

Turn on/off radio text reception
Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on, you can see more information about the content broadcast from the station to which you are listening.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap .
› *Radio* > *Radio text* .

Add the station logo
Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

Infotainment offers the option to add logos from the pictures on an external source to the station buttons.

For station logos, images in jpg, png, bmp format with a maximum resolution of 500x500 pixels can be used.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Radio* > *Station logos* and select the desired frequency range.

Or:

› In the list of preferred stations, tap on > at the desired preset button.
› Choose the available logo.

Or:

› To **import a logo** from an external source, tap on *Load my logo* .
› Select the external source with the logo.
› Find and select the desired logo.

To turn off the logo display, tap on in the list of available logos.

Switch adding automatic station logos on/off
Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on, a station logo from the Infotainment memory is added when the station is stored on a preset.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap .
› *Radio* > *Tap Automatic selection of station logos* .

Regional FM station logo
Applies to the FM frequency range.

Infotainment provides the option of using country-specific FM station logos.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap .
› *Radio* > *Region for station logo:* .

Switch program type display on / off
Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

If the function is switched on, additional information on the broadcast program type (PTY) is displayed in the list of available stations. The programs can be arranged based on this information.

Switching additional announcements of the DAB transmitter on / off
Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on, other announcements are received as traffic announcements. These include e.g. weather news, sports reports, financial news etc.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap .
› *Radio* > *Tap other DAB announcements* .

Enable/disable automatic programme tracking of a DAB station
Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and the DAB station is lost, Infotainment automatically changes to the same station with a better signal in a different DAB station group.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap .
› *Radio* > *DAB - DAB program tracking* .

Turn on/off automatic switching from a DAB station to the same FM station
Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and the DAB station being listened to is lost, Infotainment automatically changes to the same FM station. The symbol (FM) is displayed after the station name.

When the corresponding DAB station can be received again, the station automatically changes from FM to DAB.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap .
› *Radio* > *Tap Automatic change DAB - FM* .

Switch automatic switching to a similar DAB transmitter on / off
Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and there is signal loss from the DAB station being listened to, Infotainment automatically sets another DAB station with similar content.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙.
› *Radio* > *Change to a similar station* .

Switch the slideshow function on/off
Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on, the images broadcast by the station are displayed in the player.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙.
› *Radio* > *DAB slideshow* .

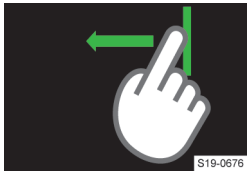
Media

What you should be mindful of

- Do not save any important data or that which has not been backed up on the connected audio sources. ŠKODA assumes no responsibility for lost or damaged files or connected audio sources.
- When changing or connecting an audio source, this may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before changing or connecting an audio source.
- When connecting an audio source, the source information messages can be displayed. These messages must be observed and, if necessary, confirmed.
- The national copyright laws that apply in your country must be observed.

Overview

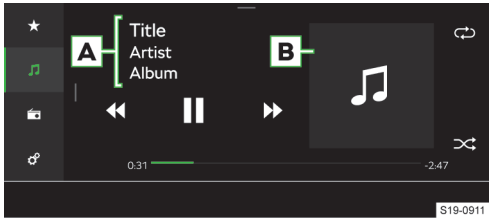
Display the player



› Tap on MENU > ♫.
› Press the bar button on the right edge of the screen and drag to the left.

Close player
› Press the bar button on the left edge of the player and drag to the right.

Media player



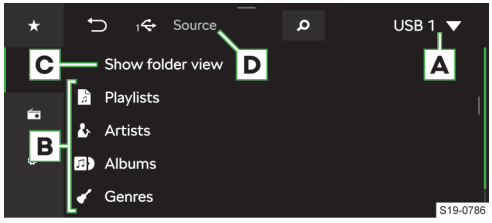
A Available information about the track, artist and album being played
B Album image

Folder and track list



A Selection of the source
B List of available folders and tracks
C Display of the multimedia database
D Name of the currently connected source
⮌ Display of available sources

Multimedia database



A Selection of the source
B Folder for the multimedia database
C Display of folder and track list
D Name of the currently connected source
🔍 Track search
⮌ Display of available sources

Operating the Player

Operation - Basics
▷ **Tap:** start playback
▯▯ **Tap:** pause

- **Within 3 seconds of starting playback, tap:** play the previous song
- **After 3 seconds from the start of playback, tap:** to play the current title from the beginning
- **Hold:** fast rewind within the title
- **Tap:** play the next song
- **Hold:** fast forward within the title

Movement within the title is also possible by dragging the finger over the timeline.

Extended operation

- Turn repeat playback of the current track on/off
- Turn repeat playback of the current album/folder on/off
- Turn random playback of the current album/folder on/off

Restriction

The availability of some media operation functions is dependent on the connected source and the software being used, e.g. Bluetooth®.

Settings

Traffic

› To **turn on/off** traffic monitoring during playback of media files, go to the **Media** in the main menu ⚙ › and tap on *Traffic program (TP)* .

Turn title playback including subfolders on/off

› In the **Media** menu tap on ⚙ › *Mix/Repeat including subfolders.* .

Safely disconnect the connected USB device

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the data on the connected USB device!

To safely disconnect a USB device, proceed as follows:

› In the **Media** menu tap on ⚙ › *Media* › *Remove safely* .

› Select the desired device.

› Disconnect the USB device.

If it is not possible to safely disconnect the device, switch off the Infotainment and disconnect the device.

Supported sources and files

Supported sources

Source	Interface	Type	Specification	File system
USB	USB 1.x; 2.x 3.x or higher with USB 2.x support	MSC	USB stick	FAT32 exFAT NTFS
			HDD (without special software)	
			USB devices that use the USB mass storage support protocol	
		MTP	Devices running the Android or Windows Phone operating system that support the Media Transfer Protocol	
		Apple	Devices with an iOS operating system	HFS+
Bluetooth® player	Bluetooth®	-	Bluetooth® protocols A2DP and AVRCP (1.0 - 1.6)	-

Apple iAP1 protocol is not supported by Infotainment.

Compatibility of mobile devices

It is possible to check the ŠKODAweb pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code:

http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All information given is incidental and serves as information.

The ŠKODA AUTO company cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to a software update of the Infotainment and the mobile devices.

Supported audio files

Compression format	Codec type	File extension	Max. bit rate [kbps]	Max. sampling rate [kHz]	Multi channels
MPEG	MPEG 1 Layer 3	mp3	32 - 320	32, 44, 48	Mono, dual mono, Stereo, Joint Stereo
	MPEG 2 Layer 3	mp3	8 - 160	16, 22, 24	Mono, Stereo, Joint Stereo
	MPEG 2.5 Layer 3			8, 11, 12	
WMA	Windows Media Audio 9 and 9.1	wma	8 - 384	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 32, 44, 48	Mono, stereo, Joint stereo
	Windows Media Audio 9.2		8 - 320		
	Windows Media Audio 10		8 - 768	32, 44, 48, 96	
ADTS	AAC LC	aac	8 - 640	22, 24, 32, 44, 48	Mono, Stereo
	AAC HE		8 - 320	16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48	
	AAC HEv2		16 - 64		
FLAC	FLAC	flac	-	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48, 64, 88, 96	Mono, stereo, 5.1, 7.1
RIFF	WAV	wav	64 - 3072	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48, 96	Mono, Stereo
SBC	Bluetooth A2DP	-	8 - 345	44, 48	Mono, stereo, Joint stereo

For files in MP4 format, only the soundtrack playback is carried out.

Files that are protected by **DRM**- and **iTunes®** methods are not supported by Infotainment.

Supported playlists

Codec type	File extension
M3U	m3u
M3U8	m3u8
PLS	pls
WPL	wpl
ASX	asx
PLA	pls

Mobile device management

Cybernetic security

Your vehicle contains components that are used to exchange information and data between the vehicle and the connected mobile devices or the Internet.

These components have security mechanisms that minimise the risk of unauthorised access to the vehicle systems.

Regular software updates help reduce the risk of unauthorised access to vehicle systems and vehicle functions. The following guidelines must therefore be observed:

› Use only media carriers, Bluetooth® devices, and mobile devices that contain no harmful data or malware.

› Regularly update the software provided by ŠKODA AUTO.

We recommend having the system software and components updated by a specialist company.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
Malware in the vehicle can influence and deactivate certain vehicle functions, or take over the controls of these where applicable.
▶ If the vehicle reacts in an unusual way, immediately reduce speed or stop the vehicle.
▶ Seek the help of a specialist garage.

⚠ **WARNING**
Malware in the vehicle may gain unauthorised access to the information and data of the vehicle, and on occasion, to connected mobile devices.

Overview

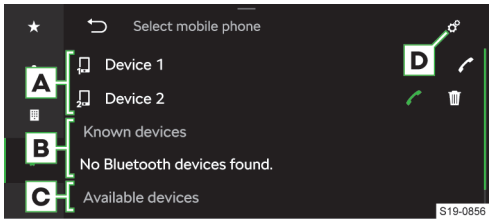
Using mobile device management, devices can be connected, disconnected, and interchanged.

Display mobile device management
› Tap on **PHONE** > ⚙ > *Select mobile phone*.

Or:

› Tap on **APP/** > ⚙ > *mobile devices*.

› In the **Phone** menu, tap on ⚙.
› Tap on *Select mobile phone*.



Example of telephone management

A Main and additional telephone
B List of known telephones
C List of available telephones
D Setting for the Infotainment Bluetooth® function
✓ The telephone enables connection via the Bluetooth® “hands-free profile”
🗑 Delete telephone from the list of known devices

ⓘ To display the recycle bin icon and the available SmartLink connections, click the ✓ icon with the arrow, press and drag to the left. If the connection icon is green, the connection is active.

Limitations of mobile devices and applications

Availability of features
The availability of certain features depends on the type of mobile device, as well as that of the applications installed.

Compatibility of mobile devices
It is possible to check the ŠKODAweb pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code:

www ***http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility***

All information given is incidental and serves as information.

The ŠKODA AUTO company cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to a software update of the Infotainment and the mobile devices.

Bluetooth® compatibility of mobile devices
Due to the large number of mobile devices, it is not possible to guarantee total Bluetooth® compatibility with Infotainment. Bluetooth® compatibility depends on the Bluetooth® version as well as the implementation of Bluetooth® protocols by the manufacturer of the mobile device.

Applications in mobile devices
Mobile devices can be used to install applications that allow you to view additional information on the Infotainment screen, or to operate the Infotainment system.

Due to the variety of applications, as well as their ongoing development, the available applications may not function on all mobile devices. ŠKODA AUTO assumes no liability for their proper functioning.

The scope of available applications and their functionality is dependent on the type of Infotainment, as well as the vehicle and country.

Information about ŠKODAapplications
Detailed information about ŠKODA applications can be found on the website after reading the following QR code or link:

http://go.skoda.eu/mobile-apps

Connection set-up

Bluetooth® connection between a mobile device and Infotainment
› Find available Bluetooth® devices in the mobile device.
› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

The name of the unit can be found in the menu item **SETUP** > *Connect via BT* > *Enter device name*.

› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

Bluetooth® connection between infotainment and a non-paired mobile device
› Tap on **PHONE** > > *Select mobile phone*.
› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
› Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.
› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Bluetooth® connection between Infotainment and a previously connected mobile device
› Tap on **PHONE** > > *Select mobile phone*.
› Select the desired device from the list of **known devices**.
› Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.
› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

SmartLink connection
Infotainment provides the ability to connect SmartLink to compatible mobile devices using the following connection types:

- Android Auto
- Apple CarPlay
- MirrorLink

Mobile devices can be connected to the Infotainment via USB cable or Wi-Fi, as long as the mobile device supports it » page 83.

› Connect the mobile device to the Infotainment via a USB cable or browse and connect to a wireless network.
› **APP/** > > *Mobile devices* .
› Tap on the connection icon on the desired device.

Telephone

Overview

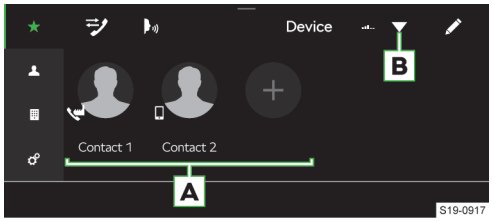
Display menu
› Tap on **PHONE**.

Or:

› Tap on **MENU** > .

If the menu **phone** is not displayed, check whether the mobile device is connected.

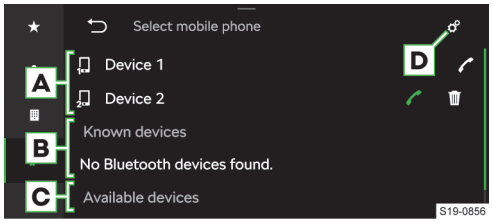
Manage contacts
› Tap on **MENU** > > .
› If two phones are connected, tap ▼ and select the desired phone.



A Preset buttons for preferred contacts
B Name of the main telephone/change telephone
Call lists
Switch on the voice control of the connected telephone, if the telephone allows this

If no phone contacts are displayed, check the request to confirm the import of contacts in the connected mobile device.

Manage telephones
› In the **Phone** menu, tap on .
› Tap on *Select mobile phone*.



A Main and additional telephone

B List of known telephones

C List of available telephones

D Setting for the Infotainment Bluetooth® function

The telephone enables connection via the Bluetooth® "hands-free profile"

Delete telephone from the list of known devices

To display the recycle bin icon and the available SmartLink connections, click the icon with the arrow, press and drag to the left. If the connection icon is green, the connection is active.

Conditions for connecting a telephone with Infotainment

✓ The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment and the telephone needs to be switched on.

The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **SETUP** > *Connect via BT* > *Bluetooth*.

✓ Visibility of the Infotainment is switched on.

The visibility of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **SETUP** > *Connect via BT* > *Visibility*.

✓ The telephone is within signal range of the Infotainment's Bluetooth® unit.

✓ The telephone is compatible with Infotainment.

✓ The phone is visible to the Infotainment.

Telephone operation

Enter telephone number

› In the **Phone** menu, tap on .

› Enter the telephone number using the numeric keypad that is displayed.

The displayed numeric keypad can also be used for searching for contacts.
If, for example, the digits 32 are entered, contacts with the letter sequence DA, FA, EB etc. are displayed next to the numeric keypad.

List of telephone contacts
The list of telephone contacts is imported from the currently selected phone.

› To **display** the contact list in the **phone** menu, tap on .

› To **search** within the list, tap on .

› Enter the details you wish to find.

› To **establish a connection** with a contact, tap the functional area showing the desired contact.

If a contact has multiple telephone numbers, select the telephone number from the displayed list.

Establish a connection to the voice mailbox number

› In the **Phone** menu, tap on > .

Telephone conversation
Depending on the context of the telephone conversation, the following functions can be selected:

End connection / reject incoming call / end call
Accept incoming call
Return to the call on hold
/ Switch the ringer off / on
Hold a call
/ Switch the microphone off / on
Show details of the caller
Answer a call from the second telephone during a call on the first telephone
The ongoing call on the first telephone is terminated by accepting the call.

› To **switch the call tone from the speakers to the phone**, tap .

› To **switch the call tone from the telephone to the speakers**, tap .

Settings for Infotainment telephone functions

Telephone-Infotainment-Connection types
The way in which the telephone is connected depends on the number of phones currently connected to the Infotainment:

▸ **No telephone** - The telephone is connected as a main telephone.

▸ **One telephone** - The telephone is connected as an additional telephone.

▸ **Two telephones** - Select the telephone to be replaced.

› To **switch between the main telephone and the additional telephone**, tap on in the **Phone** menu.

› Select the desired phone.

Connect the telephone to Infotainment

› Find available Bluetooth® devices in the mobile device.

› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

The name of the unit can be found in the menu item **SETUP** > *Connect via BT* > *Enter device name*.

› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

Connect Infotainment to a non-paired mobile device

› Tap on PHONE > ⚙ > *Select mobile phone*.
› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
› Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.
› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Connect Infotainment to a previously paired telephone

› PHONE > ⚙ > *Select mobile phone* .
› Select the desired device from the list of **known devices**.
› Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.
› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Manage preset buttons for preferred contacts

› To **display the preferred contacts**, tap on ★ in the **Phone** menu.
› To **store the contact**, tap on +.
› Select or search for the desired contact.
› If the contact contains multiple telephone numbers, choose the desired telephone number.
› To **delete the contact** tap on ★ > ✎ in the **Phone** menu.
  ▶ To delete **one** preset, tap on 🗑 and confirm the deletion.
  ▶ To delete **all** presets, tap on *Delete all* and confirm the deletion.

ⓘ The position of the preferred contacts can be changed.

› Tap on ✎.
› Hold down the desired contact until it is free.
› Move the contact to another position.

Import telephone contacts

After first connecting the main telephone with Infotainment, telephone contacts will start to be imported into the Infotainment memory.

Infotainment can import up to 2000 telephone contacts together with contact pictures. Each contact can include max. 5 telephone numbers.

Depending on the type of telephone, import confirmation may be required.

Update telephone contacts

When connecting the next telephone with Infotainment, an **automatic** update of the list is carried out.

› For **manual** update of the list in the **phone** ⚙ > menu *tap on Import contacts* .

Sort contacts in the phone book

› In the **Telephone** ⚙ >menu *Sort by:* .
› Select the desired sorting mode.

Number for the voice mailbox

› For **setting the voice mailbox number** in the **phone** ⚙ > menu *Mailbox number:* .
› Enter the voice mailbox number.

Wi-Fi

Functionality

Wi-Fi can be used for the SmartLink connection.

The Infotainment hotspot can connect up to 3 mobile devices.

› To display the list of connected mobile devices, tap MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Connected devices* .

Restriction

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection
In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

ⓘ Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Settings

Connect a mobile device to the Infotainment hotspot

› Turn on the Infotainment WLAN hotspot in the menu item MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *WLAN hotspot*.
› Turn on the Wi-Fi on the mobile device.
› In the list of available Wi-Fi devices, look for Infotainment Wi-Fi.

  The name of the Infotainment is taken from the menu item MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Network name:*.
› Select the Infotainment hotspot and enter the required password.

  The password for connecting to the Infotainment hotspot is taken from the menu item MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Network key:*.
› Confirm the connection.

Security level of the Infotainment hotspot

The security level is set at *WPA2* and cannot be changed.

Change password for connection to Infotainment hotspot
The password must be a minimum of 12 and a maximum of 63 characters.

▶ Tap MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Network key:*.
▶ Enter the password and confirm.

SmartLink

Functionality

SmartLink offers the ability to display and operate certified applications from a connected mobile device in the Infotainment screen.

Certification may be conditional upon the use of the latest update to the particular SmartLink application.

Applications include, for example, apps for route guidance, telephoning, listening to music, etc.

Mobile devices can be connected via a USB cable or WiFi.

Supported connection types
SmartLink supports the following connection types:

▶ Android Auto
▶ Apple CarPlay
▶ MirrorLink

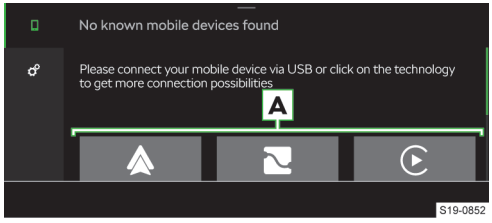
Overview of the SmartLink connection

Display menu
› Tap APP/.

Or:

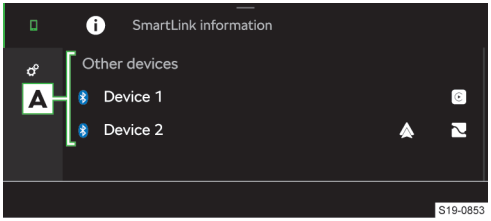
› Tap MENU > .

Menu for device not connected



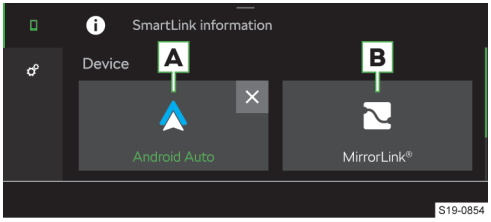
A List of supporting connection types

Menu for connected devices



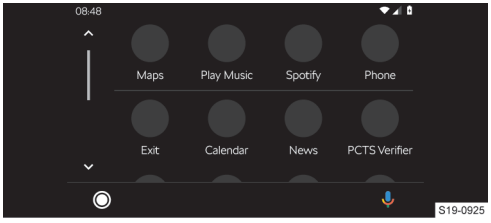
A List of connected devices and available connection types

Menu for a device used



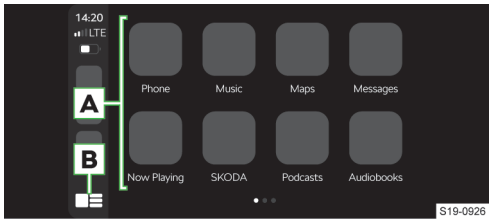
A Used connection type
B Available connection type
× Disconnect

Android Auto
› In the SmartLink menu, tap on .
› Select the connected device.
› Select the connection type .



○ Overview of running applications, phone calls, incoming text messages, and more.
Turn on voice control (Google Voice)

Apple CarPlay
› In the SmartLink menu, tap on .
› Select the connected device.
› Select the connection type .

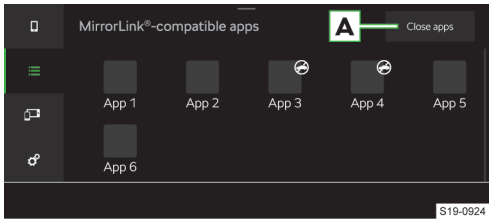


A List of available applications

B Depending on the duration of operation:
- ▸ **Tap:** Return to the menu Apple CarPlay
- ▸ **Hold:** Turn on voice control (Siri)

MirrorLink

› In the SmartLink menu, tap on .
› Select the connected device.
› Select the connection type .



A Display of running applications

It is not possible to operate the application while driving

Display of available devices

List of applications

Display of the last running application in connected mobile devices

Settings

Connection conditions

General connection conditions

✓ The mobile device supports the type of SmartLink connection Android Auto, Apple CarPlay or MirrorLink.
✓ Mobile devices, as well as the type of SmartLink connection, are supported in the respective market.
✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

Conditions for Android Auto

✓ The device to be connected must have Android Auto connection.

A list of devices, supported regions and applications that support the Android Auto connection can be found on the Google, Inc. website.

✓ The Android Auto application needs to be installed on the mobile device.
✓ Some applications require the data connection in the mobile device to be turned on.
✓ Connect the mobile device for the first time when the vehicle is stationary.

Conditions for Apple CarPlay

✓ The device to be connected must have Apple CarPlay connection.

A list of devices, supported regions and applications that support the Apple CarPlay connection can be found on the Apple Inc website.

✓ Siri voice control is on.
✓ The data connection in the mobile device is switched on.

Conditions for MirrorLink

✓ The device to be connected must have MirrorLink connection.

A list of devices and applications that support the MirrorLink connection can be found on the websites of Car Connectivity Consorcium®.

✓ The MirrorLink application needs to be installed on the mobile device.
✓ Some applications require the data connection in the connected mobile device to be turned on.

Operation

Operation of the running MirrorLink application

Display of control surfaces at the bottom

Display of control surfaces at the top

Return to the menu MirrorLink

Restriction

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Restriction of SmartLink applications while driving

For reasons of safety, the operation of some SmartLink applications while driving is not possible or only limited.

SmartLink settings

Apple CarPlay - Connection via USB

› Turn on the Infotainment.
› Turn on the mobile device.

› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
› Choose to connect via Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay - Connection via Wi-Fi from Infotainment
› Turn on Bluetooth® and Bluetooth® visibility in the Apple mobile device.
› Tap on MENU > > > *mobile devices*.
› In the displayed list, look for and select the desired device with the symbol .
› Follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen and confirm the Bluetooth® pairing.
› If another device is connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Apple CarPlay - Connect via Wi-Fi from mobile devices
To establish a connection, the following conditions must be met:

✓ The minimum iOS version is 9.
✓ No other mobile device can be connected via SmartLink.
✓ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® functionality is switched on in the Infotainment system.

› In the mobile device, turn on the CarPlay function.
› Press and hold the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

The Infotainment screen displays a connection message with the name of the Bluetooth® unit of the Infotainment.
› Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.
› If necessary, confirm the PIN.
› In the Infotainment screen, select the connection type Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay - Disconnect
› In the Apple CarPlay menu, tap on the function area “ŠKODA”.
› Tap on ×.

Android Auto - Connection via USB
› Turn on the Infotainment.
› Turn on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
› Choose to connect via Android Auto.

Android Auto - Connection via Wi-Fi from Infotainment
› Tap on MENU > > > *mobile devices*.
› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
› Select the Bluetooth®hands-free profile.
› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
› If another device is connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.
› From the list of **known devices**, select the desired device with the symbol.

Android Auto - Connect via Wi-Fi from mobile devices
To establish a connection, the following conditions must be met:

✓ The minimum Android version is 5.
✓ No other mobile device can be connected via SmartLink.
✓ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® functionality is switched on in the Infotainment system.

› Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.
› If necessary, confirm the PIN.
› In the Infotainment screen, select the connection type Android Auto.

Android Auto - Disconnect
› In the Android Auto > menu, tap “Return to SKODA”.
› Tap on ×.

MirrorLink - Connection via USB
› Turn on the Infotainment.
› Turn on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
› Choose to connect through MirrorLink.

MirrorLink - Connection via Wi-Fi from Infotainment
› Turn on Wi-Fi and visibility in the mobile device.
› Turn on the Infotainment Wi-Fi hotspot in the menu item MENU > > *Wi-Fi* > *Wi-Fi hotspot*.
› In the list of available Wi-Fi devices, look for Infotainment Wi-Fi.
› Enter the required password.
› With some mobile devices, communication between the device and the Infotainment in the notification bar of the mobile device must be confirmed.
› Tap on MENU > > > *mobile devices*.
› From the list of **available devices**, select the desired device with the symbol.

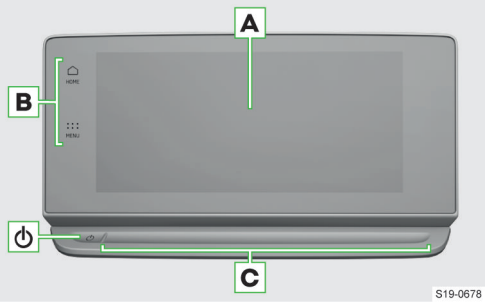
MirrorLink - Disconnect
› In the MirrorLink menu, tap on .
› Tap on ×.

Change to another device / connection type
Infotainment allows you to switch between currently connected devices and the connection type.

› In the SmartLink menu, tap on .
› Select the desired device or connection type.

Infotainment Bolero

Infotainment overview



A Touchscreen

B Sensor fields
- **HOME** - Preferred menus
- **MENU** - All menus

C Progress bar for volume adjustment

⏻ Condition-based:
- **Infotainment switched off**
  - **Tap:** Turn on Infotainment
- **Infotainment switched on**
  - **Tap:** Switch sound off/on
  - **Hold:** Switch off Infotainment

System

Restriction

For safety reasons, operation of some Infotainment functions while driving is not possible or is restricted.

The Infotainment system indicates this by means of a message in the screen.

Basic settings

Setting basic functions
The following Infotainment functions are set in the **MENU** > ☍ menu:
- Time and date
- Language
- Units
- Restore factory settings

Sound settings
The Infotainment sound is set in the menu **MENU** > 🔊.

The following menu items can be set:
- Setting the equalizer
- Adjusting the volume ratio
- Volume adjustment of individual Infotainment functions

  The volume can be adjusted on e.g. one of the following menu items:
  - Volume adjustment of voice commands
  - Setting the maximum volume when Infotainment is turned on
  - Speed-dependent volume setting
  - Setting the Infotainment to mute with the parking aid switched on

Depending on the equipment, the following advanced sound settings can be set
- Setting space optimisation
- Setting the audio profiles according to genre
- Adjusting the subwoofer volume

Configuration wizard
The configuration wizard helps to set certain Infotainment functions.

The configuration wizard is automatically displayed if the ignition is switched on and if there are at least two menu items that have not been set after switching on the Infotainment.

› To **switch off the automatic display**, when the configuration wizard is displayed tap *Don't show again* .
› For **manual display**, tap **MENU** > ☍ > *Configuration wizard* .

Set up menu HOME
› To **display another page** of the HOME menu, press the screen and drag to the left or right.

Add a preferred menu
› To **display the editing mode** hold a finger on the screen.
› Tap a free space with functional areas.
› Select a menu with the desired dimension of the functional surface.

  The Infotainment only offers font sizes that correspond in dimension to the fields with functional areas that are currently free.
› To **end edit mode**, tap ×.

Remove the preferred menu
› To **display edit mode**, press and hold the screen with one finger.
› Tap 🗑 on the desired menu.
› To **end edit mode**, tap ×.

Add/remove one side of the HOME menu
› To **display edit mode**, press and hold the screen with one finger.
› Tap on ✎.
› To **add another page**, tap **+**.

  The maximum number of pages is 4.
› Tap 🗑 to **remove a page**.

  The minimum number of pages is 2.

› Tap ⮌ to **return to the edit mode**.

Set up menu MENU
The position of the functional surfaces in the MENU menu can be customized as follows:

› Press and hold the desired functional surface until it is free.
› Move the functional surface to a different position.

Factory settings
Resetting the Infotainment to factory defaults restores all factory defaults.

› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› Tap on MENU > ⚙.
› *Reset to factory settings* select and confirm the reset.

ⓘ To check the factory reset was successful, we recommend that you check all user accounts have been deleted.

Troubleshooting

Infotainment not responding
If the infotainment does not respond, restart it as follows:

› Hold ⏻ for longer than 10 s.
› Wait for the restart to complete.

System update

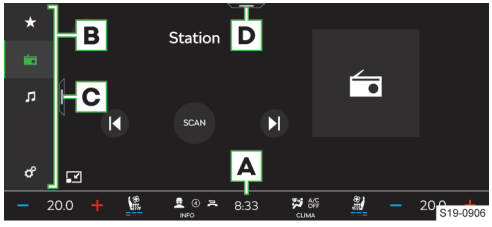
We recommend having the system update carried out by a specialist company.

The system update ensures optimal function of the Infotainment system, e.g. compatibility with new phones.

Determine system version
› Tap MENU > ⚙ > *System information*.

Screen

Overview



A Status bar
B Bar with the functional surfaces of the displayed menu
C Display/close the submenu window
D Display of the Infotainment control centre

Operation

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Danger of screen damage!
▸ The Infotainment screen is operated **by touching it lightly with your finger**.

In principle, operation by touch is identical to the operation of a mobile phone.

The following operating modes are specific to the Infotainment system.

Tap



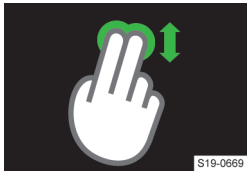
▸ Select function or menu item

Hold call



▸ Zoom into the map

Dragging up or down with two fingers



▸ Quickly look through the lists
▸ Switch 2D/3D map display

Pulling apart with two fingers



▸ Zoom into the map

Pulling together with two fingers



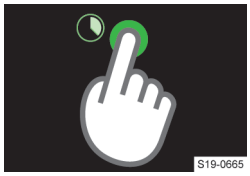
▸ Zoom out of the map

Turn two fingers



▸ Rotate the map

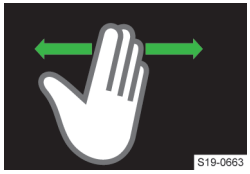
Press and hold



▸ Release certain Infotainment menus with the option to move them to another location on the screen

Contactless gesture control

Some Infotainment menus can be controlled by hand gestures.



› Gesture control is achieved by slowly moving the hand back and forth approximately 8 cm above the lower edge of the screen.

Depending on the setting, a recognized gesture can be confirmed acoustically and animated.

Displaying operation help

› Tap on MENU > ▮ > ✎.

Settings

The following basic screen functions are set in the menu MENU > ⚙ > *Screen*:

▸ Image of the screen background
▸ Brightness level of the screen
▸ Switch off the screen
▸ Display the time
▸ Confirmation sounds and animations

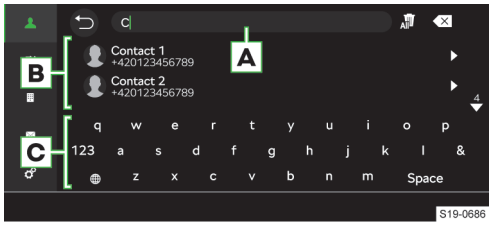
Infotainment keyboard

Keypad overview

The arrangement of the keyboard characters depends on the set infotainment language.

Depending on the context, the following types are used in infotainment:

▸ Alphanumeric
▸ Numeric
▸ Keyboard for input
▸ Keyboard for search



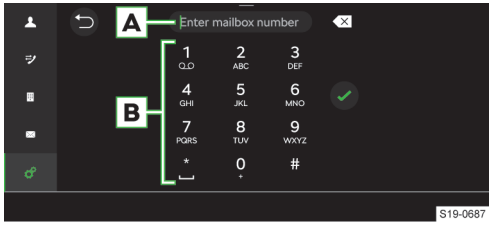
Keypad example

A Input line
- ▸ Touch the input line to display function areas for moving the cursor
- ▸ ⌫ Delete characters before the cursor
  - ▸ **Tap:** delete the last entered character
  - ▸ **Hold:** delete all entered characters in sequence
- ▸ Delete all entered characters

B Entries searched for
- ▸ ▼ Show list of searched entries

C Keypad functional surfaces
- ▸ ⬆ Change sentence case
- ▸ abc Switch to the language keypad
- ▸ 123 / 12# Switch to the numeric/character keyboard
- ▸ 1/2 / 2/2 Switch to other character variants
- ▸ Show additional keypad languages
- ▸ Display the entered password
- ▸ OK / ✓ Confirm the characters that have been entered

Numeric keypad



Keypad example

A Input line
- ▶ Touch the input line to display function areas for moving the cursor
- ▶ ⌫ Delete characters before the cursor
  - ▶ **Tap:** delete the last character
  - ▶ **Hold:** delete all characters

B Keypad functional surfaces

✓ Confirm the characters that have been entered

If context-sensitive, alphanumeric characters can be entered by holding a functional surface with a digit.

Operation

The Infotainment keypad is used to enter characters, letters and numbers.

The keypad will be **automatically displayed** when Infotainment prompts for characters.

Search
When entering characters, corresponding entries are searched for.

The entry to be searched for can be entered including diacritics.

The keyboard will only provide characters that match the stored entries.

› To **display searched entries** tap ▼.

The number of searched entries is displayed above the symbol ▼.

Show additional keypad languages
To use the additional keypad languages, the desired languages must be set first.

› To **use**, repeatedly tap 🌐 on the keyboard or on the flag icon until the desired language keyboard is displayed.

Further character variants
› Press and hold the character with the other character variant.
› Select the desired symbol.

Setting additional keypad languages

› For **Settings** MENU > ⚙ >, tap *Additional keypad languages*.
› Select the desired language.

Voice control

Functionality

Voice control principle
Voice control works according to the principle of dialogue between the user and the Infotainment system.

The user says a voice command. The Infotainment system responds or executes the voice command.

It is possible to interrupt a dialogue at any time and issue a new statement without having to wait for a complete response.

Advanced voice control
The advanced voice control of the vehicle enables an online search and operation of the vehicle functions.

The advanced voice control understands fluently spoken, complete sentences. You do not need to use set commands or phrases.

The advanced voice control can, for example, search for special destinations or dictate SMS messages if the connected telephone makes this possible.

This function allows you to combine the search in the online and offline data of the Infotainment. The transition between online and offline search is seamless and imperceptible to the user.

Operating conditions

✓ Ignition on
✓ Infotainment switched on

Operating conditions for advanced voice control
To use the advanced voice control, the following conditions must also be met:

✓ The vehicle supports the function.
✓ The vehicle has Infotainment and functions that can be controlled by the advanced voice control.
✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
✓ The vehicle is within range of a contractual mobile network, through which the connection to ŠKODA Connect Services is ensured.
✓ The level of protection of personal data is set to *Share my position*.

Requirement for recognition of the activation command
✓ Activated menu item MENU > ⚙ > *Voice control* > *Active*

Operation

Switch on voice control

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Or:

› Say the activation command **"OK Laura"**.

After switching on, the icon is displayed.

Enter voice command

› Speak a voice command with voice control switched on.

During recognition of the voice command, the icon is displayed.

The Infotainment system then executes the voice command or plays the message. During the message, the icon is displayed.

After the execution of the voice command, voice control is switched off.

Correcting a voice command

› During voice command input, press the button on the multifunction steering wheel and say a new voice command.

Stopping voice control

Stopping leaves more time for voice command input, e.g. for searching for a phone contact.

› Move your finger up or down over the Infotainment screen.

Or:

› Say the voice command **"pause"**.

Resuming stopped voice control

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Or:

› Tap on in the Infotainment screen.

Stopping the played back message

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Ending voice control

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel twice.

Or:

› Say the voice command **"cancel"** during voice command input.

Restriction

For some Infotainment languages, there is no voice control available. The Infotainment system will indicate this.

The messages are generated by Infotainment. Flawless clarity (e.g. road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.

You cannot use voice control while a phone call is in progress.

Settings

The following voice control functions are set in the menu **MENU** > > *Voice control*:

- Confirmation tones
- Enable/disable use of the activation word.

Self-help

Starting acoustic help

› If the Infotainment system is expecting a voice command, say **"Help"**.

The **"Help"** voice command can be issued repeatedly for further tips on voice control.

Displaying the help

› Tap on **MENU** > > .

Or:

› If Infotainment is expecting a voice command, say **"Overview"**.

Control centre

Overview

Display of the control centre



› Press the bar at the top of the screen and drag down.

Closing the control centre

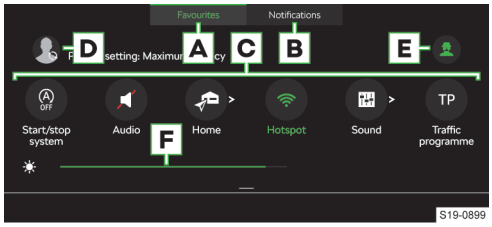
› Press the bar at the bottom of the screen and drag up.

Or:

› Wait 5 seconds.

Control Centre

The Infotainment control centre can be used for quick access to the following functions:



A Display and administration of functional surfaces of preferred features.

B Display list of informational messages.

C Preferred functions

D Display user account management.

E Setting the personal data protection level.

F Setting the instrument and key illumination.

Set functional surfaces of preferred features

› To **display** the edit mode, tap on the empty functional surface with the + icon or hold down the occupied functional surface.

› To **add** the preferred feature, hold down the functional surface of the desired function and move it from the lower part of the screen to the functional surface in the upper part of the screen.

› To **close** edit mode, tap on ⮌.

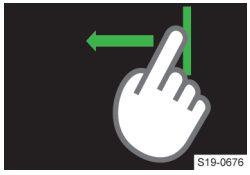
Radio

Overview

Display menu

› Tap MENU > ♫ > 📻.

Display the player



› Tap on MENU > ♫.

› Press the bar button on the right edge of the screen and drag to the left.

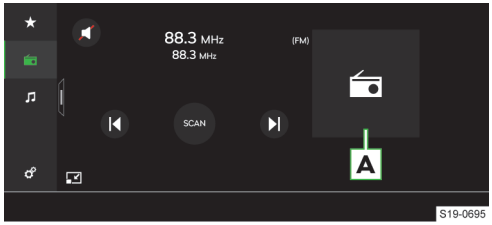
Close player

› Tap on ⮹.

Or:

› Press the bar button on the left edge of the player and drag to the right.

Analogue and digital radio player



A Radio station logo

⏮ / ⏭ Switch to the previous/next station
The type of switching depends on how the arrow buttons are set up ⚙ > *Radio* > *Arrow buttons:*.

SCAN Switching the SCAN function on / off

🔇 Activate/deactivate muting

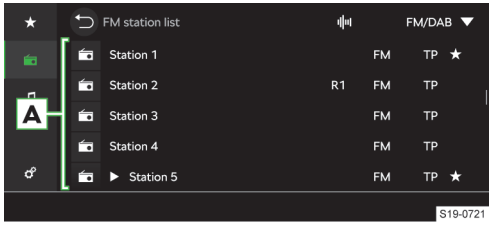
⮹ Close player

List of available analogue and digital radio stations

› To **display**, tap on MENU > ♫ > 📻.

› Tap on ▼.

› Select FM/DAB or AM.



A List of available stations

⮌ Show available frequency ranges
After selecting a frequency range, the desired station must still be selected

▼ Select frequency range
After selecting a frequency range, the last station to be played in the respective frequency range is set.

▶ Station currently being played

★ Station stored on the presets

TP A traffic radio station is set

The DAB transmitter emits images which are displayed in the information to the station

Manual update of the station list

ⓘ In the station list, information about the programme type and the channel identification of the regional channel can be displayed.

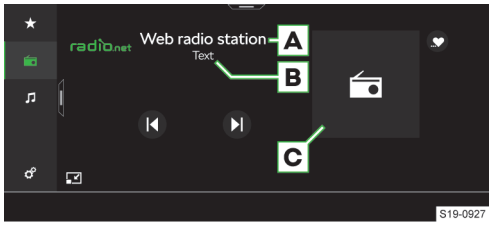
Web radio player

› To **select a web radio station**, in the **Radio** menu 📻 > ▼ > tap *Web radio* .

› Select a web radio station from the displayed lists.

Or:

› Tap on ⌕ to search for a web radio station.



A Station name

B Information about the broadcast content

C Station logos

⏮ / ⏭ Switch to the previous/next station
The type of switching depends on how the arrow buttons are set up ⚙ › *Radio* › *Arrow buttons:*.

❤ Display related web radio stations and podcasts

Close player

When the ⊘ icon is displayed, no Internet connection is available.

Podcast player

› To **select a podcast**, in the **Radio** menu tap › ♫ › 📻 › ▼ › *Web radio* .

› Select a podcast from the displayed lists.

Or:

› Tap on ⌕ to search for podcasts.

The podcasts are shown in the displayed lists with the icon 🎙.



A Podcast name

B Information about the broadcast content

C Podcast logo

▷ **Tap:** start playback

▯▯ **Tap:** pause

⏮ / ⏭ Switch to the previous/next station
The type of switching depends on how the arrow buttons are set up ⚙ › *Radio* › *Arrow buttons:*.

15 **Tap:** Go back 15 secs

15 **Tap:** Go forward 15 secs

❤ Display related web radio stations and podcasts

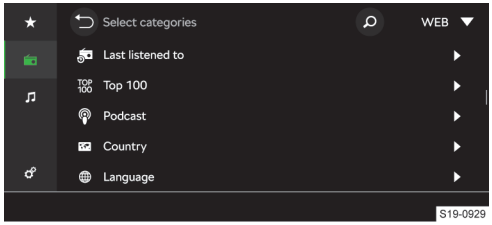
View episodes of the podcast being played

Close player

When the ⊘ icon is displayed, no Internet connection is available.

List of web radio stations and podcasts

› To **display the list**, in the **Radio** menu 📻 › ▼ › tap *Web radio* .



⌕ Search for web radio stations and podcasts

Recently played web radio stations and podcasts

100 most popular web radio stations depending on the Infotainment language that has been set

Go to podcasts and select

Search for and select web radio stations and podcasts based on the selected country

Search for and select web radio stations and podcasts based on the selected language

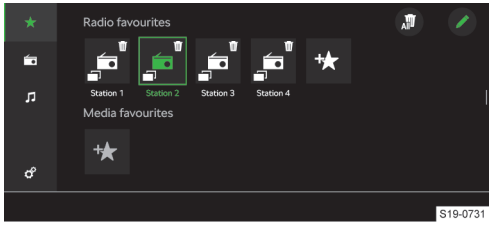
Search for and select web radio stations and podcasts based on the selected genre

The podcasts are shown in the displayed lists with the icon 🎙.

Preset buttons for favourite stations and podcasts

The preset buttons can be used to store stations from all available frequency ranges as well as web radio stations and podcasts.

› Tap on MENU › ♫ › ★.



★ Store current station or podcast

Switch edit mode on/off

▸ 🗑 - Delete all preset buttons for preferred stations and media

▶ - Delete the desired preset button
▶ - Change logo

The position of the stored preset buttons can be changed.

› Tap on .
› Press and hold the desired preset button until it is free.
› Move the preset button to a different position.

Operation

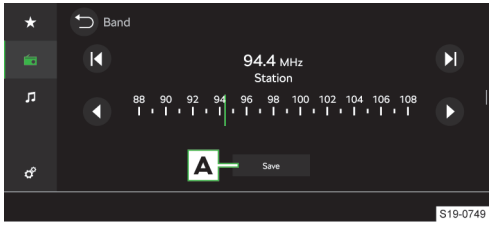
SCAN function
The function plays receivable stations of the selected frequency range in succession for a few seconds each.

› Display the radio player.
› To **Start automatic play**, tap SCAN.
› To **End automatic play**, tap SCAN.

Find stations manually
Manual search is available for AM and FM stations.

› Display list of available sensors.
› Tap on .

For FM stations, the functional area is available when the MENU > > > *radio* > *Station display:* > *FM* menu item is set.



/ Switch to the previous/next available station
/ Look for each other
A Store the currently selected station on a station key for the preferred station.

Hold down the scroll mark on the frequency range scale and move it to the desired value.

Restriction

▶ Infotainment supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.
▶ Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can restrict radio reception.
▶ In the rear side windows, there are antennas for receiving the radio signal. Covering the panes with foils or metal-coated labels may affect the reception of the radio signal.
▶ The ŠKODA AUTO company assumes no responsibility for the availability, correct functioning and broadcast information of the RDS service.

Settings

Store the current station to a preset button for preferred stations
› To **store**, tap ★ > ★ in the **Radio** menu.

Store stations to a preset button for favourite stations from the list of available stations
› To **display the station list**, tap in the **Radio** menu.
› Hold the line with the name of the desired station.
› Tap on ★ or the preset button for favourite stations that you want to replace.

Delete the stored preset button for the favourite station
› To **erase**, tap on ★ > in the **Radio** main menu.
▶ To delete **one** preset button, tap on .
▶ To delete **all** preset buttons, tap on and confirm the deletion.

Functional areas / for analogue and digital radios
Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

The variant for **changing stations in the radio player** is set as follows using the functional areas /:

› In the menu **Radio** > *Radio* > *Changing the station:* .
› Select the variant for switching between the stations stored on the station buttons or the stations stored in the list of available stations.

Functional areas / for web radio stations and podcasts
Applies to web radio stations and podcasts.

The variant for **changing stations** using functional areas / in the **Radio** menu, is set as follows:

› In the menu **Radio** > *Changing the station:* .
› Select the variant for switching between the stations stored on the station keys or the last web stations and podcasts listened to.

Switch traffic reception (TP) for stations on/off
Applies to FM and DAB frequency range.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap .
› *Radio* > *Traffic program (TP)* .

Switch RDS on/off
Applies to the FM frequency range.

The menu item is only available for some countries.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap .

› *Radio* > *Radio Radio Data System (RDS)* .

If the **RDS function is disabled**, the following menu items in **FM station** settings are not available:

- Traffic program (TP)
- Radio text
- RDS Regional
- Automatic frequency change (AF)
- Regional station logo.

Switch automatic frequency control (AF) on/off
Applies to the FM frequency range.

When the function is switched on and the signal of the FM station currently being listened to is weak, Infotainment automatically sets the same station to a different frequency with a better signal.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap .
› *Radio* > *Automatic frequency change (AF)* .

Display the set station in the instrument cluster display
› Select the menu in which the travel time and the travelled distance are displayed.
› Hold the button on the multifunction steering wheel for at least 5 seconds.

When the button is released, a menu is displayed.
› In the menu, select menu item *Info when changing tracks* .

Automatic change of frequency to a regionally linked FM station
Applies to the FM frequency range.

Infotainment provides the option of automatically switching to a regionally linked FM station in case of signal loss of the FM station being listened to.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap .
› *Radio* > *RDS Regional:* .
› Select one of the following menu items:
- *Fix* - When the signal is lost, another station must be set manually.
- *Automatic* - automatic selection of the station with the best signal reception.

If reception is lost in the given region, Infotainment will automatically set another available region.

Turn on/off radio text reception
Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on, you can see more information about the content broadcast from the station to which you are listening.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap .
› *Radio* > *Radio text* .

Add the station logo
Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

Infotainment offers the option of adding logos, which are stored in the Infotainment memory, to the stations.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Radio* > *Station logos* and select the desired frequency range.

Or:

› In the list of preferred stations, tap on > at the desired preset button.
› Select the desired logo.

To turn off the logo display, tap on in the list of available logos.

Switch adding automatic station logos on/off
Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on, a station logo from the Infotainment memory is added when the station is stored on a preset.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap .
› *Radio* > *Tap Automatic selection of station logos* .

Regional FM station logo
Applies to the FM frequency range.

Infotainment provides the option of using country-specific FM station logos.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap .
› *Radio* > *Region for station logo:* .

Switching additional announcements of the DAB transmitter on / off
Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on, other announcements are received as traffic announcements. These include e.g. weather news, sports reports, financial news etc.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap .
› *Radio* > *Tap Additional DAB announcements* .

Displaying FM / DAB stations or FM stations in the list of available stations
Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

Depending on the following setting, the stations of the selected frequency range are displayed in the list of available stations.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap .
› *Radio* > *Station display:* .
› Select one of the following menu items:
- *FM/DAB* - the list shows available FM and DAB stations.
- *FM* - the list shows available FM stations.

Switch automatic switching to a similar DAB transmitter on / off
Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and there is signal loss from the DAB station being listened to, Infotainment automatically sets another DAB station with similar content.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙.
› *Radio* > *Tap Switch to a similar station if weak reception* .

Sound quality of web radio stations and podcasts
Applies to web radio stations and podcasts.

› To adjust the sound quality, tap on ⚙ > *Audio quality:* in the **Radio** main menu.
› Choose low or high quality.

The quality you set affects the amount of data used in the data connection.

Quality also depends on the speed and availability of the data connection.

ⓘ If playback failure occur, reduce the sound quality.

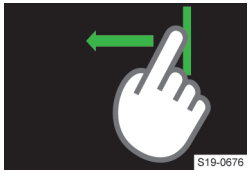
Media

What you should be mindful of

- Do not save any important data or that which has not been backed up on the connected audio sources. ŠKODA assumes no responsibility for lost or damaged files or connected audio sources.
- When changing or connecting an audio source, this may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before changing or connecting an audio source.
- When connecting an audio source, the source information messages can be displayed. These messages must be observed and, if necessary, confirmed.
- The national copyright laws that apply in your country must be observed.

Overview

Display the player



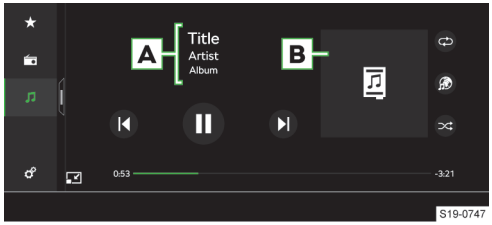
› Tap on MENU > ♫.
› Press the bar button on the right edge of the screen and drag to the left.

Close player
› Tap on ⊡.

Or:

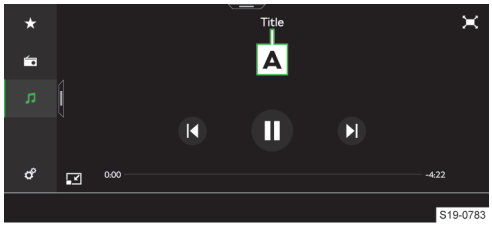
› Press the bar button on the left edge of the player and drag to the right.

Media player



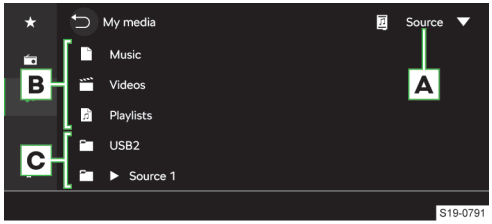
A Available information about the track, artist and album being played
B Album image
⊡ Close player

Video player



A Name of the track being played
⤢ Zoom out of/in to picture display
⊡ Close player

Media list



A Select source
B Multimedia database, divided into music, videos and playlists
C List of connected mobile devices
⮌ Show available sources

Preferred media
The currently played media can be stored on the preset buttons for preferred media.

Depending on the available information, the track, the album, the artist name and the allocated genre can be stored.

› To **display** tap on ★ in the **Media** menu.

Operation

Operation - Basics

▷ **Tap:** start playback

▯▯ **Tap:** pause

⏮ **Within 3 seconds of starting playback, tap:** play the previous song

⏮ **After 3 seconds from the start of playback, tap:** to play the current title from the beginning

⏮ **Hold:** fast rewind within the title

⏭ **Tap:** play the next song

⏭ **Hold:** fast forward within the title

Movement within the title is also possible by dragging the finger over the timeline.

Advanced operation

Turn on / off repeat playback of the current track

Turn on / off repeat playback of the current album / folder

Turn on / off random playback of the current album / folder

Save the played track in the "*My playlist*" playlist

"My playlist" management

› To **store the currently playing track to the playlist**, tap on in the media player.

› To **display the playlist**, tap on ♫.

› Tap on ⮌ until the media list for the current source is displayed.

› Tap on > .

› To **manage the playlist** tap ✎ in the displayed playlist.

The following activities can be carried out in playlist management:

▸ Control playback.

▸ Change the order of a title in the list by holding and moving + to the desired position.

▸ Delete track by tapping on 🗑.

Restriction

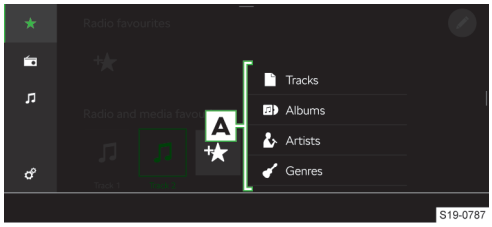
The availability of some media operation functions is dependent on the connected source and the software being used, e.g. Bluetooth®.

Settings

Manage favourites

› To **save** the preferred medium, tap on ★ > ★+ **Media** in the menu.

› Select a menu item from the following menu A.



› To **delete a preferred menu item**, tap on ★ > ✎ > 🗑 in the **Media** menu and confirm the deletion.

› To **delete all preferred menu items**, tap on ★ > ✎ > 🗑 in the **Media** menu and confirm the deletion.

Traffic

› To **turn on/off** traffic monitoring during playback of media files, go to the **Media** in the main menu ⚙ > and tap on *Traffic program (TP)* .

Supported sources and files

Supported sources

Source	Interface	Type	Specification	File system
USB	USB 1.x; 2.x 3.x or higher with USB 2.x support	MSC	USB stick	VFAT FAT16 FAT32 exFAT NTFS
			HDD (without special software)	
			USB devices that use the USB mass storage support protocol	
		MTP	Devices running the Android or Windows Phone operating system that support the Media Transfer Protocol	
		Apple	Devices with the iOS operating system and the iAP2 protocol	HFS+
Bluetooth® player	Bluetooth®	-	Bluetooth® protocols A2DP and AVRCP (1.0 - 1.6)	-

Compatibility of mobile devices

It is possible to check the ŠKODAweb pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code:

http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All information given is incidental and serves as information.

The ŠKODA AUTO company cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to a software update of the Infotainment and the mobile devices.

Supported audio files

Compression format	Codec type	File extension	Max. bit rate [kbps]	Max. sampling rate [kHz]	Multi channels
MPEG	MPEG 1 Layer 2	mp2	32 - 384	32, 44, 48	Mono, stereo, Joint stereo
	MPEG 2 Layer 2		8 - 160	16, 22, 24	
	MPEG 1 Layer 3	mp3	32 - 320	32, 44, 48	Mono, dual mono, Stereo, Joint Stereo
	MPEG 2 Layer 3		8 - 160	16, 22, 24	
	MPEG 2.5 Layer 3			8, 11, 12	

Compression format	Codec type	File extension	Max. bit rate [kbps]	Max. sampling rate [kHz]	Multi channels
WMA	Windows Media Audio 7	wma	6 - 192	8, 16, 22, 32, 44, 48, 96	Mono, stereo, Joint stereo
	Windows Media Audio 8		8 - 384	8, 11, 16, 22, 32, 44, 48, 96	
	Windows Media Audio 9 and 9.1		8 - 768		
	Windows Media Audio 9.2		8 - 320		
	Windows Media Audio 10		32 - 768	32, 44, 48, 96	
ADTS	AAC LC	aac	16 - 2048	22, 24, 32, 44, 48	Stereo
	AAC HE			16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48	
	AAC HEv2				
MP4	M4A LC	m4a	16 - 400	22, 24, 32, 44, 48	Stereo
	M4A HE			16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48	
	M4A HEv2		16 - 64		
OGG	OGG-Vorbis	ogg	8 - 576	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48, 96	Mono, Stereo
FLAC	FLAC	flac	-	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48, 64, 88, 96, 192	Mono, stereo, Joint stereo
RIFF	WAV	wav	64 - 3072	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48, 96	Mono, Stereo
Monkey's	Monkey's	ape	8 - 192		
SBC	Bluetooth A2DP	-	8 - 345	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48	Mono, stereo, Joint stereo
OPUS	OPUS	opus	6 - 2000	8 - 48	Mono, stereo, Multichannel

Files that are protected by **DRM**- and **iTunes®** methods are not supported by Infotainment.

Supported video files

Codec type	File extension	Max. recordings per second bit rate [Mbit/s]
MPEG 1	mpg mpeg m1v mPV	1.5
MPEG 2	mpg mpeg ps m2v	15
MPEG 4 (H.264)	m4p mp4 m4v mp4v mov	50
MPJEG		
MPEG 4 (ISO)		
Xvid	Xvid	20

Codec type	File extension	Max. recordings per second bit rate [Mbit/s]
WMV9	wmv asf	50

Supported playlists

Codec type	File extension
M3U	m3u
M3U8	m3u8
PLS	pls
WPL	wpl
ASX	asx

Mobile device management

Cybernetic security

Your vehicle contains components that are used to exchange information and data between the vehicle and the connected mobile devices or the Internet.

These components have security mechanisms that minimise the risk of unauthorised access to the vehicle systems.

Regular software updates help reduce the risk of unauthorised access to vehicle systems and vehicle functions. The following guidelines must therefore be observed:

› Use only media carriers, Bluetooth® devices, and mobile devices that contain no harmful data or malware.

› Regularly update the software provided by ŠKODA AUTO.

We recommend having the system software and components updated by a specialist company.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
Malware in the vehicle can influence and deactivate certain vehicle functions, or take over the controls of these where applicable.

▸ If the vehicle reacts in an unusual way, immediately reduce speed or stop the vehicle.

▸ Seek the help of a specialist garage.

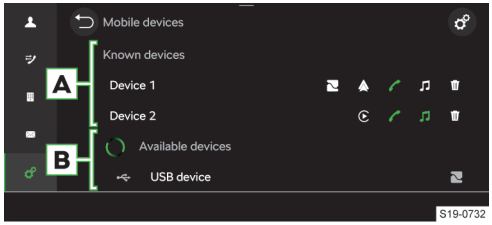
⚠ **WARNING**
Malware in the vehicle may gain unauthorised access to the information and data of the vehicle, and on occasion, to connected mobile devices.

Overview

Using mobile device management, devices can be connected, disconnected, and interchanged.

Display mobile device management

› Tap on **MENU** > ⚙ > *mobile devices*.



A Connected / Previously connected devices

B Available devices

The device enables a connection via the Bluetooth®"hands-free profile"

The device enables a connection via the Bluetooth® audio profile

Remove the device from the list **previously connected devices**

The device enables a SmartLink connection to be made via Android Auto

The device enables a SmartLink connection to be made via Apple CarPlay

The device enables a SmartLink connection to be made via MirrorLink

If the connection icon is green, the connection is active.

Limitations of mobile devices and applications

Availability of features
The availability of certain features depends on the type of mobile device, as well as that of the applications installed.

Compatibility of mobile devices
It is possible to check the ŠKODAweb pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code:

http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All information given is incidental and serves as information.

The ŠKODA AUTO company cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to a software update of the Infotainment and the mobile devices.

Bluetooth® compatibility of mobile devices
Due to the large number of mobile devices, it is not possible to guarantee total Bluetooth® compatibility with Infotainment. Bluetooth® compatibility depends on the Bluetooth® version as well as the implementation of Bluetooth® protocols by the manufacturer of the mobile device.

Applications in mobile devices
Mobile devices can be used to install applications that allow you to view additional information on the Infotainment screen, or to operate the Infotainment system.

Due to the variety of applications, as well as their ongoing development, the available applications may not function on all mobile devices. ŠKODA AUTO assumes no liability for their proper functioning.

The scope of available applications and their functionality is dependent on the type of Infotainment, as well as the vehicle and country.

Information about ŠKODAapplications
Detailed information about ŠKODA applications can be found on the website after reading the following QR code or link:

http://go.skoda.eu/mobile-apps

Connection set-up

Connect a mobile device to Infotainment
› Find available Bluetooth® devices in the mobile device.
› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

The unit name can be determined by tapping **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices* > ⚙ > *device name:*.

› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

Connect Infotainment to a non-paired mobile device
› **MENU** > ⚙ > *Mobile devices* .
› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
› Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.
› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Connect Infotainment to a previously connected mobile device
› **MENU** > ⚙ > *Mobile devices* .
› Select the desired device from the list of **known devices**.
› Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.
› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

SmartLink connection
Infotainment provides the ability to connect SmartLink to compatible mobile devices using the following connection types:

- Android Auto
- Apple CarPlay
- MirrorLink

Mobile devices can be connected to the Infotainment via USB cable or Wi-Fi, as long as the mobile device supports it.

› Connect the mobile device to the Infotainment via a USB cable or browse and connect to a wireless network.
› Tap the icon of the supported connection.

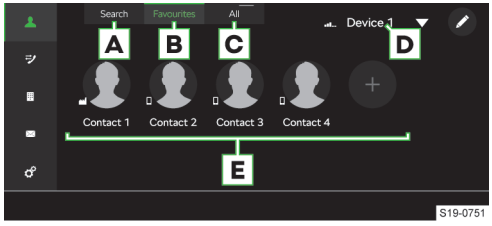
Telephone

Overview

Display menu
› Tap **MENU** > .

If the menu **phone** is not displayed, check whether the mobile device is connected.

Manage contacts
› Tap on **MENU** > > .
› If two phones are connected, tap ▼ and select the desired phone.



A Contact search

B Display favourite contacts

C Display the list of all contacts

D Name of the main telephone

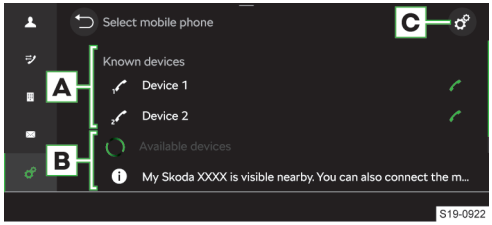
E Preset buttons for preferred contacts

If no phone contacts are displayed, check the request to confirm the import of contacts in the connected mobile device.

Manage telephones

› In the **Phone** menu, tap on .

› Tap on *Select mobile phone*.



A Main telephone, additional telephone and known devices

B List of available telephones

C Setting for the Infotainment Bluetooth® function

The telephone enables connection via the Bluetooth® "hands-free profile"

Delete telephone from the list of known devices

To display the recycle bin icon and the available SmartLink connections, click the icon press and drag to the left.

If the connection icon is green, the connection is active.

Conditions for connecting a telephone with Infotainment

✓ The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment and the telephone needs to be switched on.

The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item MENU > > *Mobile devices* > > *Bluetooth*.

✓ Visibility of the Infotainment is switched on.

The visibility of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item MENU > > *Mobile devices* > > *Visibility*.

✓ The telephone is within signal range of the Infotainment's Bluetooth® unit.

✓ The telephone is compatible with Infotainment.

Telephone operation

Enter telephone number

› Tap on MENU > > .

› Enter the telephone number using the numeric keypad that is displayed.

› To **connect**, tap on .

The displayed numeric keypad can also be used for searching for contacts.
If, for example, the digits 32 are entered, contacts with the letter sequence DA, FA, EB etc. are displayed next to the numeric keypad.

Establish a connection to the voice mailbox number

› Tap on MENU > > .

› Tap on .

If no voice mailbox number is entered, a menu for entering this number will be displayed.

Telephone conversation

Depending on the context of the telephone conversation, the following functions can be selected:

End connection / reject incoming call / end call

Accept incoming call

Return to the call on hold

/ Switch the ringer off / on

Hold a call

/ Switch the microphone off / on

Show details of the caller

Reject an incoming call using an SMS message

Answer a call from the second telephone during a call on the first telephone
The ongoing call on the first telephone is terminated by accepting the call.

› To **switch the call tone from the speakers to the phone**, tap on .

› To **switch the call tone from the telephone to the speakers**, tap .

Conference call

A conference call is a joint telephone conversation with a minimum of three and a maximum of six participants.

› Make the next call during an ongoing conversation/ conference.

Or:

› Accept a new incoming call by tapping .

› To **start** a conference call, tap .

During an ongoing conference call, the following functions can be selected depending on the context:

Hold the conference call and leave temporarily (the conference will continue in the background)

Return to the held conference call

/ Switch the microphone off / on

End conference call

Show details of the conference call

In the details of the conference call, depending on the connected telephone, the following functions can be selected:

- Show details of the conference call participants
- End conversation with the conference call participant
- Conversation with a participant outside of the conference call

Send a text message

› In the **Phone** menu, tap on ✉ > ▼.

Depending on the connected telephone, it may still be necessary to select the *SMS* menu item.

› Tap on ✉+.

› Write a text message and confirm; a view of the message is displayed.

The message can be edited when the text area within the view is tapped.

› Search for or select the recipient of the message.

Multiple recipients can be added.

› Tap *Send*.

Display received text messages

› In the **Phone** menu, tap on ✉ > ▼.

Depending on the connected telephone, it may still be necessary to select the *SMS* menu item.

› Tap on ✉.

› Messages that are received are displayed as individual messages or as messages in a conversation, depending on the following setting.

To **switch the display of messages as a conversation on or off**, tap on ⚙ > *Show messages as a conversation* in the **Phone** menu.

› To **switch graphic notifications** regarding the receipt of a new message **on or off**, tap on ⚙ > *New message notifications* in the **Phone** menu.

ⓘ Infotainment offers the possibility to read the text message (context-dependent) by means of the generated Infotainment voice if 🔊 is tapped.

ⓘ For a quick response to the selected message, tap on 💬 and select the desired answer.

Send e-mails

› In the **Phone** menu, tap on ✉ > ▼ > *EMAIL* > ✉+.

› Enter a subject for the e-mail.

› Write an e-mail and confirm that an e-mail is displayed.

› Search for or select the recipient of the email.

Multiple recipients can be added.

› Tap *Send*.

Show received e-mails

› In the **Telephone** ✉ > ▼ > menu *tap on EMAIL* .

› Select the desired e-mail.

The following functions can be selected in the displayed e-mail:

- ▼ Reply to all or just to the sender.
- ✉+ Reply with a new e-mail.
- ✉ Forward e-mail.
- ⋮ E-mail management.

When the 📎 icon is displayed, the e-mail contains an attachment.

› To **switch graphic notifications** regarding the receipt of a new message **on or off**, tap in the **Phone** ⚙ >menu *New message notifications* .

Settings for Infotainment telephone functions

Telephone-Infotainment-Connection types

The way in which the telephone is connected depends on the number of phones currently connected to the Infotainment:

- **No telephone** - The telephone is connected as a main telephone.
- **One telephone** - The telephone is connected as an additional telephone.
- **Two telephones** - Select the telephone to be replaced.

› To **switch between the main telephone and the additional telephone**, tap on **Phone** ▼ in any menu.

› Select the desired phone.

Connect the telephone to Infotainment

› Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.

› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

The unit name can be determined by tapping MENU > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices* > ⚙ > *device name:*.

› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

Connect Infotainment to a non-paired mobile device

› MENU > ⚙ > *Mobile devices* .

› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.

› Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.

› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Connect Infotainment to a previously paired telephone

› MENU > ⚙ > *mobile devices* .

Or:

› PHONE > ⚙ > *Select mobile phone* .

› Select the desired device from the list of **known devices**.

› Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.

› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Manage preset buttons for preferred contacts

› To **display the preferred contacts**, tap on 👤 in the **Phone** menu.

› To **store the contact**, tap on +.

› Select or search for the desired contact.

› If the contact contains multiple telephone numbers, choose the desired telephone number.

› To **delete the contact** tap on 👤 > ✎ in the **Phone** menu.

▶ To delete **one** preset, tap on 🗑 and confirm the deletion.

▶ To delete **all** preset buttons, tap on 🗑 and confirm the deletion.

ⓘ The position of the preferred contacts can be changed.

› Tap on ✎.

› Hold down the desired contact until it is free.

› Move the contact to another position.

Number for the voice mailbox

› For **setting the voice mailbox number** in the **phone** ⚙ > menu *Mailbox number:* .

› Enter the voice mailbox number.

Ringtone

Some phones do not support the use of the phone ringtone. Instead, the Infotainment ringtone is used.

› For **setting the Infotainment ringtone** in the **phone** ⚙ >menu *select the ringtone* .

› Select the ringtone.

Switch HD voice quality for a call on/off

This function makes it possible to improve the quality of a telephone call.

› In the **Telephone** ⚙ >menu *HD voice quality* .

Turn call rejection with a message on/off

If a call is rejected when this function is switched on, an SMS message can be sent to the caller.

› In the **Telephone** ⚙ >menu *Reject call with SMS template* .

Sort contacts in the phone book

› In the **Telephone** ⚙ >menu *Sort by:* .

› Select the desired sorting mode.

Import telephone contacts

After first connecting the main telephone with Infotainment, telephone contacts will start to be imported into the Infotainment memory.

Infotainment can import up to 5000 telephone contacts together with contact pictures. Each contact can include max. 5 telephone numbers.

Depending on the type of telephone, import confirmation may be required.

Update telephone contacts

When connecting the next telephone with Infotainment, an **automatic** update of the list is carried out.

› For **manual** update of the list in the **phone** ⚙ > menu *tap on Import contacts* .

Switch message viewing as a conversation on/off

When this function is switched on, messages are displayed as a conversation.

› In the **Telephone** ⚙ >menu *Show messages as conversation* .

Turn the graphic notice regarding receiving a new message/email on or off

When the feature is on, the new message icon appears on the status bar and in the feature area for the messages when a new message/e-mail is received.

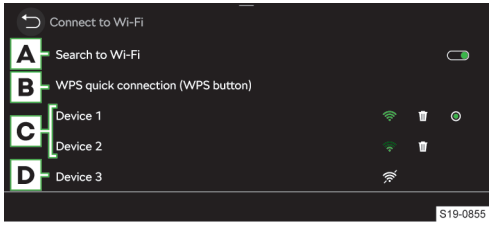
› In the **Telephone** ⚙ >menu *New message notifications* .

Wi-Fi

Overview of available hotspots

List of available hotspots

› To **display the list**, tap on MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Wi-Fi:*.



A Search for available visible hotspots

B Connection to the hotspot via WPS

C Previously connected hotspots

D Available hotspots

⊙ Currently connected hotspot

🗑 Delete information about the hotspot connection

Signal strength of the hotspot

Hotspot signal is not available

Functionality

The Wi-Fi can be used for the internet connection or for the SmartLinkConnection.

The Infotainment hotspot can connect up to 8 mobile devices. At the same time, the Infotainment can be connected to another hotspot.

› To display the list of connected mobile devices, tap MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Connected devices*.

Settings

Connect a mobile device to the Infotainment hotspot

› Turn on the Infotainment's WLAN hotspot in the menu item MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Use as hotspot*.

› Turn on the Wi-Fi on the mobile device.

› In the list of available Wi-Fi devices, look for Infotainment Wi-Fi.

The name of the Infotainment is taken from the menu item MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Network name:*.

› Select the Infotainment hotspot and enter the required password.

The password for connecting to the Infotainment hotspot is taken from the menu item MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Password:*.

› Confirm the connection.

Connect Infotainment to the mobile device hotspot

› Turn on the Infotainment's Wi-Fi unit in the menu item MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *WLAN:* > *Search for WLAN* switch on

› Select the desired hotspot in the list of available hotspots.

› Enter the password for connecting to mobile devices.

ⓘ Infotainment stores passwords for previously connected hotspots.

Security level of the Infotainment hotspot

The security level is set at *WPA2* and cannot be changed.

Data transmission with the connected device

› To turn data transmission with the connected device on or off, tap MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Connected devices* > ⏻.

Change the name of the Infotainment hotspot

› MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as a hotspot* > *Network name:* .

› Enter the name and confirm.

Change password for connection to Infotainment hotspot

The password must be a minimum of 12 and a maximum of 63 characters.

› MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as a hotspot* > *Password:* .

› Enter the password and confirm.

Quick connection of Infotainment to the mobile device hotspot

› On the mobile device, turn on the hotspot, its visibility, and the option for WPS connection.

› MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Wi-Fi:* > *Tap WPS quick connection (WPS button)* .

Automatic WPS connection

› Tap MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Quick connection to Infotainment system*.

› In the mobile device, switch on the option for connection via WPS.

› Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

Manual WPS connection

› In the mobile device, switch on the option for connection via WPS PIN.

The mobile device display will show the WPS PIN for connecting to the Infotainment.

› Tap MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Quick connection to Infotainment system* > ⓘ > *WPS PIN*.

› Enter the WPS PIN in the Infotainment and confirm.

› Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

Automatic connection using the QR code

› MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Tap quick connection with infotainment system* .

› In the mobile device, switch on the option for connection via QR Code.

› With the mobile device, read the QR code displayed on the Infotainment screen.

› Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

Tips for a perfect connection

ⓘ

▸ Keep only the hotspot to be connected switched on and switch off the other hotspots.

▸ Delete unused hotspots. This shortens the time required to establish a connection.

▸ For some hotspots, the connection takes longer, so wait for the connection to finish.

▸ If the connection is interrupted, recheck the available hotspots and repeat the connection.

Function restriction

The Infotainment system can only be connected to a hotspot with WPA2 access protection.

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

SmartLink

Functionality

SmartLink offers the ability to display and operate certified applications from a connected mobile device in the Infotainment screen.

Certification may be conditional upon the use of the latest update to the particular SmartLink application.

Applications include, for example, apps for route guidance, telephoning, listening to music, etc.

Mobile devices can be connected via a USB cable or WiFi.

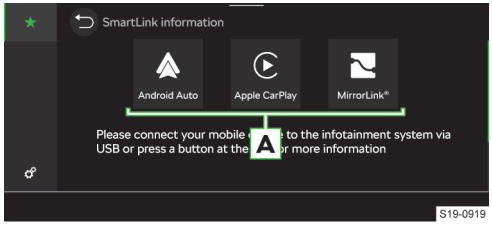
Supported connection types
SmartLink supports the following connection types:

- Android Auto
- Apple CarPlay
- MirrorLink

Overview of the SmartLink connection

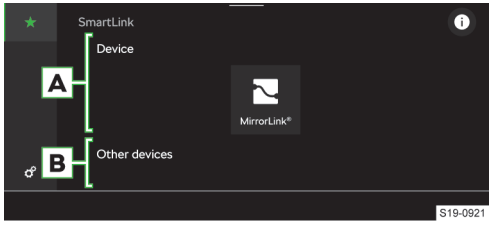
Display menu
› Tap MENU > .

Menu for device not connected



A List of supporting connection types

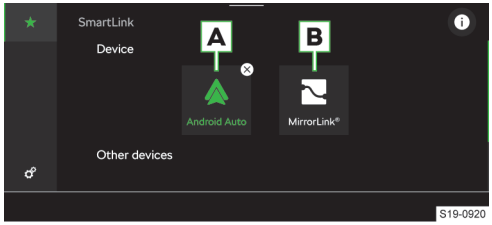
Menu for connected devices



A List of connected devices and available connection types

B List of available devices

Menu for a device used

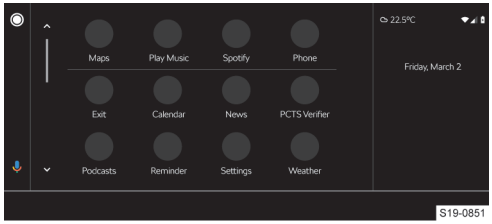


A Used connection type

B Available connection type

Disconnect

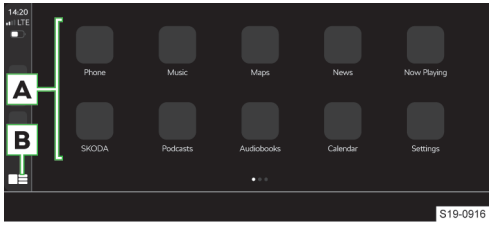
Android Auto
› In the SmartLink menu, tap on ★.
› Select the connected device.
› Select the connection type .



Overview of running applications, phone calls, incoming text messages, and more.

Turn on voice control (Google Voice)

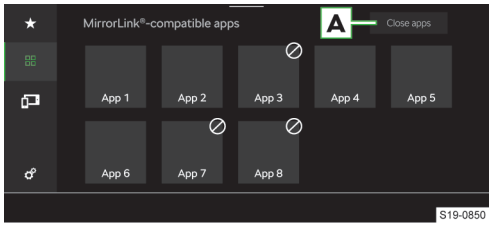
Apple CarPlay
› In the SmartLink menu, tap on ★.
› Select the connected device.
› Select the connection type .



A List of available applications

B Depending on the duration of operation:
- **Tap:** Return to the menu Apple CarPlay
- **Hold:** Turn on voice control (Siri)

MirrorLink
› In the SmartLink menu, tap on ★.
› Select the connected device.
› Select the connection type .



A Display of running applications

⊘ It is not possible to operate the application while driving

★ Display of available devices

List of applications

Display of the last running application in connected mobile devices

Settings

Connection conditions

General connection conditions

✓ The mobile device supports the type of SmartLink connection Android Auto, Apple CarPlay or MirrorLink.

✓ Mobile devices, as well as the type of SmartLink connection, are supported in the respective market.

✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

Conditions for Android Auto

✓ The device to be connected must have Android Auto connection.

A list of devices, supported regions and applications that support the Android Auto connection can be found on the Google, Inc. website.

✓ The Android Auto application needs to be installed on the mobile device.

✓ Some applications require the data connection in the mobile device to be turned on.

✓ Connect the mobile device for the first time when the vehicle is stationary.

Conditions for Apple CarPlay

✓ The device to be connected must have Apple CarPlay connection.

A list of devices, supported regions and applications that support the Apple CarPlay connection can be found on the Apple Inc website.

✓ Siri voice control is on.

✓ The data connection in the mobile device is switched on.

Conditions for MirrorLink

✓ The device to be connected must have MirrorLink connection.

A list of devices and applications that support the MirrorLink connection can be found on the websites of Car Connectivity Consorcium®.

✓ The MirrorLink application needs to be installed on the mobile device.

✓ Some applications require the data connection in the connected mobile device to be turned on.

Operation

Operation of the running MirrorLink application

Display of control surfaces at the bottom

Display of control surfaces at the top

Return to the menu MirrorLink

Restriction

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection
In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Restriction of SmartLink applications while driving
For reasons of safety, the operation of some SmartLink applications while driving is not possible or only limited.

Restriction of the navigation function
If route guidance is currently being carried out through Infotainment, this is ended when you start route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application.

If there is route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application, it is ended by starting the destination guidance using Infotainment.

SmartLink settings

Apple CarPlay - Connection via USB

› Turn on the Infotainment.

› Turn on the mobile device.

› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.

› Choose to connect via Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay - Connection via Wi-Fi from Infotainment

› Turn on Bluetooth® and Bluetooth® visibility in the Apple mobile device.

› Tap on MENU > > > *mobile devices*.

› In the displayed list, look for and select the desired device with the symbol .
› Follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen and confirm the Bluetooth® pairing.
› If another device is connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Apple CarPlay - Connect via Wi-Fi from mobile devices
To establish a connection, the following conditions must be met:

✓ The minimum iOS version is 9.
✓ No other mobile device can be connected via SmartLink.
✓ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® functionality is switched on in the Infotainment system.

› In the mobile device, turn on the CarPlay function.
› Press and hold the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

The Infotainment screen displays a connection message with the name of the Bluetooth® unit of the Infotainment.

› Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.
› If necessary, confirm the PIN.
› In the Infotainment screen, select the connection type Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay - Disconnect
› In the Apple CarPlay menu, tap on the function area “ŠKODA”.
› Tap on .

Android Auto - Connection via USB
› Turn on the Infotainment.
› Turn on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
› Choose to connect via Android Auto.

Android Auto - Connect via Wi-Fi from Infotainment
› MENU > > > *mobile devices* .
› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
› Select the Bluetooth® Freisprechprofil.
› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
› If another device is connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.
› From the list of **known devices**, select the desired device with the symbol.

Android Auto - Connect via Wi-Fi from mobile devices
To establish a connection, the following conditions must be met:

✓ The minimum Android version is 5.
✓ No other mobile device can be connected via SmartLink.
✓ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® functionality is switched on in the Infotainment system.

› Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.
› If necessary, confirm the PIN.
› In the Infotainment screen, select the connection type Android Auto.

Android Auto - Disconnect
› In the Android Auto > menu, tap “Return to SKODA”.
› Tap on .

MirrorLink - Connection via USB
› Turn on the Infotainment.
› Turn on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
› Choose to connect through MirrorLink.

MirrorLink - Disconnect
› In the MirrorLink menu, tap on ★.
› Tap on .

Change to another device / connection type
Infotainment allows you to switch between currently connected devices and the connection type.

› In the SmartLink menu, tap on ★.
› Select the desired device or connection type.

Navigation

Navigation announcements

Infotainment route guidance takes place using graphic driving recommendations and navigation announcements.

The navigation announcements are generated by the Infotainment system. Navigation announcement clarity (e.g. road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.

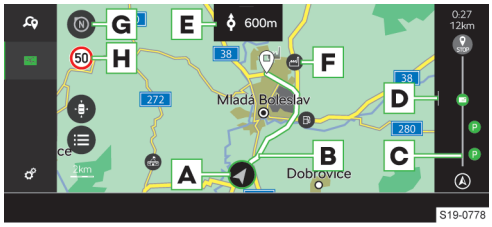
Repeat the last navigation announcement
› Tap on > .

Turn off navigation announcements
› Tap on > .

Overview

Display menu
› Tap MENU > .

Map overview
› In the **Navigation** menu, tap on .



A Vehicle position

B Route

C Route view

D **Press and drag to the left:** Show route overview

E Following driving recommendation

F POI icon

Tap: Show destination details

G **Tap:** Change map orientation

- North-facing 2D map
- 2D map facing the direction of travel
- 3D map facing the direction of travel

H Road signs for the affected route section

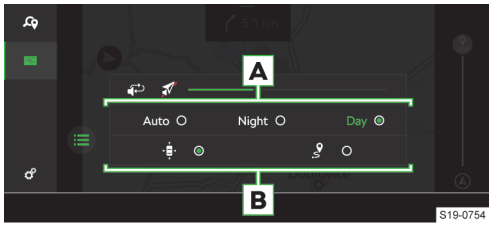
End route guidance

Centre the map on the vehicle position

Display menu for setting the map display

Select the type of displayed map

› In the **Navigation** menu, tap on > .



A Display map in accordance with the following setting

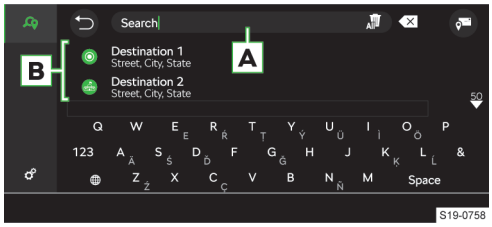
- *Auto* - Map in day / night mode depending on the vehicle lighting currently switched on
- *Day* - Map in day mode
- *Night* - Map in night mode

B When route guidance is running, one of the following map displays can be selected

- - Map centred on the vehicle position
- - Map with the entire route/choice of alternative routes

Find destination

› In the **Navigation** > menu *Find* .



A Input line

B List of destinations that have recently been searched for

Show list of searched destinations

Enter destination via the address

Select the destination you are looking for

› Enter the details for the destination search.

› Select the desired destination.

Destination details are displayed with the option of starting route guidance.

Enter destination via the address

› In the **Navigation** > menu *Find* > .

A menu for entering the destination via the address is displayed.

› Enter the required information.

Details of the searched destination are displayed with the option of starting route guidance by tapping on *Start* .

Enter the destination using GPS coordinates

› In the **Navigation** > menu *Find* > > *Enter latitude and longitude* .

A menu is displayed for entering the destination using GPS coordinates.

› Enter the desired GPS latitude and longitude information.

› *Map* .

Details of the searched destination are displayed with the option of starting route guidance by tapping on *Start* .

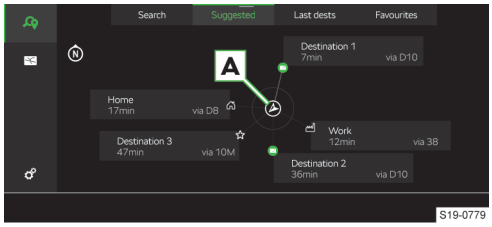
Selecting destination by tapping the map point

› Tap the desired item or the POI icon in the map.

Destination details are displayed with the option of starting route guidance.

Suggested destinations

› In the **Navigation** > menu *Tap on proposals* .



A North-facing vehicle position

Destination with the home address

Destination with the work address

The view can display up to 5 recommended destinations in the following categories:

- Destination with the home address
- Destination with the work address
- Favourites
- Last destinations
- Predictive destinations

Destination alignment depends on the direction in relation to the current vehicle position. The functional surface with the destination displays information about the estimated travel time to the destination.

If the vehicle has active online services and there is a traffic obstruction on the route to the destination, the traffic obstruction icon will be displayed.

Delete the suggested destination

› Touch the functional area for the suggested destination and swipe left.

› Tap on .

Turn on / off suggestions for predictive destinations

Predictive destinations are automatically suggested by Infotainment depending on the number of journeys and the daily travel time to the given destination.

If suggested predictive destinations is enabled, the system can offer these destinations in the proposed destinations as well as while driving.

› > *Basic function settings* > *Tap Learn usage pattern* .

Deleting information for suggesting predictive destinations

› Tap on > *Basic function settings* > *Delete usage pattern*.

List of last destinations

› In the **Navigation** > menu *Last destinations* .

Tapping the list entry with the destination displays destination details with the option to start route guidance.

The list of recent destinations can also be displayed in the Instrument cluster display.

› Choose the menu in which the navigation is displayed.

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

The menu is displayed.

List of preferred destinations

› In the **Navigation** > menu *Favourites* .

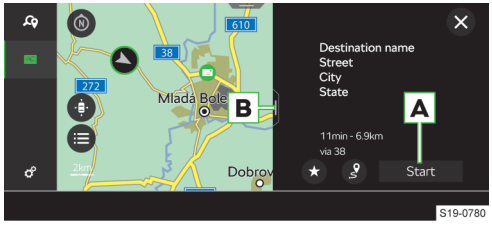
Tapping the list entry with the destination displays destination details with the option to start route guidance.

Destination details

The details window contains a map, available destination information and functional areas for selecting functions.

The destination details window is displayed in the following cases:

- After a destination has been searched for or selected in the menu.
- After a destination is tapped on in the route overview.
- After an item or POI icon has been tapped on in the map.



A Start route guidance

- ☆ - Save destination as a favourite
- ★ - Delete favourites

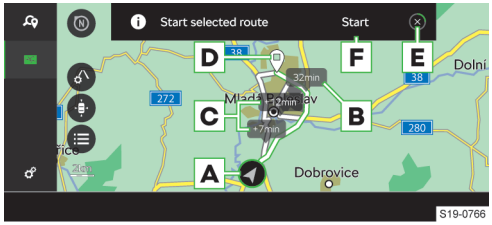
B **Press and drag to the left:** Enlarge the window with destination details

Depending on the destination context and destination type, the following functions are displayed:

- *Demo* - Set destination as a starting point for route guidance in demo mode
- *Rename* - Rename the saved destination
- *Call* - Establish a connection to the POI telephone number
- *Edit* - Option for editing the home or work address
- *Insert* - Insert destination into the route
- *Stop route guidance* - Stop route guidance

Show route

Route calculation



A Current vehicle position

B Proposed fastest route

C Alternative routes

D Destination position

E 15 s time countdown before automatic start of the route guidance

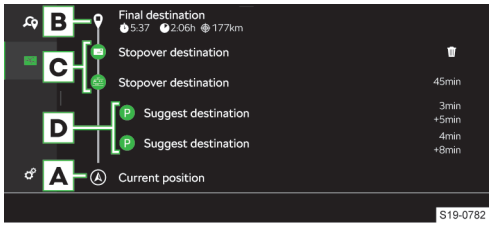
▸ **Tap:** Interrupt time countdown

F Start route guidance

ⓘ Show information on the selected route

Set parameters for route calculation

Route overview



A Information on current vehicle position

B Final route destination

Tap: the following menu items can be selected.

▸ *Show on map*

▸ *Stop route guidance*

C Route stopover

Tap: the following menu items can be selected.

▸ *Show on map*

▸ *Add stopover destination*

D Destination provided by Infotainment on the route

Tap: the following menu items can be selected.

▸ *Show on map*

▸ *Add stopover destination*

Change route destinations to each other

In the route overview, it is possible to exchange the destination and the intermediate destinations with each other and thus change their order.

› Hold the line with the desired destination until the functional surface for the destination becomes free.

› Move the destination to the desired position and release the functional surface.

The route is re-calculated.

Overview of traffic density

When ŠKODA online services are activated, traffic density information can be displayed in the form of the following colour scale in the route view ŠKODA:

Low density — — — **High density**

— Traffic density information is not available

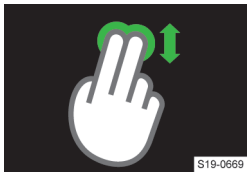
Operation



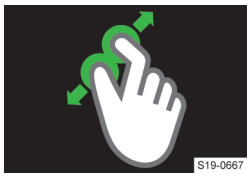
▸ Move map



▸ Enter destination by tapping the map item



▸ Switch 2D/3D map display



▸ Zoom into the map



▸ Zoom out of the map



▶ Rotate the map

Restriction

Infotainment may give incorrect driving recommendations if the road conditions or the traffic do not match the navigation data. This can lead to the route guidance being carried out using a different route or proposing a change of direction in a one-way street.

Information for updating the navigation data must be requested from a ŠKODA partner.

Settings

Avoiding traffic obstructions
If the function is switched on and the Infotainment receives information about a traffic obstruction on the route from online traffic information, the route is recalculated.

Infotainment may suggest a detour to avoid traffic obstructions, depending on the following settings:

› ☍ > *Route guidance settings* > *Tap on Avoid traffic incidents* .
› Select the desired menu item.

Switching the fuel warning on / off
When the function is switched on and the fuel supply reaches the reserve area, a warning message appears with the option of going to the nearest petrol station.

› Tap on ☍ > *Route guidance settings* > *Fuel warning*.

Switching display of country-specific speed limits on / off
When the function is switched on, the country-specific speed limits are displayed when crossing national borders.

› Tap on ☍ > *Route guidance settings* > *Country information at border crossings*.

Switching the display of road signs on motorways and expressways on / off
When the function is switched on, Infotainment displays traffic and information signs on motorways and expressways.

› ☍ > *Route guidance settings* > *Tap Signs on long-distance roads* .

Switch road sign display on/off
When this function is switched on, the Infotainment displays road signs on the route.

› Tap on ☍ > *Route guidance settings* > *Road signs* > *Show on map*.

Switching the speed limit warning on / off
› Tap on ☍ > *Route guidance settings* > *Road signs*.
› Set the note type and the value for exceeding the permissible speed.

Towing a trailer
To calculate the correct route for trailer operation, switch on trailer inclusion.

› Tap on ☍ > *Route guidance settings* > *Trailer* > *Include trailer*.

Set the maximum speed for trailer operation to correctly calculate the route time.

› Tap on ☍ > *Route guidance settings* > *Trailer* > *Maximum speed for trailer*.
› Set the maximum speed for the trailer.

Setting navigation announcements
› Tap on ☍ > *Navigation announcement settings*.
› Select and set the desired menu item.

Turn predictive destination suggestions on / off
› Tap on ☍ > *Basic function settings* > *Learn usage pattern*.

Delete information for suggesting frequently visited points of interest
› Tap on ☍ > *Basic function settings* > *Delete usage pattern*.
› Confirm the deletion.

Show preferred POI categories
Favourite POI categories are displayed on the map and provided in the destination search.

› Tap on ☍ > *Basic function settings* > *Define preferred POI categories*.
› Set favourite categories.

Switching demo mode on / off
In demo mode, the route guidance from the starting point of the demo mode to the selected destination is simulated.

When the function is switched on, Infotainment issues a query before the start of route guidance as to whether the route guidance should be carried out in the normal way or in demo mode.

› ☍ > *Basic functions settings* > *Demo mode* .

Defining the starting point of the demo mode
› Turn on the demo mode.
› Tap on ☍ > *Basic function settings* > *Define demo mode starting point*.
› Select the desired destination to be used as the starting point for the demo mode.

Or:

› Turn on the demo mode.
› Select or locate the desired destination to be the starting point of demo mode.

Destination details are displayed.

› Display the window with destination details in full screen.

The window is enlarged by pressing the ❙ button in the window bar swiping left.

› Tap on *Demo*.

Setting home address

› Tap on ⚲ › *Favourites* › *Home*.

› Select and enter the destination via the address and consult the current vehicle position if necessary.

The defined destination for the home address is displayed in the overview of suggested destinations.

› Tap on ⚲ › *Suggestions* › ⌂.

Set the work address

› Tap on ⚲ › *Favourites* › *Work*.

› Select and enter the destination via the address and consult the current vehicle position if necessary.

The defined destination for the work address is displayed in the overview of suggested destinations.

› Tap on ⚲ › *Suggestions* › 🏢.

Updating the navigation database

Information for updating the navigation database must be requested from a **ŠKODA** partner.

Automatic update

Infotainment automatically carries out an update if the following conditions are met:

✓ The “Infotainment Online” online services are activated.

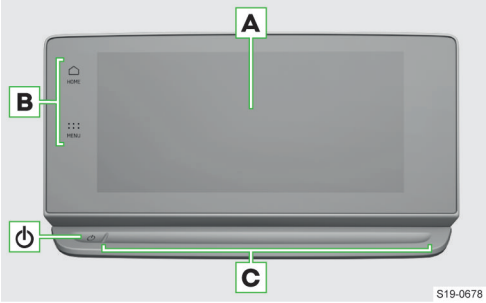
✓ An update of the navigation database for the current vehicle position or route destination is available.

Determining the navigation database version

› Tap **MENU** › ⚙ › *System information*.

Infotainment Columbus

Infotainment overview



A Touchscreen

B Sensor fields

- ▶ **HOME** - Preferred menus
- ▶ **MENU** - All menus

C Touch slider for Infotainment operation

⏻ Depending on the status:

- ▶ **Infotainment switched off**
  - ▶ **Tap:** Turn on Infotainment
- ▶ **Infotainment switched on**
  - ▶ **Tap:** Switch sound off/on
  - ▶ **Hold:** Switch off Infotainment

System

Limitation

For safety reasons, operation of some Infotainment functions while driving is not possible or is restricted.

The Infotainment system indicates this by means of a message in the screen.

Basic settings

Setting basic functions

The following Infotainment functions are set in the **MENU** › ⚙ menu:

- ▶ Time and date
- ▶ Language
- ▶ Units
- ▶ Restore factory settings

Sound settings

The Infotainment sound is set in the menu **MENU** › 🔊.

The following menu items can be set:

- ▶ Setting the equalizer
- ▶ Adjusting the volume ratio

▶ Volume adjustment of individual Infotainment functions

The volume can be adjusted on e.g. one of the following menu items:

▶ Volume adjustment of voice commands
▶ Setting the maximum volume when Infotainment is turned on
▶ Speed-dependent volume setting
▶ Setting the Infotainment to mute with the parking aid switched on

Depending on the equipment, the following advanced sound settings can be set

▶ Setting space optimisation
▶ Setting the audio profiles according to genre
▶ Adjusting the subwoofer volume

Configuration wizard
The configuration wizard helps to set certain Infotainment functions.

The configuration wizard is automatically displayed if the ignition is switched on and if there are at least two menu items that have not been set after switching on the Infotainment.

› To **switch off the automatic display**, when the configuration wizard is displayed tap *Don't show again* .
› For **manual display**, tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Configuration wizard* .

Set up menu HOME
› To **display another page** of the HOME menu, press the screen and drag to the left or right.

Add a preferred menu
› To **display the editing mode** hold a finger on the screen.
› Tap a free space with functional areas.
› Select a menu with the desired dimension of the functional surface.

The Infotainment only offers font sizes that correspond in dimension to the fields with functional areas that are currently free.

› To **end edit mode**, tap ×.

Remove the preferred menu
› To **display edit mode**, press and hold the screen with one finger.
› Tap 🗑 on the desired menu.
› To **end edit mode**, tap ×.

Add/remove one side of the HOME menu
› To **display edit mode**, press and hold the screen with one finger.
› Tap on ✎.
› To **add another page**, tap +.

The maximum number of pages is 4.

› Tap 🗑 to **remove a page**.

The minimum number of pages is 2.

› Tap ⮌ to **return to the edit mode**.

Set up menu MENU
The position of the functional surfaces in the MENU menu can be customized as follows:

› Press and hold the desired functional surface until it is free.
› Move the functional surface to a different position.

Factory settings
Resetting the Infotainment to factory defaults restores all factory defaults.

› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› Tap on **MENU** > ⚙.
› *Reset to factory settings* select and confirm the reset.

ⓘ To check the factory reset was successful, we recommend that you check all user accounts have been deleted.

Troubleshooting

Infotainment not responding
If the infotainment does not respond, restart it as follows:

› Hold ⏻ for longer than 10 s.
› Wait for the restart to complete.

System update

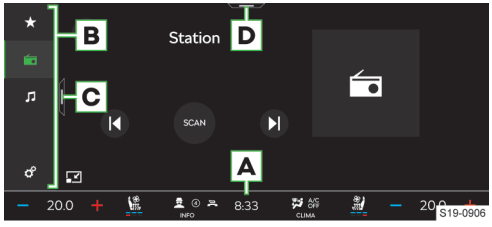
We recommend having the system update carried out by a specialist company.

The system update ensures optimal function of the Infotainment system, e.g. compatibility with new phones.

Determine system version
› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *System information*.

Screen

Overview



A Status bar
B Bar with the functional surfaces of the displayed menu

C Display/close the submenu window

D Display of the Infotainment control centre

Operation

NOTICE

Danger of screen damage!

▸ The Infotainment screen is operated **by touching it lightly with your finger**.

In principle, operation by touch is identical to the operation of a mobile phone.

The following operating modes are specific to the Infotainment system.

Tap



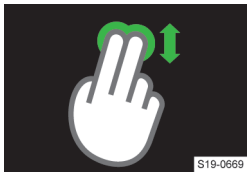
▸ Select function or menu item

Hold call



▸ Zoom into the map

Dragging up or down with two fingers



▸ Quickly look through the lists

▸ Switch 2D/3D map display

Pulling apart with two fingers



▸ Zoom into the map

Pulling together with two fingers



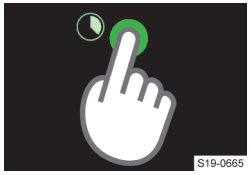
▸ Zoom out of the map

Turn two fingers



▸ Rotate the map

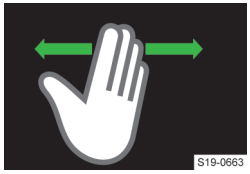
Press and hold



▸ Release certain Infotainment menus with the option to move them to another location on the screen

Contactless gesture control

Some Infotainment menus can be controlled by hand gestures.



› Gesture control is achieved by slowly moving the hand back and forth approximately 8 cm above the lower edge of the screen.

Depending on the setting, a recognized gesture can be confirmed acoustically and animated.

Displaying operation help

› Tap on MENU > ▪ > ✎.

Settings

The following basic screen functions are set in the menu MENU > ⚙ > *Screen*:

▸ Image of the screen background

▸ Brightness level of the screen

▸ Switch off the screen

▸ Display the time

▸ Confirmation sounds and animations

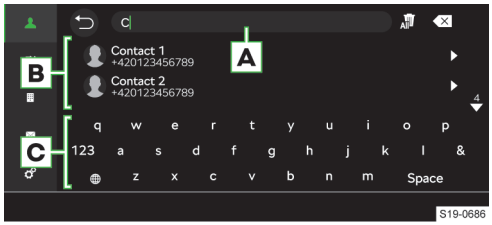
Keypad

Keypad overview

The arrangement of the keyboard characters depends on the set infotainment language.

Depending on the context, the following types are used in infotainment:

- Alphanumeric
- Numeric
- Keyboard for input
- Keyboard for search



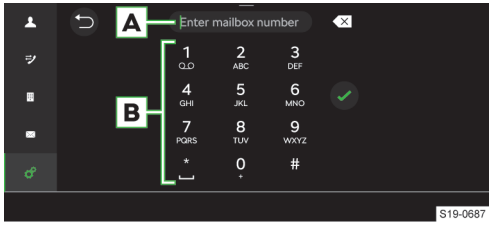
Keypad example

A Input line
- Touch the input line to display function areas for moving the cursor
- Delete characters before the cursor
  - **Tap:** delete the last entered character
  - **Hold:** delete all entered characters in sequence
- Delete all entered characters

B Entries searched for
- Show list of searched entries

C Keypad functional surfaces
- Change sentence case
- abc Switch to the language keypad
- 123 / 12# Switch to the numeric/character keyboard
- 1/2 / 2/2 Switch to other character variants
- Show additional keypad languages
- Display the entered password
- OK / ✓ Confirm the characters that have been entered

Numeric keypad



Keypad example

A Input line
- Touch the input line to display function areas for moving the cursor
- Delete characters before the cursor
  - **Tap:** delete the last character
  - **Hold:** delete all characters

B Keypad functional surfaces

✓ Confirm the characters that have been entered

If context-sensitive, alphanumeric characters can be entered by holding a functional surface with a digit.

Operation

The Infotainment keypad is used to enter characters, letters and numbers.

The keypad will be **automatically displayed** when Infotainment prompts for characters.

Search
When entering characters, corresponding entries are searched for.

The entry to be searched for can be entered including diacritics.

The keyboard will only provide characters that match the stored entries.

› To **display searched entries** tap ▼.

The number of searched entries is displayed above the symbol ▼.

Show additional keypad languages
To use the additional keypad languages, the desired languages must be set first.

› To **use**, repeatedly tap on the keyboard or on the flag icon until the desired language keyboard is displayed.

Further character variants
› Press and hold the character with the other character variant.
› Select the desired symbol.

Setting up additional keyboard languages

› For **Settings** MENU > ⚙ >, tap *Additional keypad languages*.
› Select the desired language.

Voice control

Functionality

Voice control principle
Voice control works according to the principle of dialogue between the user and the Infotainment system.

The user says a voice command. The Infotainment system responds or executes the voice command.

It is possible to interrupt a dialogue at any time and issue a new statement without having to wait for a complete response.

Advanced voice control
The advanced voice control of the vehicle enables an online search and operation of the vehicle functions.

The advanced voice control understands fluently spoken, complete sentences. You do not need to use set commands or phrases.

The advanced voice control can, for example, search for special destinations or dictate SMS messages if the connected telephone makes this possible.

This function allows you to combine the search in the online and offline data of the Infotainment. The transition between online and offline search is seamless and imperceptible to the user.

Operating conditions

✓ Ignition on
✓ Infotainment switched on

Operating conditions for advanced voice control
To use the advanced voice control, the following conditions must also be met:

✓ The vehicle supports the function.
✓ The vehicle has Infotainment and functions that can be controlled by the advanced voice control.
✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
✓ The vehicle is within range of a contractual mobile network, through which the connection to ŠKODA Connect Services is ensured.
✓ The level of protection of personal data is set to *Share my position* .

Requirement for recognition of the activation command
✓ Activated menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Voice control* > *Active*

Operation

Switch on voice control
› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Or:

› Say the activation command **"OK Laura"**.

After switching on, the icon is displayed.

Enter voice command
› Speak a voice command with voice control switched on.

During recognition of the voice command, the icon is displayed.

The Infotainment system then executes the voice command or plays the message. During the message, the icon is displayed.

After the execution of the voice command, voice control is switched off.

Correcting a voice command
› During voice command input, press the button on the multifunction steering wheel and say a new voice command.

Stopping voice control
Stopping leaves more time for voice command input, e.g. for searching for a phone contact.

› Move your finger up or down over the Infotainment screen.

Or:

› Say the voice command **"pause"**.

Resuming stopped voice control
› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Or:

› Tap on in the Infotainment screen.

Stopping the played back message
› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Ending voice control
› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel twice.

Or:

› Say the voice command **"cancel"** during voice command input.

Restriction

For some Infotainment languages, there is no voice control available. The Infotainment system will indicate this.

The messages are generated by Infotainment. Flawless clarity (e.g. road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.

You cannot use voice control while a phone call is in progress.

Settings

The following voice control functions are set in the menu MENU > ⚙ > *Voice control:*

- Confirmation tones
- Enable/disable use of the activation word.

Self help

Starting acoustic help

› If the Infotainment system is expecting a voice command, say **"*Help*"**.

The **"*Help*"** voice command can be issued repeatedly for further tips on voice control.

Displaying the help

› Tap on MENU > ▮ > 🔊.

Or:

› If Infotainment is expecting a voice command, say **"*Overview*"**.

Control centre

Overview

Display of the control centre



› Press the bar at the top of the screen and drag down.

Closing the control centre

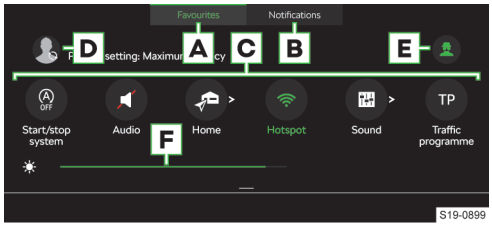
› Press the bar at the bottom of the screen and drag up.

Or:

› Wait 5 seconds.

Control Centre

The Infotainment control centre can be used for quick access to the following functions:



A Display and administration of functional surfaces of preferred features.

B Display list of informational messages.

C Preferred functions

D Display user account management.

E Setting the personal data protection level.

F Setting the instrument and key illumination.

Set functional areas of preferred features

› To **display** the edit mode, tap on the empty functional surface with the + icon or hold down the occupied functional surface.

› To **add** the preferred feature, hold down the functional surface of the desired function and move it from the lower part of the screen to the functional surface in the upper part of the screen.

› To **close** edit mode, tap on ⮌.

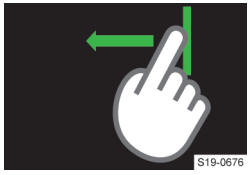
Radio

Overview

Display menu

› Tap MENU > ♫ > 📻.

Display the player



› Tap on MENU > ♫.

› Press the bar button on the right edge of the screen and drag to the left.

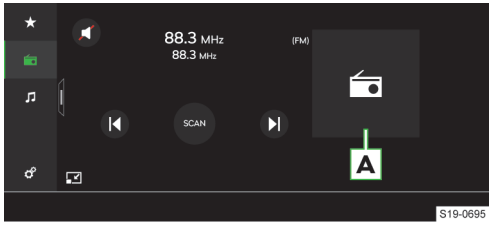
Close player

› Tap on ⮹.

Or:

› Press the bar button on the left edge of the player and drag to the right.

Analogue and digital radio player



A Radio station logo

⏮ / ⏭ Switch to the previous/next station
The type of switching depends on how the arrow buttons are set up ⚙ › *Radio* › *Arrow buttons:*.

SCAN Switching the SCAN function on / off

Activate/deactivate muting

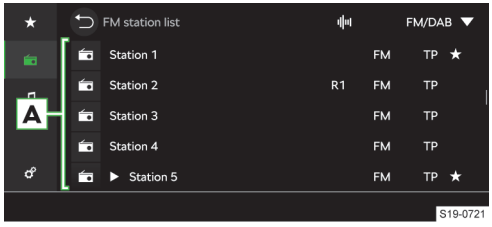
Close player

List of available analogue and digital radio stations

› To **display**, tap on **MENU** › ♫ › 📻.

› Tap on ▼.

› Select FM/DAB or AM.



A List of available stations

Show available frequency ranges
After selecting a frequency range, the desired station must still be selected

▼ Select frequency range
After selecting a frequency range, the last station to be played in the respective frequency range is set.

▶ Station currently being played

★ Station stored on the presets

TP A traffic radio station is set

The DAB transmitter emits images which are displayed in the information to the station

Manual update of the station list

ⓘ In the station list, information about the programme type and the channel identification of the regional channel can be displayed.

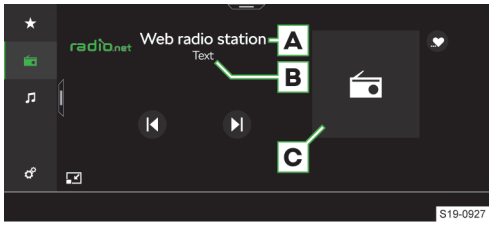
Web radio player

› To **select a web radio station**, in the **Radio** menu 📻 › ▼ › tap *Web radio* .

› Select a web radio station from the displayed lists.

Or:

› Tap on 🔍 to search for a web radio station.



A Station name

B Information about the broadcast content

C Station logos

⏮ / ⏭ Switch to the previous/next station
The type of switching depends on how the arrow buttons are set up ⚙ › *Radio* › *Arrow buttons:*.

Display related web radio stations and podcasts

Close player

ⓘ When the 🚫 icon is displayed, no Internet connection is available.

Podcast player

› To **select a podcast**, in the **Radio** menu tap › ♫ › 📻 › ▼ › *Web radio* .

› Select a podcast from the displayed lists.

Or:

› Tap on 🔍 to search for podcasts.

ⓘ The podcasts are shown in the displayed lists with the icon 🎙.



A Podcast name

B Information about the broadcast content

C Podcast logo

▷ **Tap:** start playback

Tap: pause

⏮ / ⏭ Switch to the previous/next station
The type of switching depends on how the arrow buttons are set up ⚙ › *Radio* › *Arrow buttons:*.

⏪15 **Tap:** Go back 15 secs

15 **Tap:** Go forward 15 secs

Display related web radio stations and podcasts

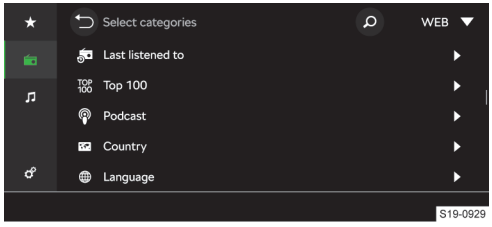
View episodes of the podcast being played

Close player

When the icon is displayed, no Internet connection is available.

List of web radio stations and podcasts

› To **display the list**, in the **Radio** menu > ▼ > tap *Web radio* .



Search for web radio stations and podcasts

Recently played web radio stations and podcasts

100 most popular web radio stations depending on the Infotainment language that has been set

Go to podcasts and select

Search for and select web radio stations and podcasts based on the selected country

Search for and select web radio stations and podcasts based on the selected language

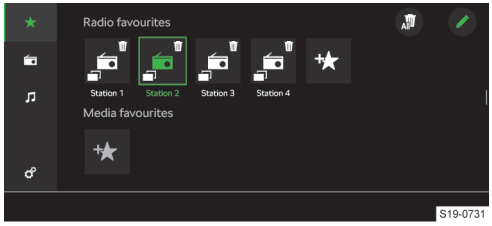
Search for and select web radio stations and podcasts based on the selected genre

The podcasts are shown in the displayed lists with the icon .

Preset buttons for favourite stations and podcasts

The preset buttons can be used to store stations from all available frequency ranges as well as web radio stations and podcasts.

› Tap on **MENU** > ♫ > ★.



Store current station or podcast

Switch edit mode on/off

▶ - Delete all preset buttons for preferred stations and media

▶ - Delete the desired preset button

▶ - Change logo

The position of the stored preset buttons can be changed.

› Tap on .

› Press and hold the desired preset button until it is free.

› Move the preset button to a different position.

Operation

SCAN function

The function plays receivable stations of the selected frequency range in succession for a few seconds each.

› Display the radio player.

› To **Start automatic play**, tap SCAN.

› To **End automatic play**, tap SCAN.

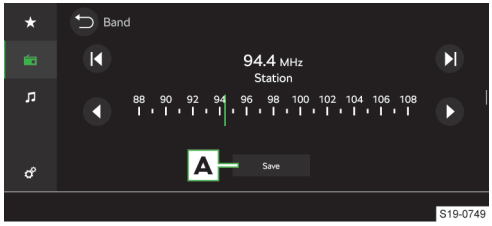
Find stations manually

Manual search is available for AM and FM stations.

› Display list of available sensors.

› Tap on .

For FM stations, the functional area is available when the **MENU** > ♫ > > *radio* > *Station display:* > *FM* menu item is set.



/ Switch to the previous/next available station

/ Look for each other

A Store the currently selected station on a station key for the preferred station.

Hold down the scroll mark on the frequency range scale and move it to the desired value.

Limitation

▶ Infotainment supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.

▶ Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can restrict radio reception.

▶ In the rear side windows, there are antennas for receiving the radio signal.

Covering the panes with foils or metal-coated labels may affect the reception of the radio signal.

▶ The ŠKODA AUTO company assumes no responsibility for the availability, correct functioning and broadcast information of the RDS service.

Settings

Store the current station to a preset button for preferred stations

› To **store**, tap on ★ › ★ in the **Radio** menu.

Store stations to a preset button for favourite stations from the list of available stations

› To **display the station list**, tap on in the **Radio** menu.

› Hold the line with the name of the desired station.

› Tap on ★ or the preset button for favourite stations that you want to replace.

Delete the stored preset button for the favourite station

› To **erase**, tap on ★ › ✎ in the **Radio** main menu.

▶ To delete **one** preset button, tap on 🗑.

▶ To delete **all** preset buttons, tap on and confirm the deletion.

Functional areas ⏮/⏭ for analogue and digital radios

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

The variant for **changing stations in the radio player** is set as follows using the functional areas ⏮/⏭:

› In the menu **Radio** ⚙ › *Radio* › *Changing the station:* .

› Select the variant for switching between the stations stored on the station buttons or the stations stored in the list of available stations.

Functional areas ⏮ ⏭ for web radio stations and podcasts

Applies to web radio stations and podcasts.

The variant for **changing stations** using functional areas ⏮ / ⏭ in the **Radio** menu, is set as follows:

› In the menu **Radio** ⚙ › *Changing the station:* .

› Select the variant for switching between the stations stored on the station keys or the last web stations and podcasts listened to.

Switch traffic reception (TP) for stations on/off

Applies to FM and DAB frequency range.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙.

› *Radio* › *Traffic program (TP)* .

Switch RDS on/off

Applies to the FM frequency range.

The menu item is only available for some countries.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙.

› *Radio* › *Radio Radio Data System (RDS)* .

If the **RDS function is disabled**, the following menu items in **FM station** settings are not available:

▶ Traffic program (TP)

▶ Radio text

▶ RDS Regional

▶ Automatic frequency change (AF)

▶ Regional station logo.

Switch automatic frequency control (AF) on/off

Applies to the FM frequency range.

When the function is switched on and the signal of the FM station currently being listened to is weak, Infotainment automatically sets the same station to a different frequency with a better signal.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙.

› *Radio* › *Automatic frequency change (AF)* .

Display the set station in the instrument cluster display

› Select the menu in which the travel time and the travelled distance are displayed.

› Hold the button on the multifunction steering wheel for at least 5 seconds.

When the button is released, a menu is displayed.

› In the menu, select menu item *Info when changing tracks* .

Automatic change of frequency to a regionally linked FM station

Applies to the FM frequency range.

Infotainment provides the option of automatically switching to a regionally linked FM station in case of signal loss of the FM station being listened to.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙.

› *Radio* › *RDS Regional:* .

› Select one of the following menu items:

▶ *Fix* - When the signal is lost, another station must be set manually.

▶ *Automatic* - automatic selection of the station with the best signal reception.

If reception is lost in the given region, Infotainment will automatically set another available region.

Turn on/off radio text reception

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on, you can see more information about the content broadcast from the station to which you are listening.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙.

› *Radio* › *Radio text* .

Add the station logo

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

Infotainment offers the option of adding logos, which are stored in the Infotainment memory, to the stations.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Radio* > *Station logos* and select the desired frequency range.

Or:

› In the list of preferred stations, tap on > at the desired preset button.

› Select the desired logo.

To turn off the logo display, tap on in the list of available logos.

Switch adding automatic station logos on/off
Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on, a station logo from the Infotainment memory is added when the station is stored on a preset.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap .

› *Radio* > *Tap Automatic selection of station logos* .

Regional FM station logo
Applies to the FM frequency range.

Infotainment provides the option of using country-specific FM station logos.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap .

› *Radio* > *Region for station logo:* .

Switching additional announcements of the DAB transmitter on / off
Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on, other announcements are received as traffic announcements. These include e.g. weather news, sports reports, financial news etc.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap .

› *Radio* > *Tap Additional DAB announcements* .

Displaying FM / DAB stations or FM stations in the list of available stations
Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

Depending on the following setting, the stations of the selected frequency range are displayed in the list of available stations.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap .

› *Radio* > *Station display:* .

› Select one of the following menu items:

- *FM/DAB* - the list shows available FM and DAB stations.
- *FM* - the list shows available FM stations.

Switch automatic switching to a similar DAB transmitter on / off
Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and there is signal loss from the DAB station being listened to, Infotainment automatically sets another DAB station with similar content.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap .

› *Radio* > *Tap Switch to a similar station if weak reception* .

Sound quality of web radio stations and podcasts
Applies to web radio stations and podcasts.

› To adjust the sound quality, tap on > *Audio quality:* in the **Radio** main menu.

› Choose low or high quality.

The quality you set affects the amount of data used in the data connection.

Quality also depends on the speed and availability of the data connection.

If playback failure occur, reduce the sound quality.

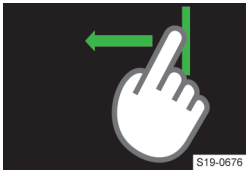
Media

What you should be mindful of

- Do not save any important data or that which has not been backed up on the connected audio sources. ŠKODA assumes no responsibility for lost or damaged files or connected audio sources.
- When changing or connecting an audio source, this may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before changing or connecting an audio source.
- When connecting an audio source, the source information messages can be displayed. These messages must be observed and, if necessary, confirmed.
- The national copyright laws that apply in your country must be observed.

Overview

Display the player



› Tap on MENU > ♫.

› Press the bar button on the right edge of the screen and drag to the left.

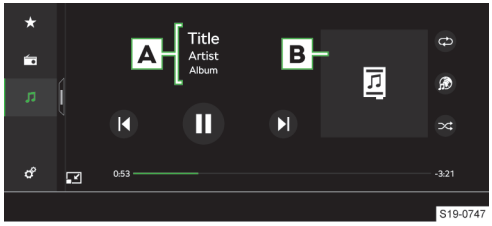
Close player

› Tap on .

Or:

› Press the bar button on the left edge of the player and drag to the right.

Media player

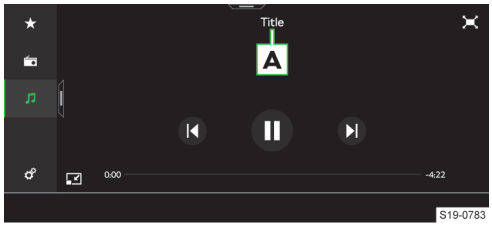


A Available information about the track, artist and album being played

B Album image

Close player

Video player

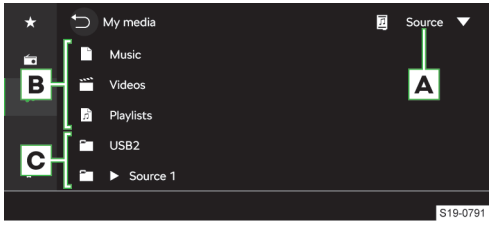


A Name of the track being played

Zoom out of/in to picture display

Close player

Media list



A Select source

B Multimedia database, divided into music, videos and playlists

C List of connected mobile devices

Show available sources

Preferred media

The currently played media can be stored on the preset buttons for preferred media.

Depending on the available information, the track, the album, the artist name and the allocated genre can be stored.

› To **display** tap on ★ in the **Media** menu.

Player controls

Operation - Basics

▷ **Tap:** start playback

▯▯ **Tap:** pause

◁◁ **Within 3 seconds of starting playback, tap:** play the previous song

◁◁ **After 3 seconds from the start of playback, tap:** to play the current title from the beginning

◁◁ **Hold:** fast rewind within the title

▷▷ **Tap:** play the next song

▷▷ **Hold:** fast forward within the title

Movement within the title is also possible by dragging the finger over the timeline.

Advanced operation

Turn on / off repeat playback of the current track

Turn on / off repeat playback of the current album / folder

Turn on / off random playback of the current album / folder

Save the played track in the "*My playlist*" playlist

"My playlist" management

› To **store the currently playing track to the playlist**, tap on in the media player.

› To **display the playlist**, tap on ♫.

› Tap on until the media list for the current source is displayed.

› Tap on › .

› To **manage the playlist** tap in the displayed playlist.

The following activities can be carried out in playlist management:

▸ Control playback.

▸ Change the order of a title in the list by holding and moving + to the desired position.

▸ Delete track by tapping on .

Restriction

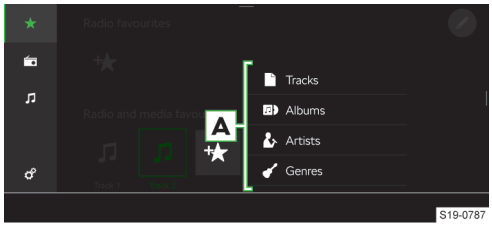
The availability of some media operation functions is dependent on the connected source and the software being used, e.g. Bluetooth®.

Settings

Manage favourites

› To **save** the preferred medium, tap on ★ › ★ **Media** in the menu.

› Select a menu item from the following menu A.



› To **delete a preferred menu item**, tap on ★ › ✎ › 🗑 in the **Media** menu and confirm the deletion.
› To **delete all preferred menu items**, tap on ★ › ✎ › 🗑 in the **Media** menu and confirm the deletion.

Traffic

› To **turn on/off** traffic monitoring during playback of media files, go to the **Media** in the main menu ⚙ › and tap on *Traffic program (TP)* .

Supported sources and files

Supported sources

Source	Interface	Type	Specification	File system
USB	USB 1.x; 2.x 3.x or higher with USB 2.x support	MSC	USB stick	VFAT FAT16 FAT32 exFAT NTFS
			HDD (without special software)	
			USB devices that use the USB mass storage support protocol	
		MTP	Devices running the Android or Windows Phone operating system that support the Media Transfer Protocol	
		Apple	Devices with the iOS operating system and the iAP2 protocol	HFS+
Bluetooth® player	Bluetooth®	-	Bluetooth® protocols A2DP and AVRCP (1.0 - 1.6)	-

Compatibility of mobile devices

It is possible to check the ŠKODAweb pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code:

www ***http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility***

All information given is incidental and serves as information.

The ŠKODA AUTO company cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to a software update of the Infotainment and the mobile devices.

Supported audio files

Compression format	Codec type	File extension	Max. bit rate [kbps]	Max. sampling rate [kHz]	Multi channels
MPEG	MPEG 1 Layer 2	mp2	32 - 384	32, 44, 48	Mono, stereo, Joint stereo
	MPEG 2 Layer 2		8 - 160	16, 22, 24	
	MPEG 1 Layer 3	mp3	32 - 320	32, 44, 48	Mono, dual mono, Stereo, Joint Stereo
	MPEG 2 Layer 3		8 - 160	16, 22, 24	
	MPEG 2.5 Layer 3			8, 11, 12	
WMA	Windows Media Audio 7	wma	6 - 192	8, 16, 22, 32, 44, 48, 96	Mono, stereo, Joint stereo
	Windows Media Audio 8		8 - 384	8, 11, 16, 22, 32, 44, 48, 96	
	Windows Media Audio 9 and 9.1		8 - 768		
	Windows Media Audio 9.2		8 - 320		
	Windows Media Audio 10		32 - 768	32, 44, 48, 96	
ADTS	AAC LC	aac	16 - 2048	22, 24, 32, 44, 48	Stereo
	AAC HE			16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48	
	AAC HEv2				
MP4	M4A LC	m4a	16 - 400	22, 24, 32, 44, 48	Stereo
	M4A HE			16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48	
	M4A HEv2		16 - 64		
OGG	OGG-Vorbis	ogg	8 - 576	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48, 96	Mono, Stereo
FLAC	FLAC	flac	-	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48, 64, 88, 96, 192	Mono, stereo, Joint stereo
RIFF	WAV	wav	64 - 3072	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48, 96	Mono, Stereo
Monkey's	Monkey's	ape	8 - 192		
SBC	Bluetooth A2DP	-	8 - 345	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48	Mono, stereo, Joint stereo
OPUS	OPUS	opus	6 - 2000	8 - 48	Mono, stereo, Multichannel

Files that are protected by **DRM**- and **iTunes®** methods are not supported by Infotainment.

Supported video files

Codec type	File extension	Max. recordings per second bit rate [Mbit/s]
MPEG 1	mpg mpeg m1v mPV	1.5
MPEG 2	mpg mpeg ps m2v	15

Codec type	File extension	Max. recordings per second bit rate [Mbit/s]
MPEG 4 (H.264)	m4p mp4 m4v mp4v mov	50
MPJEG		
MPEG 4 (ISO)		
Xvid	Xvid	20
WMV9	wmv asf	50

Supported playlists

Codec type	File extension
M3U	m3u
M3U8	m3u8
PLS	pls
WPL	wpl
ASX	asx

Mobile device management

Cybernetic security

Your vehicle contains components that are used to exchange information and data between the vehicle and the connected mobile devices or the Internet.

These components have security mechanisms that minimise the risk of unauthorised access to the vehicle systems.

Regular software updates help reduce the risk of unauthorised access to vehicle systems and vehicle functions. The following guidelines must therefore be observed:

› Use only media carriers, Bluetooth® devices, and mobile devices that contain no harmful data or malware.

› Regularly update the software provided by ŠKODA AUTO.

We recommend having the system software and components updated by a specialist company.

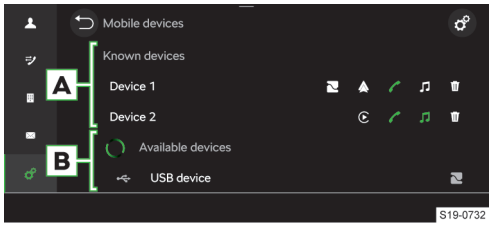
⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
Malware in the vehicle can influence and deactivate certain vehicle functions, or take over the controls of these where applicable.
▶ If the vehicle reacts in an unusual way, immediately reduce speed or stop the vehicle.
▶ Seek the help of a specialist garage.

⚠ **WARNING**
Malware in the vehicle may gain unauthorised access to the information and data of the vehicle, and on occasion, to connected mobile devices.

Overview

Using mobile device management, devices can be connected, disconnected, and interchanged.

Display mobile device management
› Tap on **MENU** > ⚙ > *mobile devices*.



A Connected / Previously connected devices
B Available devices
The device enables a connection via the Bluetooth®"hands-free profile"
The device enables a connection via the Bluetooth® audio profile
Remove the device from the list **previously connected devices**
The device enables a SmartLink connection to be made via Android Auto
The device enables a SmartLink connection to be made via Apple CarPlay
The device enables a SmartLink connection to be made via MirrorLink

If the connection icon is green, the connection is active.

Limitations of mobile devices and applications

Availability of features
The availability of certain features depends on the type of mobile device, as well as that of the applications installed.

Compatibility of mobile devices
It is possible to check the ŠKODAweb pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code:

http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All information given is incidental and serves as information.

The ŠKODA AUTO company cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to a software update of the Infotainment and the mobile devices.

Bluetooth® compatibility of mobile devices
Due to the large number of mobile devices, it is not possible to guarantee total Bluetooth® compatibility with Infotainment. Bluetooth® compatibility depends on the Bluetooth® version as well as the implementation of Bluetooth® protocols by the manufacturer of the mobile device.

Applications in mobile devices
Mobile devices can be used to install applications that allow you to view additional information on the Infotainment screen, or to operate the Infotainment system.

Due to the variety of applications, as well as their ongoing development, the available applications may not function on all mobile devices. ŠKODA AUTO assumes no liability for their proper functioning.

The scope of available applications and their functionality is dependent on the type of Infotainment, as well as the vehicle and country.

Information about ŠKODAapplications
Detailed information about ŠKODA applications can be found on the website after reading the following QR code or link:

http://go.skoda.eu/mobile-apps

Connection set-up

Connect a mobile device to Infotainment
› Find available Bluetooth® devices in the mobile device.
› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

The unit name can be determined by tapping **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices* > ⚙ > *device name:*.

› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

Connect Infotainment to a non-paired mobile device
› **MENU** > ⚙ > *Mobile devices* .
› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
› Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.
› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Connect Infotainment to a previously connected mobile device
› **MENU** > ⚙ > *Mobile devices* .
› Select the desired device from the list of **known devices**.
› Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.
› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

SmartLink connection
Infotainment provides the ability to connect SmartLink to compatible mobile devices using the following connection types:

- Android Auto
- Apple CarPlay
- MirrorLink

Mobile devices can be connected to the Infotainment via USB cable or Wi-Fi, as long as the mobile device supports it.

› Connect the mobile device to the Infotainment via a USB cable or browse and connect to a wireless network.
› Tap the icon of the supported connection.

Telephone

Overview

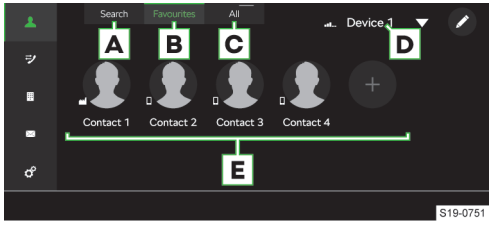
Display menu
› Tap **MENU** > .

If the menu **phone** is not displayed, check whether the mobile device is connected.

Manage contacts

› Tap on MENU > > .

› If two phones are connected, tap ▼ and select the desired phone.



A Contact search

B Display favourite contacts

C Display the list of all contacts

D Name of the main telephone

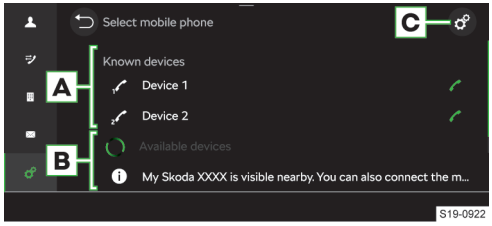
E Preset buttons for preferred contacts

If no phone contacts are displayed, check the request to confirm the import of contacts in the connected mobile device.

Manage telephones

› In the **Phone** menu, tap on .

› Tap on *Select mobile phone*.



A Main telephone, additional telephone and known devices

B List of available telephones

C Setting for the Infotainment Bluetooth® function

The telephone enables connection via the Bluetooth® “hands-free profile”

Delete telephone from the list of known devices

To display the recycle bin icon and the available SmartLink connections, click the icon press and drag to the left.

If the connection icon is green, the connection is active.

Conditions for connecting a telephone with Infotainment

✓ The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment and the telephone needs to be switched on.

The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item MENU > > *Mobile devices* > > *Bluetooth*.

✓ Visibility of the Infotainment is switched on.

The visibility of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item MENU > > *Mobile devices* > > *Visibility*.

✓ The telephone is within signal range of the Infotainment's Bluetooth® unit.

✓ The telephone is compatible with Infotainment.

Telephone operation

Enter telephone number

› Tap on MENU > > .

› Enter the telephone number using the numeric keypad that is displayed.

› To **connect**, tap on .

The displayed numeric keypad can also be used for searching for contacts.
If, for example, the digits 32 are entered, contacts with the letter sequence DA, FA, EB etc. are displayed next to the numeric keypad.

Establish a connection to the voice mailbox number

› Tap on MENU > > .

› Tap on .

If no voice mailbox number is entered, a menu for entering this number will be displayed.

Telephone conversation

Depending on the context of the telephone conversation, the following functions can be selected:

End connection / reject incoming call / end call

Accept incoming call

Return to the call on hold

/ Switch the ringer off / on

Hold a call

/ Switch the microphone off / on

Show details of the caller

Reject an incoming call using an SMS message

Answer a call from the second telephone during a call on the first telephone
The ongoing call on the first telephone is terminated by accepting the call.

› To **switch the call tone from the speakers to the phone**, tap on .

› To **switch the call tone from the telephone to the speakers**, tap .

Conference call
A conference call is a joint telephone conversation with a minimum of three and a maximum of six participants.

› Make the next call during an ongoing conversation/ conference.

Or:

› Accept a new incoming call by tapping .

› To **start** a conference call, tap .

During an ongoing conference call, the following functions can be selected depending on the context:

- Hold the conference call and leave temporarily (the conference will continue in the background)
- Return to the held conference call
- Switch the microphone off / on
- End conference call
- Show details of the conference call

In the details of the conference call, depending on the connected telephone, the following functions can be selected:

- Show details of the conference call participants
- End conversation with the conference call participant
- Conversation with a participant outside of the conference call

Send a text message

› In the **Phone** menu, tap on > .

Depending on the connected telephone, it may still be necessary to select the *SMS* menu item.

› Tap on .

› Write a text message and confirm; a view of the message is displayed.

The message can be edited when the text area within the view is tapped.

› Search for or select the recipient of the message.

Multiple recipients can be added.

› Tap *Send*.

Display received text messages

› In the **Phone** menu, tap on > .

Depending on the connected telephone, it may still be necessary to select the *SMS* menu item.

› Tap on .

› Messages that are received are displayed as individual messages or as messages in a conversation, depending on the following setting.

To **switch the display of messages as a conversation on or off**, tap on > *Show messages as a conversation* in the **Phone** menu.

› To **switch graphic notifications** regarding the receipt of a new message **on or off**, tap on > *New message notifications* in the **Phone** menu.

Infotainment offers the possibility to read the text message (context-dependent) by means of the generated Infotainment voice if is tapped.

For a quick response to the selected message, tap on and select the desired answer.

Send e-mails

› In the **Phone** menu, tap on > > *EMAIL* > .

› Enter a subject for the e-mail.

› Write an e-mail and confirm that an e-mail is displayed.

› Search for or select the recipient of the email.

Multiple recipients can be added.

› Tap *Send*.

Show received e-mails

› In the **Telephone** > > menu *tap on EMAIL* .

› Select the desired e-mail.

The following functions can be selected in the displayed e-mail:

- Reply to all or just to the sender.
- Reply with a new e-mail.
- Forward e-mail.
- E-mail management.

When the icon is displayed, the e-mail contains an attachment.

› To **switch graphic notifications** regarding the receipt of a new message **on or off**, tap in the **Phone** >menu *New message notifications* .

Settings for Infotainment telephone functions

Telephone-Infotainment-Connection types
The way in which the telephone is connected depends on the number of phones currently connected to the Infotainment:

▸ **No telephone** - The telephone is connected as a main telephone.

▸ **One telephone** - The telephone is connected as an additional telephone.

▸ **Two telephones** - Select the telephone to be replaced.

› To **switch between the main telephone and the additional telephone**, tap on **Phone** in any menu.

› Select the desired phone.

Connect the telephone to Infotainment

› Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.

› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

The unit name can be determined by tapping **MENU** > > *Manage mobile devices* > > *device name:*.

› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

Connect Infotainment to a non-paired mobile device

› MENU > ☍ > *Mobile devices* .
› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
› Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.
› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Connect Infotainment to a previously paired telephone

› MENU > ☍ > *mobile devices* .

Or:

› PHONE > ☍ > *Select mobile phone* .
› Select the desired device from the list of **known devices**.
› Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.
› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Manage preset buttons for preferred contacts

› To **display the preferred contacts**, tap on 👤 in the **Phone** menu.
› To **store the contact**, tap on +.
› Select or search for the desired contact.
› If the contact contains multiple telephone numbers, choose the desired telephone number.
› To **delete the contact** tap on 👤 > ✎ in the **Phone** menu.
  ▶ To delete **one** preset, tap on 🗑 and confirm the deletion.
  ▶ To delete **all** preset buttons, tap on 🗑 and confirm the deletion.

ⓘ The position of the preferred contacts can be changed.

› Tap on ✎.
› Hold down the desired contact until it is free.
› Move the contact to another position.

Number for the voice mailbox

› For **setting the voice mailbox number** in the **phone** ☍ > menu *Mailbox number:* .
› Enter the voice mailbox number.

Ringtone

Some phones do not support the use of the phone ringtone. Instead, the Infotainment ringtone is used.

› For **setting the Infotainment ringtone** in the **phone** ☍ >menu *select the ringtone* .
› Select the ringtone.

Switch HD voice quality for a call on/off

This function makes it possible to improve the quality of a telephone call.

› In the **Telephone** ☍ >menu *HD voice quality* .

Turn call rejection with a message on/off

If a call is rejected when this function is switched on, an SMS message can be sent to the caller.

› In the **Telephone** ☍ >menu *Reject call with SMS template* .

Sort contacts in the phone book

› In the **Telephone** ☍ >menu *Sort by:* .
› Select the desired sorting mode.

Import telephone contacts

After first connecting the main telephone with Infotainment, telephone contacts will start to be imported into the Infotainment memory.

Infotainment can import up to 5000 telephone contacts together with contact pictures. Each contact can include max. 5 telephone numbers.

Depending on the type of telephone, import confirmation may be required.

Update telephone contacts

When connecting the next telephone with Infotainment, an **automatic** update of the list is carried out.

› For **manual** update of the list in the **phone** ☍ > menu *tap on Import contacts* .

Switch message viewing as a conversation on/off

When this function is switched on, messages are displayed as a conversation.

› In the **Telephone** ☍ >menu *Show messages as conversation* .

Turn the graphic notice regarding receiving a new message/email on or off

When the feature is on, the new message icon appears on the status bar and in the feature area for the messages when a new message/e-mail is received.

› In the **Telephone** ☍ >menu *New message notifications* .

Wi-Fi

Functionality

The Wi-Fi can be used for the internet connection or for the SmartLinkConnection.

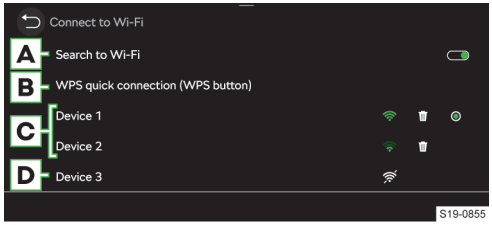
The Infotainment hotspot can connect up to 8 mobile devices. At the same time, the Infotainment can be connected to another hotspot.

› To display the list of connected mobile devices, tap MENU > ☍ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Connected devices*.

Overview of available hotspots

List of available hotspots

› To **display the list**, tap on MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Wi-Fi:*.



A Search for available visible hotspots
B Connection to the hotspot via WPS
C Previously connected hotspots
D Available hotspots
⊙ Currently connected hotspot
🗑 Delete information about the hotspot connection
Signal strength of the hotspot
Hotspot signal is not available

Function restriction

The Infotainment system can only be connected to a hotspot with WPA2 access protection.

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection
In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

ⓘ Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Settings

Connect a mobile device to the Infotainment hotspot

› Turn on the Infotainment's WLAN hotspot in the menu item MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Use as hotspot*.
› Turn on the Wi-Fi on the mobile device.
› In the list of available Wi-Fi devices, look for Infotainment Wi-Fi.

The name of the Infotainment is taken from the menu item MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Network name:*.

› Select the Infotainment hotspot and enter the required password.

The password for connecting to the Infotainment hotspot is taken from the menu item MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Password:*.

› Confirm the connection.

Connect Infotainment to the mobile device hotspot

› Turn on the Infotainment's Wi-Fi unit in the menu item MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *WLAN:* > *Search for WLAN* switch on
› Select the desired hotspot in the list of available hotspots.
› Enter the password for connecting to mobile devices.

ⓘ Infotainment stores passwords for previously connected hotspots.

Security level of the Infotainment hotspot

The security level is set at *WPA2* and cannot be changed.

Data transmission with the connected device

› To turn data transmission with the connected device on or off, tap MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Connected devices* > ⏻.

Change the name of the Infotainment hotspot

› MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as a hotspot* > *Network name:* .
› Enter the name and confirm.

Change password for connection to Infotainment hotspot

The password must be a minimum of 12 and a maximum of 63 characters.

› MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as a hotspot* > *Password:* .
› Enter the password and confirm.

Quick connection of Infotainment to the mobile device hotspot

› On the mobile device, turn on the hotspot, its visibility, and the option for WPS connection.
› MENU> ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Wi-Fi:* > *Tap WPS quick connection (WPS button)* .

Automatic WPS connection

› Tap MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Quick connection to Infotainment system*.
› In the mobile device, switch on the option for connection via WPS.
› Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

Manual WPS connection

› In the mobile device, switch on the option for connection via WPS PIN.

The mobile device display will show the WPS PIN for connecting to the Infotainment.

› Tap MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Quick connection to Infotainment system* > ⓘ > *WPS PIN*.
› Enter the WPS PIN in the Infotainment and confirm.

› Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

Automatic connection using the QR code

› MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Tap quick connection with infotainment system* .

› In the mobile device, switch on the option for connection via QR Code.

› With the mobile device, read the QR code displayed on the Infotainment screen.

› Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

Tips for a perfect connection

ⓘ

▸ Keep only the hotspot to be connected switched on and switch off the other hotspots.

▸ Delete unused hotspots. This shortens the time required to establish a connection.

▸ For some hotspots, the connection takes longer, so wait for the connection to finish.

▸ If the connection is interrupted, recheck the available hotspots and repeat the connection.

SmartLink

Functionality

SmartLink offers the ability to display and operate certified applications from a connected mobile device in the Infotainment screen.

Certification may be conditional upon the use of the latest update to the particular SmartLink application.

Applications include, for example, apps for route guidance, telephoning, listening to music, etc.

Mobile devices can be connected via a USB cable or WiFi.

Supported connection types

SmartLink supports the following connection types:

▸ Android Auto

▸ Apple CarPlay

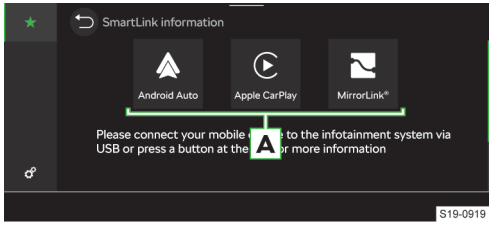
▸ MirrorLink

Overview of the SmartLink connection

Display menu

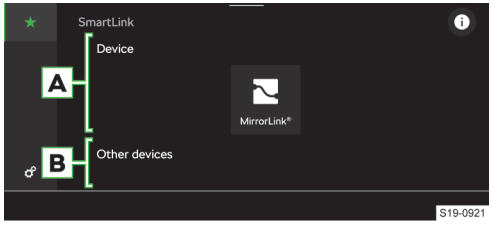
› Tap MENU > ⠿.

Menu for device not connected



A List of supporting connection types

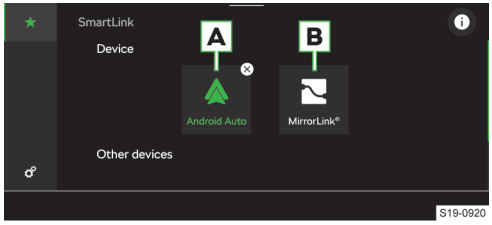
Menu for connected devices



A List of connected devices and available connection types

B List of available devices

Menu for a device used



A Used connection type

B Available connection type

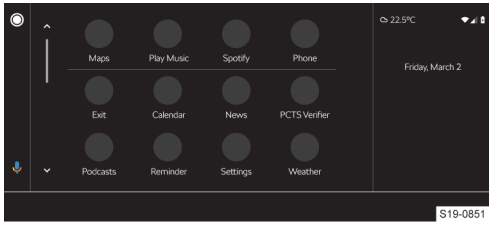
⊗ Disconnect

Android Auto

› In the SmartLink menu, tap on ★.

› Select the connected device.

› Select the connection type ⩓.

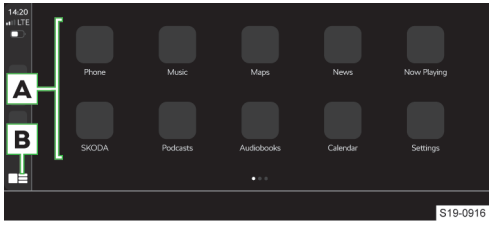


○ Overview of running applications, phone calls, incoming text messages, and more.

Turn on voice control (Google Voice)

Apple CarPlay

› In the SmartLink menu, tap on ★.
› Select the connected device.
› Select the connection type .

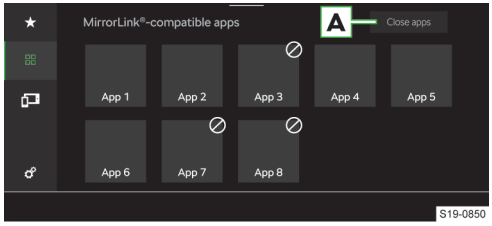


A List of available applications

B Depending on the duration of operation:
- ▸ **Tap:** Return to the menu Apple CarPlay
- ▸ **Hold:** Turn on voice control (Siri)

MirrorLink

› In the SmartLink menu, tap on ★.
› Select the connected device.
› Select the connection type .



A Display of running applications

⊘ It is not possible to operate the application while driving

★ Display of available devices

List of applications

Display of the last running application in connected mobile devices

Settings

Connection conditions

General connection conditions

✓ The mobile device supports the type of SmartLink connection Android Auto, Apple CarPlay or MirrorLink.

✓ Mobile devices, as well as the type of SmartLink connection, are supported in the respective market.

✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

Conditions for Android Auto

✓ The device to be connected must have Android Auto connection.

A list of devices, supported regions and applications that support the Android Auto connection can be found on the Google, Inc. website.

✓ The Android Auto application needs to be installed on the mobile device.

✓ Some applications require the data connection in the mobile device to be turned on.

✓ Connect the mobile device for the first time when the vehicle is stationary.

Conditions for Apple CarPlay

✓ The device to be connected must have Apple CarPlay connection.

A list of devices, supported regions and applications that support the Apple CarPlay connection can be found on the Apple Inc website.

✓ Siri voice control is on.

✓ The data connection in the mobile device is switched on.

Conditions for MirrorLink

✓ The device to be connected must have MirrorLink connection.

A list of devices and applications that support the MirrorLink connection can be found on the websites of Car Connectivity Consorcium®.

✓ The MirrorLink application needs to be installed on the mobile device.

✓ Some applications require the data connection in the connected mobile device to be turned on.

Operation

Operation of the running MirrorLink application

Display of control surfaces at the bottom

Display of control surfaces at the top

Return to the menu MirrorLink

Restriction

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Restriction of SmartLink applications while driving
For reasons of safety, the operation of some SmartLink applications while driving is not possible or only limited.

Restriction of the navigation function
If route guidance is currently being carried out through Infotainment, this is ended when you start route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application.

If there is route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application, it is ended by starting the destination guidance using Infotainment.

SmartLink settings

Apple CarPlay - Connection via USB
› Turn on the Infotainment.
› Turn on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
› Choose to connect via Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay - Connection via Wi-Fi from Infotainment
› Turn on Bluetooth® and Bluetooth® visibility in the Apple mobile device.
› Tap on MENU > ▪ > ⚙ > *mobile devices*.
› In the displayed list, look for and select the desired device with the symbol ⓒ.
› Follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen and confirm the Bluetooth® pairing.
› If another device is connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Apple CarPlay - Connect via Wi-Fi from mobile devices
To establish a connection, the following conditions must be met:

✓ The minimum iOS version is 9.
✓ No other mobile device can be connected via SmartLink.
✓ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® functionality is switched on in the Infotainment system.

› In the mobile device, turn on the CarPlay function.
› Press and hold the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

The Infotainment screen displays a connection message with the name of the Bluetooth® unit of the Infotainment.
› Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.
› If necessary, confirm the PIN.
› In the Infotainment screen, select the connection type Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay - Disconnect
› In the Apple CarPlay menu, tap on the function area “ŠKODA”.
› Tap on ⊗.

Android Auto - Connection via USB
› Turn on the Infotainment.
› Turn on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
› Choose to connect via Android Auto.

Android Auto - Connect via Wi-Fi from Infotainment
› MENU > ▪ > ⚙ > *mobile devices* .
› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
› Select the Bluetooth® Freisprechprofil.
› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
› If another device is connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.
› From the list of **known devices**, select the desired device with the ▲ symbol.

Android Auto - Connect via Wi-Fi from mobile devices
To establish a connection, the following conditions must be met:

✓ The minimum Android version is 5.
✓ No other mobile device can be connected via SmartLink.
✓ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® functionality is switched on in the Infotainment system.

› Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.
› If necessary, confirm the PIN.
› In the Infotainment screen, select the connection type Android Auto.

Android Auto - Disconnect
› In the Android Auto ☺ > menu, tap “Return to SKODA”.
› Tap on ⊗.

MirrorLink - Connection via USB
› Turn on the Infotainment.
› Turn on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
› Choose to connect through MirrorLink.

MirrorLink - Disconnect
› In the MirrorLink menu, tap on ★.
› Tap on ⊗.

Change to another device / connection type
Infotainment allows you to switch between currently connected devices and the connection type.

› In the SmartLink menu, tap on ★.
› Select the desired device or connection type.

Navigation

Navigation announcements

Infotainment route guidance takes place using graphic driving recommendations and navigation announcements.

The navigation announcements are generated by the Infotainment system. Navigation announcement clarity (e.g. road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.

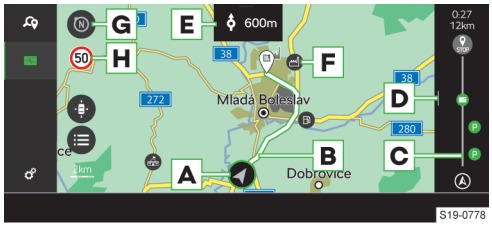
Repeat the last navigation announcement
› Tap on ☰ › 🔊.

Turn off navigation announcements
› Tap on ☰ › 🔇.

Overview

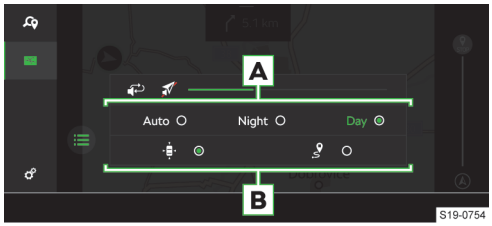
Display menu
› Tap MENU › ➤.

Map overview
› In the **Navigation** menu, tap on 🗺.



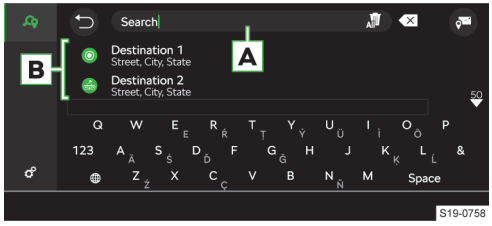
A Vehicle position
B Route
C Route view
D **Press and drag to the left:** Show route overview
E Following driving recommendation
F POI icon
Tap: Show destination details
G **Tap:** Change map orientation
▸ North-facing 2D map
▸ 2D map facing the direction of travel
▸ 3D map facing the direction of travel
H Road signs for the affected route section
End route guidance
Centre the map on the vehicle position
Display menu for setting the map display

Select the type of displayed map
› In the **Navigation** menu, tap on 🗺 › ☰.



A Display map in accordance with the following setting
▸ *Auto* - Map in day / night mode depending on the vehicle lighting currently switched on
▸ *Day* - Map in day mode
▸ *Night* - Map in night mode
B When route guidance is running, one of the following map displays can be selected
▸ - Map centred on the vehicle position
▸ - Map with the entire route/choice of alternative routes

Find destination
› In the **Navigation** › menu *Find* .



A Input line
B List of destinations that have recently been searched for
Show list of searched destinations
Enter destination via the address

Select the destination you are looking for
› Enter the details for the destination search.
› Select the desired destination.

Destination details are displayed with the option of starting route guidance.

Enter destination via the address
› In the **Navigation** › menu *Find* › .

A menu for entering the destination via the address is displayed.
› Enter the required information.

Details of the searched destination are displayed with the option of starting route guidance by tapping on *Start* .

Enter the destination using GPS coordinates

› In the **Navigation** > menu *Find* > > *Enter latitude and longitude* .

A menu is displayed for entering the destination using GPS coordinates.

› Enter the desired GPS latitude and longitude information.

› *Map* .

Details of the searched destination are displayed with the option of starting route guidance by tapping on *Start* .

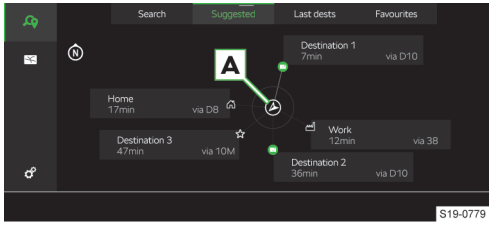
Selecting destination by tapping the map point

› Tap the desired item or the POI icon in the map.

Destination details are displayed with the option of starting route guidance.

Suggested destinations

› In the **Navigation** > menu *Tap on proposals* .



A North-facing vehicle position

Destination with the home address

Destination with the work address

The view can display up to 5 recommended destinations in the following categories:

- Destination with the home address
- Destination with the work address
- Favourites
- Last destinations
- Predictive destinations

Destination alignment depends on the direction in relation to the current vehicle position. The functional surface with the destination displays information about the estimated travel time to the destination.

If the vehicle has active online services and there is a traffic obstruction on the route to the destination, the traffic obstruction icon will be displayed.

Delete the suggested destination

› Touch the functional area for the suggested destination and swipe left.

› Tap on .

Turn on / off suggestions for predictive destinations

Predictive destinations are automatically suggested by Infotainment depending on the number of journeys and the daily travel time to the given destination.

If suggested predictive destinations is enabled, the system can offer these destinations in the proposed destinations as well as while driving.

› > *Basic function settings* > *Tap Learn usage pattern* .

Deleting information for suggesting predictive destinations

› Tap on > *Basic function settings* > *Delete usage pattern.*

List of last destinations

› In the **Navigation** > menu *Last destinations* .

Tapping the list entry with the destination displays destination details with the option to start route guidance.

The list of recent destinations can also be displayed in the Instrument cluster display.

› Choose the menu in which the navigation is displayed.

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

The menu is displayed.

List of preferred destinations

› In the **Navigation** > menu *Favourites* .

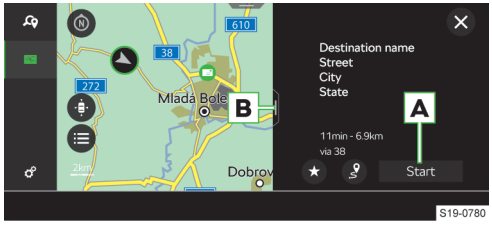
Tapping the list entry with the destination displays destination details with the option to start route guidance.

Destination details

The details window contains a map, available destination information and functional areas for selecting functions.

The destination details window is displayed in the following cases:

- After a destination has been searched for or selected in the menu.
- After a destination is tapped on in the route overview.
- After an item or POI icon has been tapped on in the map.



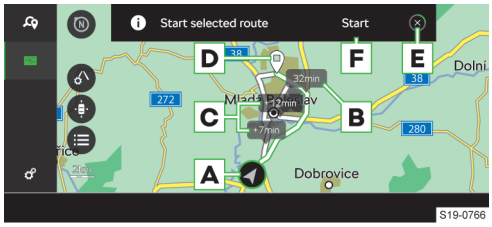
A Start route guidance
- ▶ ☆ - Save destination as a favourite
- ▶ ★ - Delete favourites

B **Press and drag to the left:** Enlarge the window with destination details

Depending on the destination context and destination type, the following functions are displayed:
- ▶ *Demo* - Set destination as a starting point for route guidance in demo mode
- ▶ *Rename* - Rename the saved destination
- ▶ *Call* - Establish a connection to the POI telephone number
- ▶ *Edit* - Option for editing the home or work address
- ▶ *Insert* - Insert destination into the route
- ▶ *Stop route guidance* - Stop route guidance

Show route

Route calculation



A Current vehicle position

B Proposed fastest route

C Alternative routes

D Destination position

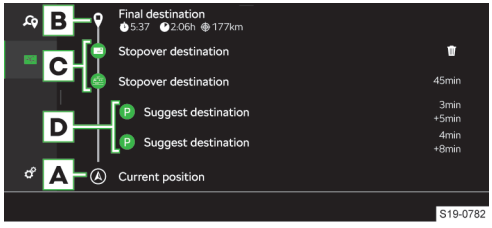
E 15 s time countdown before automatic start of the route guidance
- ▶ **Tap:** Interrupt time countdown

F Start route guidance

Show information on the selected route

Set parameters for route calculation

Route overview



A Information on current vehicle position

B Final route destination

Tap: the following menu items can be selected.
- ▶ *Show on map*
- ▶ *Stop route guidance*

C Route stopover

Tap: the following menu items can be selected.
- ▶ *Show on map*
- ▶ *Add stopover destination*

D Destination provided by Infotainment on the route

Tap: the following menu items can be selected.
- ▶ *Show on map*
- ▶ *Add stopover destination*

Change route destinations to each other

In the route overview, it is possible to exchange the destination and the intermediate destinations with each other and thus change their order.

› Hold the line with the desired destination until the functional surface for the destination becomes free.

› Move the destination to the desired position and release the functional surface.

The route is re-calculated.

Overview of traffic density

When ŠKODA online services are activated, traffic density information can be displayed in the form of the following colour scale in the route view ŠKODA:

Low density — — — — High density

— Traffic density information is not available

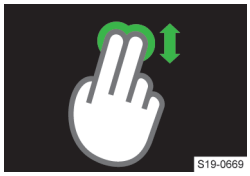
Operation



▶ Move map



▶ Enter destination by tapping the map item



▶ Switch 2D/3D map display



▶ Zoom into the map



▶ Zoom out of the map



▶ Rotate the map

Limitation

Infotainment may give incorrect driving recommendations if the road conditions or the traffic do not match the navigation data. This can lead to the route guidance being carried out using a different route or proposing a change of direction in a one-way street.

Information for updating the navigation data must be requested from a ŠKODA partner.

Settings

Avoiding traffic obstructions
If the function is switched on and the Infotainment receives information about a traffic obstruction on the route from online traffic information, the route is recalculated.

Infotainment may suggest a detour to avoid traffic obstructions, depending on the following settings:

› > *Route guidance settings* > *Tap on Avoid traffic incidents* .
› Select the desired menu item.

Switching the fuel warning on / off
When the function is switched on and the fuel supply reaches the reserve area, a warning message appears with the option of going to the nearest petrol station.

› Tap on > *Route guidance settings* > *Fuel warning*.

Switching display of country-specific speed limits on / off
When the function is switched on, the country-specific speed limits are displayed when crossing national borders.

› Tap on > *Route guidance settings* > *Country information at border crossings*.

Switching the display of road signs on motorways and expressways on / off
When the function is switched on, Infotainment displays traffic and information signs on motorways and expressways.

› > *Route guidance settings* > *Tap Signs on long-distance roads* .

Switch road sign display on/off
When this function is switched on, the Infotainment displays road signs on the route.

› Tap on > *Route guidance settings* > *Road signs* > *Show on map*.

Switching the speed limit warning on / off
› Tap on > *Route guidance settings* > *Road signs*.
› Set the note type and the value for exceeding the permissible speed.

Towing a trailer
To calculate the correct route for trailer operation, switch on trailer inclusion.

› Tap on > *Route guidance settings* > *Trailer* > *Include trailer*.

Set the maximum speed for trailer operation to correctly calculate the route time.

› Tap on > *Route guidance settings* > *Trailer* > *Maximum speed for trailer*.
› Set the maximum speed for the trailer.

Setting navigation announcements
› Tap on > *Navigation announcement settings*.
› Select and set the desired menu item.

Turn predictive destination suggestions on / off
› Tap on > *Basic function settings* > *Learn usage pattern*.

Delete information for suggesting frequently visited points of interest
› Tap on > *Basic function settings* > *Delete usage pattern*.
› Confirm the deletion.

Show preferred POI categories
Favourite POI categories are displayed on the map and provided in the destination search.

› Tap on > *Basic function settings* > *Define preferred POI categories*.
› Set favourite categories.

Switching demo mode on / off
In demo mode, the route guidance from the starting point of the demo mode to the selected destination is simulated.

When the function is switched on, Infotainment issues a query before the start of route guidance as to whether the route guidance should be carried out in the normal way or in demo mode.

› ⚙ > *Basic functions settings* > *Demo mode* .

Defining the starting point of the demo mode
› Turn on the demo mode.
› Tap on ⚙ > *Basic function settings* > *Define demo mode starting point*.
› Select the desired destination to be used as the starting point for the demo mode.

Or:

› Turn on the demo mode.
› Select or locate the desired destination to be the starting point of demo mode.

Destination details are displayed.

› Display the window with destination details in full screen.

The window is enlarged by pressing the ❙ button in the window bar swiping left.

› Tap on *Demo*.

Setting home address
› Tap on 🔍 > *Favourites* > *Home*.
› Select and enter the destination via the address and consult the current vehicle position if necessary.

The defined destination for the home address is displayed in the overview of suggested destinations.

› Tap on 🔍 > *Suggestions* > 🏠.

Set the work address
› Tap on 🔍 > *Favourites* > *Work*.
› Select and enter the destination via the address and consult the current vehicle position if necessary.

The defined destination for the work address is displayed in the overview of suggested destinations.

› Tap on 🔍 > *Suggestions* > 🏢.

Updating the navigation database

Information for updating the navigation database must be requested from a **ŠKODA** partner.

Automatic update
Infotainment automatically carries out an update if the following conditions are met:

✓ The “Infotainment Online” online services are activated.
✓ An update of the navigation database for the current vehicle position or route destination is available.

Determining the navigation database version
› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *System information*.

Online Services

ŠKODA Connect

Regulations

The rights and obligations of the contracting parties with regard to the provision of these services are regulated in an independent agreement. Current legal documents regarding the ŠKODA Connect services can be found on the ŠKODA Connect Portal and the ŠKODA Connect application.

Functionality

ŠKODA Connect services allow you to connect the vehicle to the online world. They thus represent an extension of the vehicle and Infotainment functions.

The ŠKODA Connect services are not part of the vehicle's equipment. These will be published separately on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website, in the ŠKODA Connect application or in Infotainment, if Infotainment allows this.

The offer of ŠKODA Connect services depends on the type of vehicle and its trim level, Infotainment and country.

ŠKODA Connect website
The ŠKODA Connect website contains e.g. the current information on the ŠKODA Connect services, the reference to the ŠKODA Connect Portal or the option to download the ŠKODA Connect application.

The website is opened after reading the following QR code or the reference:

http://go.skoda.eu/skoda-connect

ŠKODA Connect Portal website
The ŠKODA Connect Portal website enables, for example, user registration, ordering of ŠKODA Connect services, service management or remote access to the vehicle.

The website is opened after reading the following QR code or the reference:

http://go.skoda.eu/connect-portal

Requirements

Terms of use of the ŠKODA Connect services
- ✓ A main user is registered in the vehicle.
- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
- ✓ A user currently logged in is authorized to use the ŠKODA Connect services.
- ✓ The protection level set for sending personal data enables the use of ŠKODA Connect services.

Availability of the ŠKODA Connect services
Availability depends on the following conditions:

- ▸ Cellular networks through which the connection to the ŠKODA Connect services is ensured are available.
  - ▸ The availability, functioning, connection speed and technology used in the mobile network can be different in the respective countries and are dependent on the mobile network operator.
  - ▸ In areas where this is insufficient signal, e.g. in underground garages, functionality may be limited.
- ▸ The ŠKODA Connect services are available for your vehicle, infotainment and the respective country.
  - ▸ The availability can be checked on the following ŠKODA Connect website:

http://go.skoda.eu/skoda-connect-availability

Availability status of the ŠKODA Connect services
The availability of the services is indicated by the colour of the symbol in the status bar on the Infotainment screen.

- ▸ **White** - ŠKODA Connect services are available.
- ▸ **Grey** - ŠKODA Connect services are not available.

ŠKODA Connect application

Functionality

ŠKODA Connect application
The ŠKODA Connect application enables, for example, user registration, ordering of ŠKODA Connect services or remote access to the vehicle.

The application can be downloaded to the mobile device after scanning the following QR code or link:

http://go.skoda.eu/skodaconnectapp

Requirements

✓ The user has one ŠKODA ID account linked to the vehicle.
✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active in the vehicle.

User registration and activation of the ŠKODA Connect services

Functionality

User registration will provide you with a ŠKODA ID user account that can be used in all ŠKODA applications and services.

User registration for the ŠKODA Connect services can be done at the following locations.

▸ ŠKODA Connect Portal website
▸ ŠKODA Connect application
▸ Infotainment which supports this function

When registering, create an S-PIN.
You will need the S-PIN to register for certain ŠKODA Connect services as well as to register for the protected user account.

Settings

Register users in Infotainment
To complete registration, access to the e-mail box entered during registration is required.

› Switch on the Infotainment and in the displayed welcome window tap *Switch users* > *Register* and follow the instructions on the screen.

Or:

› MENU > > + > *Register* and follow the instructions on the screen.

The completion of the user registration and the creation of the user account in the infotainment are only possible in the infotainment Columbus.

Activate ŠKODA Connect services when registering the main user
After the main user has been registered, the Infotainment prompts you to activate ŠKODA Connect services.

To complete the activation, it is necessary to have two original vehicle keys with you.

› Follow the instructions in the Infotainment screen.

Activate ŠKODA Connect services of another registered user
› MENU > > > *Tap Become main user* > *Tap Become main user* .
› Follow the instructions in the Infotainment screen.

Setting personal data protection

Personal data

Personal customer data is collected, processed and used by ŠKODA AUTO in accordance with the provisions of the generally binding legal provisions.

The current declaration on the protection of personal data can be found on the following website:

http://www.skoda-auto.com/other/personal-data

As a contracting party with regard to the use of the ŠKODA Connect services, you must ensure the protection of personal data and the right to privacy.

Inform the vehicle user and passengers that the vehicle is transmitting user data and using localization services. Failure to provide information can violate the rights of vehicle users and passengers.

Localisation services include, for example, information on the last parking position, area notification or speed notification.

If the passengers do not agree to the use of the localization services, switch off the services by setting the respective protection level for personal data.

Functionality

User and vehicle data as well as information from the localization services are sent when using the ŠKODA Connect services.

The level of protection for personal data set influences what is sent.

The set level of protection for personal data influences data transmission using eSIM. This does not affect data transmission of a device connected via WLAN.

Settings

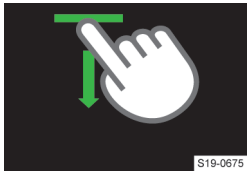
The legally required services, e.g. emergency call, cannot be switched off.

Every vehicle user can set the protection level of personal data.

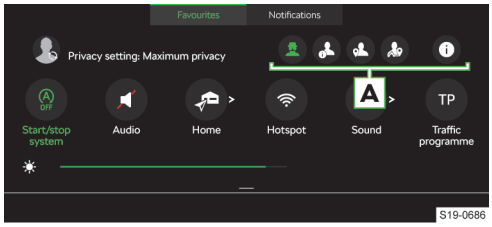
The level of protection of personal data is linked to the user account. After the user has logged on, this is set according to the level last set.

it is necessary to activate localisation services for the full function of some ŠKODA Connect services.

Settings in the control centre



› Open the Infotainment control centre by holding down the bar at the top of the screen and pulling it down.



Display example in Infotainment Columbus

A Setting up protection of personal data

ⓘ Detailed information on the protection levels of personal data

Tap Set-up in user management

› **MENU** > > > *Privacy and service management* .

› Set the desired level of protection of personal data.

Maximum privacy

- All ŠKODA Connect services other than the services you are currently using are switched off.
- All localization services are switched off. The vehicle position information is not shared.
- Information transmission via eSim is switched off.
- No online updates available.

No location

- All localization services ŠKODA Connect are switched off. The vehicle position information is not shared.
- Information transmission via eSim is switched on.
- All functions that require a connection via eSIM are active.

Use my position

- Localisation services ŠKODA Connect are enabled. Information on vehicle position is not provided to other people.
- Information on the vehicle position is not available on the ŠKODA Connect Portal web pages and in the ŠKODA Connect application.
- Information transmission via eSim is switched on.
- All functions that require a connection via eSIM are active.

Share my location

- Localization services ŠKODA Connect are enabled. The vehicle position information is available for all services which need to know the vehicle's position.
- Information on the vehicle position is available on the ŠKODA Connect Portal web pages and in the ŠKODA Connect application.
- Information transmission via eSim is switched on.
- All functions that require a connection via eSIM are active.

Collection of anonymised data

When the protection level of personal data is set *Use location* and *Share my location* the vehicle can collect and send anonymised data to improve the services of selected third parties.

It is exclusively anonymous data without any connection to the specific vehicle, the vehicle owner or other authorized users.

User management

What you should be mindful of

When buying an older vehicle with ŠKODA Connect services, it is possible that the services are active and the main user is the previous owner of the vehicle. The previous owner can still have the possibility to control the vehicle functions and receive information about the users and the vehicle.

Therefore, we recommend deleting the previous main user. Then, log in with your own user account and set yourself as the main user of the vehicle.

If you register a new user and select yourself as the main user during registration, the previous main user is automatically overwritten.

ⓘ The type of user and vehicle information to be sent can be influenced by setting the protection level of personal data.

Functionality

User accounts

User Management displays the accounts of the last active users. The following activities can be carried out in user management:

- Select a user account
- Register user
- Active ŠKODA Connect services
- Add and remove user accounts
- Set the main users
- Set account security
- Switch the assignment to the used key on/off

Overview

Main user
The main user provides a registered user with activated ŠKODA Connectservices and a vehicle associated with his account.

The main user can take full advantage of the personalisation features.

The main user has full control over the settings and operation of the vehicle.

All settings are saved in the main user's personal online account.

User with a ŠKODA Connect online account
The user was not selected by the main user, but has his own ŠKODA Connect online account.

The user can take full advantage of the personalisation features.

All settings are saved in the registered user's personal online account.

Guest
A guest account is anonymous and will in no way synchronise with ŠKODA Connect services.

All changes to settings related to this account are stored exclusively in the vehicle.

Requirements

The following conditions must be met for unlimited use of the management of user accounts and their synchronization with online accounts:

✓ A main user with active ŠKODA Connect services is registered in Infotainment.
✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are available.

Operation

Log in user
After switching on the ignition ignition and Infotainment are switched on, the introductory login screen for the last user account used is displayed.

The introductory log on screen cannot be skipped. Without registering, the Infotainment cannot be used.

› Confirm the log-in.

When you log in to a secure user account, enter the S-PIN and confirm the login.

Or:

› Select the menu item for switching user.

A menu containing available users is displayed.
› Select the desired account.
› When you log in to a secure user account, enter the S-PIN and confirm the login.

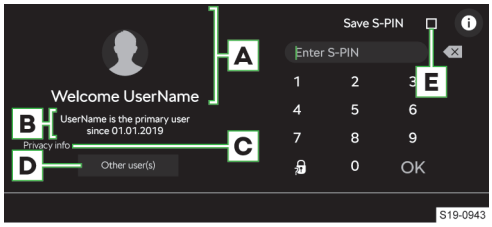
Or:

› Select the menu item for switching user.

A menu containing available users is displayed.
› If you are a new user, tap + for the user's login.
› Follow the instructions in the Infotainment screen.

Log in to the protected user account
Some user accounts can be protected. Protected accounts are shown in the user list with the icon .

To **log in** to the protected user account you need the S-PIN created when creating the user account on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website, in the ŠKODA Connect application or when registering the user in Infotainment.



A User name
B Name of the main vehicle user
C Information on the configured protection level of personal data
D Display of user account management
E Turn off logging in to the account using the S-PIN
Display information about the S-PIN
Display information about restoring the S-PIN

User verification by entering the S-PIN can be switched on/off in the menu item MENU > > > *Protect account* > *Protect user profile with S-PIN* .

Restore S-PIN
Your S-PIN can be restored on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website or in the ŠKODA Connect application.

› After restoring the S-PIN, register again for the correct functioning of the ŠKODA Connect application in the vehicle as the main user.
› If you are the main user in several vehicles, register again in each vehicle.

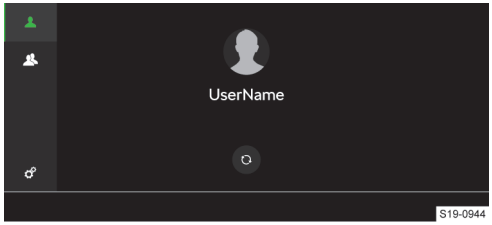
Log out user
When the ignition is switched off, the logout screen is displayed, in which the selected vehicle functions can be activated.

When the time interval expires, the logout screen is switched of and the user is automatically logged off.

Settings

Manage current user

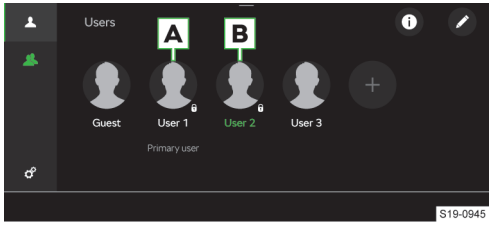
› Tap MENU > > .



Sync online account

User management

› Tap MENU > > .



A Main user assigned to the vehicle

B Currently logged in user

\+ Add new user

A user account protected by S-PIN

Show edit mode

Show additional user management information

Tap Become main user

› MENU > > > *Tap Become main user* > *Tap Become main user* .

› Confirm the setting.

Delete user

› Tap MENU > > > > .

› Confirm the deletion.

Delete the current user account

› MENU > > > *Tap Delete active user* .

› Confirm the deletion.

Delete main user account

› MENU > > > *Tap Become main user* > *Tap Delete main user* .

› Confirm the deletion.

Delete all users

Resetting the Infotainment to the factory settings will delete all user accounts.

› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.

› Tap MENU > .

› *Restore factory settings* select and confirm the reset.

To check the factory reset was successful, we recommend that you check the deletion of the user accounts and the main user account.

Personalisation

Usage

The personalisation service allows you to set, set and store vehicle settings.

The personalisation service is connected to the user accounts. Any change to the set personalised functions is automatically stored in the active user account.

If the vehicle is within range of a contractual mobile phone network, personalisable settings are stored in the ŠKODA ID online user account after the ignition is switched off.

By registering for a user account in another ŠKODA brand vehicle, the custom functions associated with the user account are set according to vehicle type, equipment and infotainment.

Settings

Activate/deactivate automatic assignment of the vehicle key

If the function is turned on in the settings, the key with which the vehicle was unlocked will be assigned to the current user account when the vehicle is locked.

After unlocking the vehicle and opening the driver's door, all personalised functions are set according to the user account assigned to the key.

› To switch **off / on** tap MENU > > > *Assign vehicle key automatically* .

If the automatic key assignment function is switched off, the key assignment will also be deleted.

Switch personalisation service on / off

› MENU > > > *Privacy settings and manage services* .

› In the displayed list of online services, select the service **personalisation**.

› Switch the service off / on.

Management of online services

Usage

The following activities can be carried out in service management:

▸ Set protection of personal data

▸ Show the list of available services

- ▸ Receive information about the status of the services
- ▸ Receive information about the validity of the services
- ▸ Switch the use of the services on/off

Connection status of the online services

The connection status of the online services of ŠKODA Connect online services is indicated by an icon in the status bar on the Infotainment screen.

The following symbols can be displayed in the status bar:

Connection status of the online services

- The ŠKODA Connect online services are available.
- The ŠKODA Connect online services are not available.

The set personal data protection level

- *Maximum privacy*
- *No position data*
- *Use my position*
- *Share my position*

Conditions

✓ A main user with active ŠKODA Connect services is registered in Infotainment.
✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are available.

Operation

Show list of online services

› MENU > > > *Tap Privacy settings and manage services* .

Show details of services

› Select the desired service from the list of online services.

Details about the service may contain the following information and functions:

- ▸ Status of the service
- ▸ Reason for the unavailability of the service
- ▸ Name of the group of online services in which the respective service is found
- ▸ Expiry date of the service's validity
- ▸ Switch use of the service on/off

Settings

Switch on/off use of the service

› MENU > > > *Tap Privacy settings and manage services* .
› Select the desired service from the list of online services displayed.
› Switch the desired service on / off.

The use of the service applies to all user accounts. The service can only be used if it is available.

eSIM data connection

Usage

Applies to Infotainment Bolero and Columbus.

For ŠKODA Connect services, the prepaid e-SIM data connection for online services can be used.

The data connection can be shared with another 8 connected devices using Wi-Fi.

Further information on the function of the data connection, user registration, availability of the data connection and on the overview of the data plans and countries, with the possibility of obtaining them, can be found on the following website:

https://skoda.cubictelecom.com

Operation

Applies to Infotainment Bolero and Columbus.

Show ŠKODA Connect data packets

› MENU > > *Data connection* > *Data packets* .

The following information is displayed in the overview:

- ▸ Overview of the plans purchased
- ▸ Use of the data plans
- ▸ The plan is valid

The validity of the plan expires when the plan is fully used or when the period of validity expires.

Settings

Applies to Infotainment Bolero and Columbus.

Switch the use of the ŠKODA Connect services on/off.

› MENU > > *Data connection* > *Integrated data connection (eSIM)* .

Online System Update

Usage

The online update enables software updates for the connectivity control unit (OCU) and supported Infotainment type.

The Infotainment automatically indicates a possible online update by showing a message on the Infotainment screen. Infotainment also offers the option of

downloading the update or postponing the download process.

Further information on online updates, their availability in the respective countries, on supported vehicles and Infotainment systems can be found on the following website:

http://go.skoda.eu/online-system-update

If the download of the update is postponed, the option to download the update will be offered again the next time the ignition and Infotainment are switched on.

Operation

Download update

› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› Follow the instructions and information displayed on the Infotainment screen.
› Confirm the download in the Infotainment.

The download process can be cancelled at any time. When the ignition is switched on again, the download process is automatically restored.

The download time depends on the speed and quality of the mobile network, the file size, and the type of update.

Install the update

⚠ **WARNING**
The connectivity control unit (OCU) or Infotainment may not function during installation.
In this event, there are no emergency calls, no automatic emergency calls in the event of an accident and none of the ŠKODA Connectservices will be available.

▸ Install the update while the vehicle is stationary.

› Park the vehicle safely.
› Switch off the ignition.
› Confirm the software installation on the Infotainment screen.

The vehicle can be left while the installation continues.

› Switch on the ignition and Infotainment after installation or return to the vehicle.
› Check the message regarding successful installation on the Infotainment screen.

The emergency call indicator light does not light up during installation.

After a successful installation, the emergency call indicator lamp lights up green.

Requirements

The following conditions must be met for a successful update:

✓ The ignition and the Infotainment are switched on.
✓ The ŠKODA Connect services were activated in the vehicle.
✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are available.
✓ The vehicle has an internet connection.
✓ The *Maximum privacy* is not set in the vehicle.
✓ The online update is available in the relevant country.
✓ The charge state of the 12-volt vehicle battery is sufficient.

Self-help

If any of the following events occur while downloading the update or during installation, please contact a service provider:

▸ A message appears in the Infotainment screen regarding an incorrect download or installation of the update.
▸ The Infotainment screen goes out after switching on.
▸ The emergency call indicator lamp lights up red.

Shop

Usage

In Infotainment in the Shop menu, the following activities can be carried out

▸ Order new functions and services
▸ Extend purchased functions and services
▸ Buy subsequent ŠKODA Connect data plans

Devices connected via Wi-Fi can also access the data plans.

Further information on the data plans can be found on the following website:

https://skoda.cubictelecom.com

The functions and services can be subject to a runtime limitation or even be unlimited.

The functions and services that are purchased are available to all vehicle users.

The functions and services can also be purchased later on the website ŠKODA Connect Portal.

Overview

› Tap MENU > .
› Select the desired function or service from the list that is displayed.

Requirements

The availability of the services and functions depends on the vehicle and Infotainment type as well as being country-specific.

The following conditions must be met to activate new services and functions:

✓ Infotainment supports the activation of new services and functions.
✓ The vehicle trim level enables the use of new services or functions.

If a service or a function is linked to a trim level that is not available with the vehicle, find out from a specialist garage whether the vehicle trim can be added.

✓ The main vehicle user is logged on.
✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are available.
✓ The charge state of the 12-volt vehicle battery is sufficient.

An active data connection is required for certain services or functions. The connection may be chargeable.

Activated services and functions are not linked to the validity period of ŠKODA Connect services.

Limitation

The functions are linked to the vehicle, not to the main user account. These cannot be transferred to any other vehicle in which the user logs on.

Information call

Usage

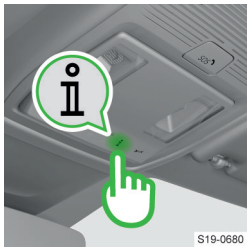
The info call can be used if there are problems with the ŠKODA Connectservices or for information regarding the products and services of the ŠKODA brand.

Requirements

✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
✓ The level of protection of personal data is not set to *Maximum privacy* .

To send information about the position of the vehicle, the protection level of personal data must be set to *Share my position* .

Operation



› Press the key.

Breakdown call

Usage

The breakdown call can be used in the event of a breakdown.

By pressing the key a connection is established with the ŠKODABreakdown Service. At the same time, the vehicle sends information about the vehicle condition and the vehicle position.

Requirements

✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
✓ The level of protection of personal data is not set to *Maximum privacy* .

To send information about the position of the vehicle, the protection level of personal data must be set to *Share my position* .

Operation



› Press the button.

Service schedules

Usage

If the vehicle detects that a service visit is necessary, it will automatically send this information to the service partner of your choice.

The service partner will then contact you and schedule the service visit with you.

Requirements

The service and the coupled functions are available depending on the following conditions:

✓ The service partner is chosen on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website or in the ŠKODA Connect application.
✓ The vehicle type, vehicle equipment and Infotainment type are supported.
✓ The level of protection of personal data is not set to *Maximum privacy* .
✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are available.

Vehicle status report

Usage

The vehicle health report function enables the vehicle status to be tracked online.

The service is in the ŠKODA Connect application is available.

The available vehicle data includes, for example, the distance travelled, selected warning messages or service inspection requirements.

Requirements

The service and the coupled functions are available depending on the following conditions:

✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
✓ The set protection level for personal data that enables the required data to be sent.
✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are available.

Remote access to the vehicle

Usage

The service relating to remote access to the vehicle offers the possibility of remotely controlling certain vehicle functions and accessing vehicle information.

Available functions include, for example, the following:

▸ Trip overviews
▸ Notification of the alarm triggering
▸ Localisation service notifications (e.g.location, area or speed notifications)
▸ Vehicle search, using horn and flashing signals
▸ Remote-controlled vehicle locking and unlocking
▸ Operation of the auxiliary heating

Requirements

The service and the coupled functions are available depending on the following conditions:

✓ The vehicle type, vehicle equipment and Infotainment type are supported.
✓ The set protection level for personal data that enables the required data to be sent.
✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are available.

Starting and driving

Start

Notes on starting

⚠ **DANGER**
Danger of poisoning by exhaust gases!
▸ Do not run the engine in an enclosed space.

Operating conditions
✓ The vehicle key is located in the vehicle interior.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Risk of key loss, possibly of key damage!
The system can detect the key even if it has been forgotten on the vehicle roof.
▸ Always keep the key with you.

Switching the ignition on and off



› Press the starter button.

Starting the vehicle with manual transmission
› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
› Move the shift lever to the neutral position.
› Keep the clutch pedal depressed.
› Press the starter button.

Starting the vehicle with automatic transmission
› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
› Keep the brake pedal depressed.
› Press the starter button.

ⓘ In vehicles with diesel engines, the warning light lights up after the ignition is switched ➿ - glow plug system on. The engine starts after ➿ .

Stopping the engine
› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
› Press the starter button.

⚠ **WARNING**
Steering lock hazard!
▸ During a journey with the engine stopped, the ignition must always be switched on.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Risk of engine overheating!
▸ Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been running at high loads. Leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute.

Starting issues

Troubleshooting

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Danger of engine damage!
▸ Do not start the vehicle by towing.

The engine does not start
› Switch off the ignition.
› Wait 30 seconds and repeat the starting procedure.
› If the engine does not start, use the jump start cables with the 12 volt vehicle battery of another vehicle » page 186 or seek the help of a specialist garage.

The engine does not start, the display shows a message regarding the immobilizer
› Use the other vehicle key.
› If the engine does not start, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Starting is not possible with the starter button, the system did not detect the key

 illuminates

› Insert the key into the cup holder at the front.
› Press the starter button.
› If the engine does not start, seek the help of a specialist garage.

ⓘ The key might not be detected if the battery in the key is nearly discharged or the signal is faulty.

The engine cannot be turned off with the starter button
› Hold the starter button or press twice.

The radiator fan keeps running even after the engine has stopped
The radiator fan can continue to run for approximately 10 minutes after the engine is stopped. This is not a defect.

The engine makes noises after the cold start
The increased running noise is due to the briefly increased engine speed. This is not a defect.

START STOP

Usage

The START-STOPP system reduces polluting emissions and the CO_2emissions and saves fuel.

Functionality

If the system determine that the engine is not needed when the vehicle stops, it turns off the engine and starts it again when moving off.

Vehicle with manual transmission
A system-related engine switch-off occurs when stopping, when switching the gear lever into the neutral position, and when releasing the clutch pedal.

A system-related engine start occurs when the clutch pedal is pressed down.

Vehicle with automatic transmission
A system-related engine switch-off occurs when the brake pedal is actuated and the engine is stopped.

A system-related engine start occurs when the accelerator pedal is pressed down. When the Auto Hold function is deactivated, a system-related engine start occurs after releasing the brake pedal.

Status display in the instrument cluster display
Ⓐ - Engine is switched off via the START-STOPP system

Ⓐ - Engine is not switched off via the START-STOPP system due to operating conditions that are not met

Operating conditions

Some conditions are systemic and can neither be influenced nor recognised. Therefore, the system may react differently in situations which seem identical from the driver's perspective.

The driver must fulfil the following conditions.

✓ The driver's door is closed.
✓ The driving speed was higher than 4 km/h after the last stop.

Settings

Automatic activation
▸ Upon start-up of the engine.
▸ By selecting the driving mode Eco » page 150, *Operation*.

Deactivate/activate system
› Press the SET button under the Infotainment.

In the displayed menu in the Infotainment, the function can be deactivated or activated.

If a system-related engine switch-off occurs and the system is deactivated, the engine will start.

Troubleshooting

The engine does not switch off when stopping, or it starts before starting up
The system has detected that the engine is running.

Manual gearbox

Operation

NOTICE
Danger of engine damage!
▸ Shift into higher gear before reaching the red area of the rev counter scale.

NOTICE
Danger of gearbox damage!
▸ Depress the clutch pedal all the way down.
▸ If not in the process of changing gear, do not leave your hand on the gearshift lever.

Engaging reverse gear
› Stop the vehicle.
› Depress the clutch pedal completely.
› Move the shift lever to the neutral position.
› Push the gearshift lever down.
› Set this completely to the left.
› Wait briefly.
› Engage reverse gear.

Automatic gearbox

Automatic gearbox modes

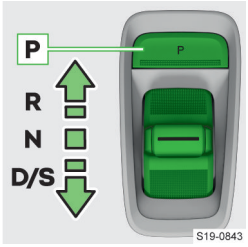
Select automatic gearbox mode
› To change the automatic gearbox mode, move the selector lever forwards or backwards.

The selector lever then returns to the starting position.

› Press the key P to choose the mode P.

The selector lever can be moved forwards or backwards between two positions. As a result, the mode D/S for example can be directly selected from mode R and vice versa.

The selected mode is displayed in the instrument cluster.



P Parked vehicle
The drive wheels are locked.

Select the mode P **only** when the vehicle is stationary.

R Reverse gear

The **R** mode can be selected at a speed below 10 km/h.

N **Neutral**

There is no transmission of engine power to the wheels.

D/S **Forward drive / sports program**

In **S** mode, the gear is changed at higher speeds than in **D** mode.

The choice between **D** and **S** is made by moving the selector lever to the rear.

To choose mode **D**, **S** or **R**, the engine must be already started. Only mode **N** can be selected with the engine stopped and the ignition switched on. This can, for example, be useful when towing the vehicle or when driving through a car wash.

Unlock automatic gearbox from mode P

is lit up - the automatic gearbox is in mode **P**

› Press the brake pedal and select the desired mode.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of the stationary vehicle rolling away automatically!

▸ When the mode **D**, **S**, **R** or **N** is selected, secure the vehicle with the brake.

Operation

Starting up

› Keep the brake pedal depressed.
› Start the engine.
› Use the selector lever to select the desired mode.
› Release the brake pedal and press the accelerator pedal lightly.

Speeding up while driving (kick-down)

› Fully depress the accelerator.

Stopping temporarily (e.g. at a junction)

› Leave the selected mode **D/S** and secure the vehicle with the brake pedal.

Stopping

› Keep the brake pedal depressed.
› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
› Choose the **P** mode.
› Turn off the engine.

When turning off the engine in mode **D**, **S** or **R** then mode **P** is automatically selected.

Driving in neutral

If the system detects that no gear is engaged while driving, it automatically switches to neutral position.

will be displayed in the instrument cluster.

For vehicles with the e-TEC drive, the engine can also be switched off. Ⓐ will be displayed in the instrument cluster.

Requirements for driving in neutral position

✓ **D** mode is chosen.
✓ Neither the accelerator nor the brake pedal is pressed.
✓ The vehicle speed is 20-130 km/h.
✓ There is no device connected to the trailer socket.

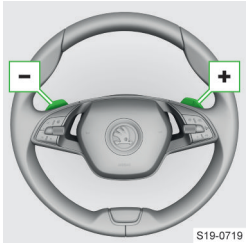
Acceleration on start-up (launch control)

This function allows maximum acceleration during start-up.

› Select **S** mode or manual shift mode.
› Disable the TCS » page 157.
› Keep the brake pedal depressed.
› Fully depress the accelerator.
› Release the brake pedal.

The vehicle drives with maximum acceleration.

Manually changing gear with the shift paddles on the steering wheel



- Changing down a gear
+ Changing up a gear

› To **switch on** the shift paddle, press - or +.
› To **turn off** the shift paddle, hold + or select another mode.

If none of the shift paddles are pressed in mode **D** for a certain time, manual shift mode turns off automatically.
In mode **S**, there is no automatic switch-off of the manual switching mode.

If the engine threatens to over-rev

▸ The gearbox automatically changes to the next higher gear.
▸ The transmission prevents changing to the next lower gear.

Troubleshooting

The automatic transmission mode cannot be set in the usual way

› Manually unlock the selector lever » page 150.

Gearbox overheated

illuminates together with ⚠
Message regarding the gearbox overheating

› You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution.

illuminates together with ⚠
Message regarding the gearbox overheating

› Stop driving! Stop the vehicle and stop the engine.
› After the indicator light goes out, your journey can continue.
› If the warning light does not go out, stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Gearbox impaired

illuminates together with ⚠
Message regarding the gearbox in emergency mode

› You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution.
› Immediately seek the help of a specialist garage.

illuminates together with ⚠
Message regarding a gearbox fault

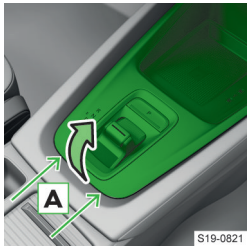
› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Starting up a vehicle that is stuck

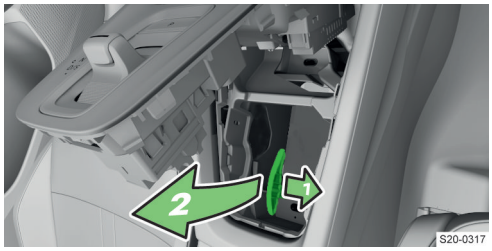
› Adjust the selector lever between **D/S** and **R**. The vehicle will then start to rock and be easier to free.

Manual release of automatic gearbox

› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.



› Insert a flat-head screwdriver or push a similar tool into the gap in the area of arrow A.
› Carefully loosen and lift the quadrant cover.
› Take out the foam.



› Loosen the drawbar in the direction of the arrow 1.
› Pull the drawbar until it stops in the direction of arrow 2.

Vehicle driving mode

Usage

The driving mode offers the possibility of adapting the driving behaviour to the desired driving style.

Overview

Information about the selected driving mode is displayed in the status bar in the digital instrument cluster.

Eco mode

Eco mode is suitable for a relaxed style of driving and helps to save fuel.

Comfort mode

Comfort mode is suitable for driving on roads with poorer surface or for long motorway journeys.

Normal mode

The Normal mode is suitable for a conventional driving.

Sport mode

The Sport mode is suitable for a sporty driving.

Individual mode

The Individual mode allows the individual configuration of certain vehicle systems.

Offroad mode

Offroad mode is suitable for driving on non-paved roads. But even with Offroad mode switched on, your vehicle is never a true SUV.

The following brake and stabilisation systems change in Offroad mode.

▸ ESC.
▸ ASR.
▸ EDL.
▸ ABS.

When switched on Offroad mode lights up ⛰ and in the instrument cluster.

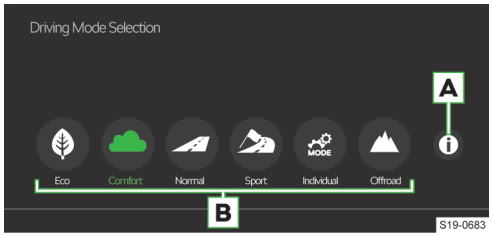
Operation

Select driving mode

› Press the MODE button.

In the Infotainment, a driving mode menu appears.

Press the button again MODE and the menu is closed.



A Information on the system settings of the currently selected mode/system settings for the selected Individual mode

B Driving mode menu

› Tap the relevant function surface B.

After switching on the ignition, Normal mode is automatically selected.

Troubleshooting

Adaptive DCC suspension faulty

illuminates together with ⚠

› Drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Economical driving style

Tips for economical driving and evaluation of driving economy

Tips for economical driving

- Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.
- Follow the gear recommendation in the display of the instrument cluster.
- Avoid full acceleration and too high speeds.
- Avoid engine idling during longer periods of stationary time.
- Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine starts.
- Observe the prescribed tyre pressure » page 195.
- Remove unnecessary ballast.
- Remove the roof rack when it is not needed.
- Switch on electric consumers only for as long as necessary.
- Do not leave the windows open while driving.

Consumption-friendly driving

In the following situations, a small reduction in fuel consumption occurs. ECO lights up in the instrument cluster.

- Active cylinder management has temporarily disabled some cylinders in the engine (applies to certain engine types).
- A vehicle with automatic transmission rolls in neutral position.

Towing a trailer

What you should be mindful of

⚠ **WARNING**

When driving with a trailer, special care is required!

NOTICE

With frequent towing, the vehicle is excessively loaded so this must also be checked between service intervals.

Recommendations for using a trailer

- Adjust the tyre pressure on the vehicle for full load.
- Do not exceed the maximum permissible total weight of the vehicle and the combination weight specified in the technical vehicle documentation (e.g. in the vehicle registration documentation, in the COC document) and on the type plate.
- For trailer operation, consider the current load condition of the vehicle as well as the distribution of the load in the trailer. The coupled trailer increases the rear axle load and can therefore reduce the payload.
- Adjust the headlight range of the headlights according to the load status of the vehicle. The front of the vehicle may lift up when a trailer is being towed and the headlights may dazzle other road users.
- A speed of **100 km/h** should not be exceeded.
- Reduce the speed by releasing the accelerator pedal as soon as a pendulum movement of the trailer is noticeable. Never attempt to stop the trailer from swaying by accelerating.
- If the traffic area behind the trailer can not be viewed, install additional exterior mirrors.
- Apply the brakes in good time. If the trailer is fitted with a trailer brake, apply the brakes gently at first, then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the trailer wheels locking.
- Select a lower gear before descending to also use the braking force of the engine.

Distribution of the load over the vehicle and trailer combination

- Secure heavy objects against slipping, as close to the trailer axle as possible.
- Transport small and light objects in the luggage compartment.

Permitted trailer loads

The details in the technical vehicle documentation take precedence over the information in this Owner's Manual.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
▶ Do not exceed the permissible trailer load.

Engine type	Gearbox	Permissible trailer load, braked (kg) [a]		Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	
		Octavia	Octavia Combi	Octavia	Octavia Combi
1.5 l/96 kW TSI G-TEC	Manual gearbox	- [b]	- [b]	- [b]	- [b]
	DSG [c]	1400	1400	700	710
1.0 l/81 kW TSI e-TEC	DSG [c]	1300	1300	670	670
1.5 l/110 kW TSI e-TEC	DSG [c]	1500	1500	680	690
1.0 l/81 kW TSI	Manual gearbox	1300	1300	650	650
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	Manual gearbox	1500	1500	650	660
	Automatic gearbox	1500	1500	670	670
1.5 l/110 kW TSI	Manual gearbox	1500	1500	660	670/690 [d]
2.0 l/140 kW TSI	DSG [c]	1600	1600	710	710
	DSG [c] 4x4	- [b]	- [b]	- [b]	- [b]
1.6 l/81 kW MPI	Automatic gearbox	1200	1200	650	660
2.0 l/85 kW TDI CR	Manual gearbox	1500	1500	710	710/730 [d]
	DSG [c]	1500	1500	710	720
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	Manual gearbox	1600	1600	710	710
	DSG [c]	1600	1600	730	730
	DSG [c] 4x4	2000	2000	750	750
2.0 l/147 kW TDI CR	DSG [c] 4x4	2000	2000	750	750

[a] With gradients up to 12%.
[b] The values were not available at the time of going to press.
[c] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.
[d] Applies to the vehicles Octavia Combi Scout.

Engine type	Gearbox	Permissible trailer load, braked (kg) [a]		Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	
		Octavia RS	Octavia Combi RS	Octavia RS	Octavia Combi RS
2.0 l/180 kW TSI	Manual gearbox	1600	1600	740	750
	DSG [b]	1600	1600	750	750
2.0 l/147 kW TDI CR	DSG [b]	1600	1600	750	750
	DSG [b] 4x4	2000	2000	750	750

[a] With gradients up to 12%.
[b] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.

Towing eye and towing procedure

Towing lug

Removing the front cap



› Press on the cap and remove it.

Removing the rear cap



› Press on the cap and remove it.

Installing the towing eye



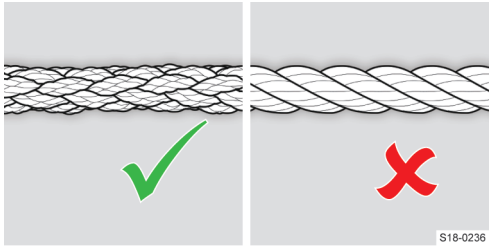
› Screw in the towing eye.
› Insert the wheel wrench or similar object through the towing eye.
› Tighten the towing eye.

After the towing process

› Unscrew the towing eye.
› Insert the cover cap.

Towing the vehicle

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of accident!
▸ The tow rope must not be twisted.
▸ When towing, drive at a speed of max. 50 km/h.



⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of accident!
▸ Use a braided synthetic fibre rope for towing. Do not use a twisted tow rope.

NOTICE
▸ Always keep the tow rope taut during towing.
▸ Do not exceed a towing distance of 50 km.

NOTICE
Danger of gearbox damage!
▸ If the gearbox no longer contains any oil, the vehicle must only be towed with the front axle raised clear of the ground or transported on a special breakdown vehicle.
▸ Vehicles with automatic transmission must not be towed without the ignition switched on or with the rear axle raised.

Where should the tow rope or the tow bar be secured?
▸ At the front towing eye
▸ At the rear towing eye
▸ On the ball bar of the factory-installed towing hitch

For vehicles with factory-fitted towing device, at the back there is no mount for a screw-in towing eye.

Information for the driver of the towing vehicle
› Drive slowly and smoothly.
› Only accelerate once the rope is taut.

Information for the driver of the towed vehicle
› Move the shift lever to the neutral position or the selector lever to the **N** position.
› If it is not possible to start the engine, switch on the ignition!

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of accident!
When the ignition is switched off, the brake booster and the power steering do not work. In addition, there is a risk that the steering lock will engage.
▸ If it is not possible to start the engine, switch on the ignition!

Brakes

What you should be mindful of

⚠ **WARNING**
Problems and faults with the brake system can extend the braking distance of the vehicle!

⚠ **DANGER**
Danger of a functional restriction of the brake booster!
▸ When braking in a vehicle with manual transmission, when the vehicle is in gear and at low revs, depress the clutch pedal.

⚠ **DANGER**
Danger of the brakes overheating!
▸ Do not depress the brake pedal unless braking is required.
▸ If the original front spoiler is damaged, ensure the air supply to the front brakes is guaranteed.

Inspecting the brake fluid level

Test conditions
✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface
✓ The engine is off

Checking



The fill level must be within the marked range.
› If the level is below the mark **MIN**, do not continue.
› Do not refill liquid.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

If the brake fluid level is too low, this will be indicated in the instrument cluster by the illumination of (!) is displayed in the status bar. Nevertheless, we recommend checking the brake fluid level regularly directly at the reservoir.

⚠ **WARNING**
Danger of brake failure!
If the fluid level falls significantly within a short time or drops below the mark **MIN**, the brake system may have become leaky.
▸ Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Specification
The brake fluid must comply with standard VW 501 14. This standard complies with the requirements of the FMVSS 116 DOT4 standard.

Changing
Have the brake fluid replaced by a specialist garage.

⚠ **WARNING**
Danger of brake failure!
If the brake fluid change date is exceeded, heavy braking may cause vapour bubbles to form in the brake system.

Troubleshooting

Brake fluid level is too low
(!) illuminates
› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Brake system and anti-lock braking system faulty
(!) illuminates together with (ABS)
› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Worn brake pads
illuminates
› Drive to a specialist garage, exercising appropriate caution.

Reduced braking effect
Damp, frozen, salt-affected or corroded brakes can impair the braking effect.
› Clean the brakes by braking several times if traffic conditions allow it.

When the engine is stopped, the brake booster does not work
› Depress the brake pedal more forcefully.

Electric parking brake

Operation

⚠ **WARNING**
Danger of key locking!
▸ The recessed grip for the fingers in front of the button (P) must remain empty.

Manual switch on



› Pull the button (P) and hold it.

The following symbols light up.
▸ (P) in the button.
▸ (P) in the instrument cluster.

Automatic switching on, after switching off the ignition
For vehicles with manual transmission, the parking brake is automatically switched on after switching off the ignition.

The function is activated or deactivated as follows in the Infotainment system.

› MENU > > > *Outside* .
› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Brakes* .
› Select *Brakes* menu item and activate or deactivate the function.

NOTICE
Danger of damage to vehicle!
▸ Switch off the parking brake in situations when it is necessary to roll the vehicle.

Automatic shut-off
The parking brake switches off automatically when starting up.

If automatic switch-off is to be prevented, e.g. when starting off on a slope, keep the button (P) pulled.

Conditions for automatic shutting down
✓ Driver's door is closed, in some cases, the driver's seat belt is also fastened

Manual shut-down



› With the ignition switched on, press the brake pedal and at the same time push the (P) button.

Troubleshooting

Parking brake error

(P) illuminates

Message regarding a parking brake error

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Parking on a steep slope

(P) flashes

Notification regarding parking position on a steep slope

› Go to another parking spot where there is less of a slope.

Noise when using the parking brake
Noise when using the parking brake is normal. This is not a defect.

The 12 volt vehicle battery is discharged, the parking brake cannot be switched off
› Connect the 12 volt vehicle battery to a power source, such as the 12 volt vehicle battery of another vehicle.

Emergency braking in case of faulty brake system

Switching on



› Pull the button (P) and hold it.

The vehicle starts to brake **sharply** and an acoustic signal is sounded.

Switching off
› Release the button (P).

Or:

› Depress the accelerator pedal.

Auto Hold automatic holding function

Usage

Auto Hold automatically secures the vehicle from rolling away when stopped.

Functionality

WARNING
Risk of an accident!
Auto Hold is not able to stop the vehicle under all circumstances, such as on slippery ground, or on gradients.

Secure and release the vehicle
With **Stop**, the vehicle is automatically **secured** using Auto Hold. AUTO HOLD lights up in the instrument cluster. The brake pedal can be released.

With **Start**, the vehicle is automatically **released** using Auto Hold.

Automatic protection from the parking brake
Under certain circumstances, the vehicle can be secured using the parking brake. (P) lights up in the instrument cluster.

Operating conditions

✓ The driver's door is closed.
✓ The engine is running or has been switched off by the START-STOPP system.
✓ Auto Hold is activated.
✓ The automatic transmission N mode is not selected.

Settings

Activation/deactivation
› Press the Ⓐ button.

Activation is indicated by the illumination of the symbol Ⓐ in the button.

NOTICE
Disable Auto Hold to allow the vehicle to roll if necessary when driving through a car wash.

Driver assist systems

Braking and stabilising systems

Overview

Stabilisation control (ESC)
ESC helps to stabilize the vehicle in borderline situations (e.g. when the vehicle starts to skid). ESC brakes the individual wheels to maintain the direction of travel.

 flashes - ESC is engaged

ESC Sport
ESC Sport allows for a sportier driving style.

 lit up - ESC Sport is activated

Traction control (TCS)
ASR helps to stabilize the vehicle when accelerating or driving on low-grip roads. ASR reduces the drive power transmitted to the wheels when the wheels spin.

 flashes - ASR is engaged

Antilock braking system (ABS)
ABS helps maintain control of the vehicle during emergency braking. An ABS intervention is noticeable by pulsating movements of the brake pedal.

Motor Slip Regulation (MSR)
MSR helps to maintain control of the vehicle in the event of a sudden reduction in speed, e.g. on icy roads. If the drive wheels lock, MSR increases the engine speed. This reduces the braking effect of the engine and the wheels can rotate freely again.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)
EDL helps to stabilize the vehicle when driving on road surfaces with different grip under the individual wheels. EDL brakes a spinning wheel and transmits power to a different drive wheel.

Electronic Differential Lock (XDL+)
XDL + helps to stabilize the vehicle during fast cornering by braking the inside wheel of the driven axle.

Active steering assistance (DSR)
In difficult situations, the DSR provides the driver with a steering recommendation in order to stabilise the vehicle.

Hill Hold Control
Hill Hold Control helps when starting off on uphill gradients by braking the vehicle for about 2 seconds after the brake pedal is released.

Operating conditions
✓ The gradient is at least 5%.
✓ The driver's door is closed.

Multi-Collision Brake (MCB)
MCB helps to decelerate and stabilize the vehicle after a collision with an obstacle. This reduces the risk of further collisions.

Operating conditions
✓ There has been a frontal, side and rear collision of a certain severity.
✓ The impact speed was greater than 10 km/h.
✓ The brakes, ESC and other required systems remained functional after the impact.
✓ The accelerator pedal is not pressed.

Trailer Stability Assist (TSA)
TSA helps to stabilize the trailer. As the trailer begins to lurch, TSA stabilizes the trailer by slowing down the individual vehicle wheels.

Operating conditions
✓ The hitch was supplied from the factory or purchased from ŠKODA Genuine Accessories.
✓ The trailer is connected to the trailer socket.
✓ ASR activated.
✓ The driving speed is higher than 60 km/h.

Electromechanical brake booster (eBKV)
eBKV (electronic brake force distribution) facilitates operation of the brake pedal.

After switching off the ignition, the eBKV (electronic brake force distribution) function is either restricted or not available.

If the vehicle is decelerated using an assistance system, pulsating movements of the brake pedal can occur.

Settings

Deactivating/activating ASR
› Press the SET button under the Infotainment.

In the displayed menu in the Infotainment, the function can be deactivated or activated.

When deactivated, lights up in the instrument cluster.

goes out on renewed activation.

Deactivating the ASR may be helpful in the following situations:
▸ Driving with snow chains.
▸ Driving in deep snow or on very loose ground.
▸ Starting up a vehicle that is stuck.

Activate/deactivate ESC Sport
› Press the SET button under the Infotainment.

In the displayed menu in the Infotainment, the function can be deactivated or activated.

When deactivated, lights up in the instrument cluster.

goes out on renewed activation.

Troubleshooting

ESC or ASR faulty/deactivated by the system
illuminates
› Stop the engine and start again.
› If the indicator light does not go out after covering a short distance, seek the help of a specialist garage.

ABS faulty
illuminates
› You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Brake system and anti-lock braking system faulty
illuminates together with
› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Electromechanical brake booster faulty
illuminates
› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Front Assist

Functionality

Front Assist monitors the distance to the vehicle ahead and points out when the safety distance is exceeded. In borderline situations, it helps to avoid a collision by braking interventions.

Status display in the instrument cluster display
illuminates - safety distance too small

illuminates - warning in case of collision

Automatic braking if there is a risk of a collision
If there is a risk of a collision, the following symbol is illuminated as a warning from the isolation box. If you do not respond to the warning, the vehicle will slow down.

At a driving speed of up to 30 km / h, the vehicle is braked without prior warning.

Automatic braking can be stopped by pressing the accelerator pedal or by a steering intervention.

With automatic braking, the pressure in the brake system increases. The brake pedal cannot be operated by using the pedal as normal.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
Front Assist does not respond to crossing or oncoming vehicles.

Operating conditions

✓ The parking aid is activated.
✓ The driving speed is higher than 5 km/h.

Function restriction

The function may be restricted or unavailable in the following cases:

▸ About 30 seconds after starting (lights up in the instrument cluster)
▸ When driving around a sharp bend
▸ During an ESC intervention

Settings

Automatic activation
Front Assist is automatically activated when the ignition is switched on.

Activation/deactivation in the instrument cluster
› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.
› Select *Front Assist* .

Activation / deactivation and setting in Infotainment
In the menu MENU > > .

■
▸ *Active* - Activation/deactivation of the Front Assist
▸ *Advance warning* - Activation/deactivation and setting the distance level at which a warning occurs
▸ *Display distance warning* - Activation/deactivation of distance warning
▸ *Swerve support* - if the function is activated, the system can help avoid an obstacle by a braking and steering intervention
▸ *Cornering brake function* - when the function is activated, the system can slow down the vehicle when turning at low speeds to avoid a collision with the oncoming vehicle

Show system deactivation in the display of the instrument cluster
illuminates

ⓘ Deactivate Front Assist when handling the vehicle on a truck, a car ferry etc.

Troubleshooting

Front Assist is not available
illuminates together with ⚠
› Clean the front radar sensor.
› Stop the engine and start again.
› If Front Assist is still unavailable, check the brake lights on the vehicle or on the attached trailer.
› If the brake lights are working and Front Assist is still unavailable, seek the help of a specialist garage.

There was an unfounded warning or system intervention
› Clean the front radar sensor.
› If the system is not working properly, disable Front Assist and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Pedestrian detection system

Functionality

Pedestrian recognition helps to prevent a collision with crossing or lengthwise moving pedestrians by enabling automatic braking interventions.

Status display in the instrument cluster display
lights up - Danger of collision

Risk of collision in a speed range of 5-30 km/h
The system triggers automatic braking.

Risk of collision in a speed range of 30-85 km/h
The system warns of a collision hazard first. If the driver does not respond, the vehicle is automatically braked.

Operating conditions

✓ Front Assist is deactivated.
✓ The vehicle speed is 5-85 km/h.

Speed limiter

Functionality

The speed limiter controls the maximum driving speed according to the set speed limit.

If the limit is exceeded when driving downhill, brake the vehicle with the brake pedal.

Status display in the instrument cluster display
LIM illuminates - the cruise control is activated.
flashing - the set limit is exceeded

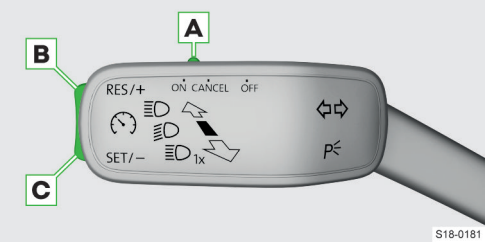
When the regulation starts highlighted and the set limit is displayed.

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is higher than 30 km/h.

Operation

Variant without cruise control

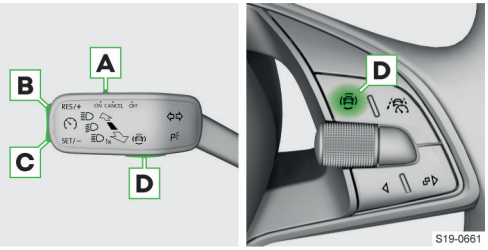


A **ON** Activate limiter (control inactive)
OFF Deactivate limiter
CANCEL Interrupt control (sprung position)

B **RES/+** Resume control[1] / Increase limit

C **SET/-** Start control with current speed / Reduce limit

Variant with cruise control



A **ON** Activate cruise control (condition for the subsequent activation of the limiter).
To **enable the speed limiter**, press the button D and in the instrument cluster choose the menu item *Speed limit* .
OFF Deactivate limiter
CANCEL Interrupt control (sprung position)

B **RES/+** Resume control[1] / Increase limit

C **SET/-** Start control with current speed / Reduce limit

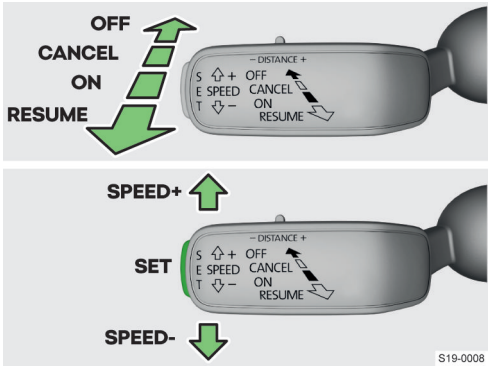
D Show menu of assist systems - Possibility of switching between cruise control and speed limiter
Switching to cruise control interrupts the control.

Adjusting the speed limit with the buttons B and C

By pressing in steps of **1 km/h**.

By holding in steps of **10 km/h**.

Variant with ACC



ON Activate ACC (condition for the subsequent activation of the limiter). To enable the speed limiter, press the button and in the multifunction steering wheel and in the instrument cluster choose the menu item *Speed limit* .

RESUME Resume control [1] / Increase limit in steps of 1 km/h (sprung position)

CANCEL Stop control (sprung position)

OFF Deactivate the limiter

SPEED + Increase limit in steps of 10 km/h

SPEED – Decrease limit in steps of 10 km/h

SET Start control/Reduce limit in steps of 1 km/h

Limit exceeded

› **Fully depress** the accelerator.

Control will continue as soon as the vehicle has decelerated to below the set limit.

Troubleshooting

Speed limiter faulty

! LIM illuminates

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Cruise control system

Functionality

The cruise control system maintains the set speed without the accelerator pedal having to be operated.

[1] If no speed limit is set, the current speed is set as the speed limit.

This, however, is only possible to the extent permitted by the engine output and braking power of the vehicle.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of the cruise control system starting unintentionally!
▸ Deactivate cruise control after use.

Status display in the instrument cluster display
illuminated - the cruise control system is activated

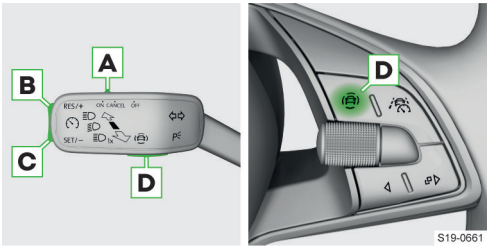
illuminated - cruise control is active
When cruise control starts, the set speed is displayed.

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is higher than 20 km/h.

Operation

Operating with the lever



A **ON** Activate cruise control (cruise control deactivated)
OFF Deactivate cruise control
CANCEL Interrupt control (sprung position)

B **RES/+** Resume cruise control[1]/Increase speed

C **SET/-** Start control with current speed/Reduce limit

D Show menu of assist systems - Possibility of switching between cruise control and speed limiter

Accelerate temporarily
› Depress the accelerator pedal.

Releasing the accelerator pedal will cause the speed to drop again to the set speed.

Interrupting cruise control
▸ After pressing the brake pedal
▸ After an ESC intervention

Troubleshooting

Cruise control system faulty
illuminates
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Functionality

ACC control
ACC maintains the set speed. When your vehicle approaches the vehicle in front, ACC will automatically start to maintain the set distance to this vehicle.

Maintaining the set speed and the distance will hereinafter be referred to as **Control**.

⚠ **WARNING**
ACC does not respond to crossing or oncoming objects.

ACC is intended primarily for use on motorways.

pACC (predictive cruise control)
pACC represents an extension of the ACC system.

pACC adjusts the speed according to recognized speed limits and the route, e.g. curves, intersections or roundabouts.

The system uses the following sources to evaluate the situation:

▸ Navigation data
▸ Traffic Sign Recognition
▸ Sensors, radars and cameras

⚠ **WARNING**
pACC does not respond to railway crossings.

Speed range
Depending on the equipment, ACC allows a speed setting in the range of 30-210 km/h.

If control is started at a speed of less than 30 km/h on vehicles with an automatic transmission, the speed is automatically increased to 30 km/h or controlled according to the speed of the vehicle ahead.

Distance level
The distance to the vehicle ahead can be adjusted to five different levels.

⚠ **WARNING**
▸ Maintain a minimum distance in accordance with the country-specific legal regulations.

Automatic stop and start with manual gearbox
A vehicle with manual gearbox can be decelerated to a stop using the ACC and start moving again.

[1] If no speed is set, the current speed is adopted.

› When stopping, move the shift lever in due time to the neutral position.

Or:

› Depress the clutch pedal.

Control is disconnected in case of longer holding periods.

› Set off to resume control.

The control is interrupted when the brake pedal is depressed.

Automatic stop and start with automatic gearbox
A vehicle with an automatic transmission can be decelerated to a stop using the ACC and start moving again. Control is disconnected in case of longer holding periods.

To resume the regulation:

› Depress the accelerator pedal.

Or:

› Set the lever in position **RESUME**.

Or:

› *Applies to vehicles with hand recognition on the steering wheel:* Grab the steering wheel again.

The control is interrupted when the brake pedal is depressed.

Overtaking
If your vehicle changes to the fast lane and no vehicle is detected in front, ACC accelerates up to the set speed.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

illuminates - ACC is activated

illuminates - Control is active

When the control starts, the set speed is displayed.

illuminates - ACC does not decelerate sufficiently

› Depress the brake pedal.

illuminates - ACC controls the driving speed according to the permissible speed

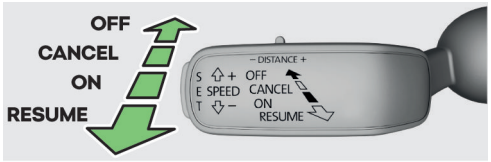
illuminates - ACC controls the driving speed according to the approaching roundabout

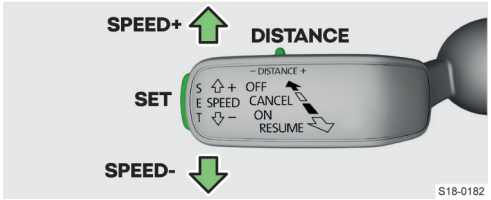
illuminates - ACC controls the driving speed according to the approaching junction

illuminates - ACC controls the driving speed according to the road

Operation

Operating with the lever





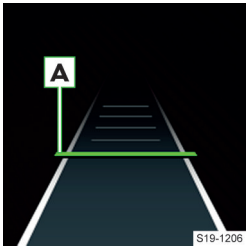
ON	Activate ACC (control inactive)
RESUME	Start or resume control/Increase speed in steps of 1 km/h (sprung position)
CANCEL	Stop control (sprung position)
OFF	Deactivate ACC
SPEED +	Increase speed in steps of 10 km/h
SPEED –	Reduce speed in steps of 10 km/h
DISTANCE	Set distance level
SET	Start control/Reduce speed in steps of 1 km/h

Starting control with the current speed
› Tap on **SET**.

Or:

› If no speed is saved, move the lever to the sprung position **RESUME**.

Set distance level
› Move the **DISTANCE** switch to the sprung position **–** or **+**.



Line **A** appears in the display, indicating the change in distance.

› Use the **DISTANCE** switch to set the desired distance level.

For temporary acceleration
› Depress the accelerator pedal.

The vehicle accelerates and control is temporarily interrupted. Upon releasing the accelerator, control is resumed.

Interrupting cruise control
- ▶ After pressing the brake pedal
- ▶ By operating the clutch pedal for a long time
- ▶ After an ESC intervention
- ▶ After deactivation of the ASR

Resuming control
› If a speed is stored, move the lever to the sprung position **RESUME**.

The vehicle is controlled at the set speed. The set speed is shown in the instrument cluster display.

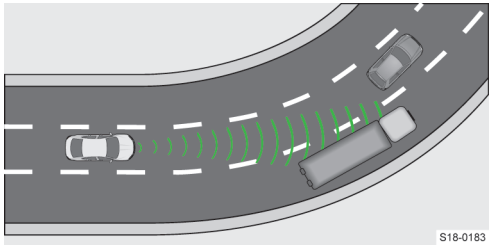
Function restriction

Do not use the ACC in the following cases:
- ▶ The vehicle is making a sharp turn.
- ▶ The vehicle is travelling on a sloping road or in ruts.
- ▶ When the driving lane is too narrow.
- ▶ The vehicle drives through a construction site.

⚠ **WARNING**
- ▶ Be particularly attentive and alert in the following situations.

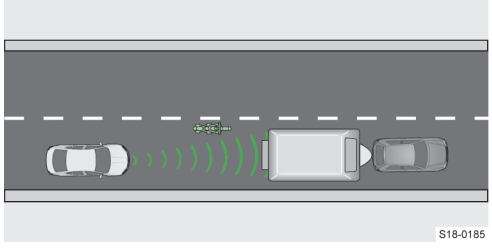
Regulation according to the vehicle in the adjacent lane
If your vehicle is moving faster than the vehicle in the next lane on the driver's side, at a speed of more than 80 km/h, this may cause your vehicle to be controlled according to that vehicle.

When cornering



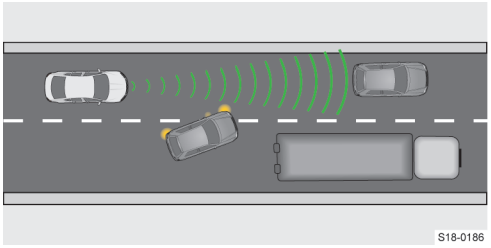
When cornering, a vehicle in the next lane may enter the detected area. Your vehicle will be controlled according to this vehicle.

Narrow or staggered vehicle



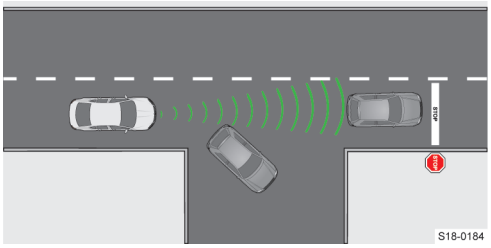
ACC detects a narrow or staggered vehicle only when it is in the area covered by the radar.

Lane change by another vehicle



A vehicle that changes to the lane a short distance away may not be recognized by the ACC in time.

Stationary vehicle



If a vehicle in front turns and there is a stationary vehicle in front of this vehicle, the ACC must not respond to the stationary vehicle.

Vehicles with special load or special bodies
A load or superstructure that protrudes outside the vehicle might not be detected by the ACC.

Settings

Activation / deactivation and setting
In the Infotainment system, in the menu **MENU** > ⚙ > 🚗.

■ 

- ▶ *Driving profile:* - Setting the vehicle acceleration when the ACC is switched on (this setting is made for vehicles with driving mode selection » page 150)
- ▶ *Last distance selected* - Switch on/off the last distance selected
- ▶ *Distance:* - Setting the distance to vehicles in front
- ▶ *Road layout preview* - Switch the cruise control on/off according to the road profile (e.g. reduce speed before a bend)
- ▶ *Speed limit preview* - Switch the speed control on/off according to the permissible speed

Troubleshooting

ACC not available

illuminates together with ⚠

› Stop the engine and start again.
› If ACC is still unavailable, check the brake lights on the vehicle or on the attached trailer.
› If the brake lights are working and ACC is still unavailable, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Lane Assist

Usage

Lane Assist helps to keep the vehicle within the lane. It is based on the boundaries of a lane. These may include lane markings, road edges or objects such as curbs or possibly traffic cones.

The system is intended primarily for use on highways.

Functionality

As the vehicle approaches a lane marking, the system executes a steering movement in the opposite direction from the lane marking. The steering intervention can be overridden manually.

No system intervention occurs when changing lane with the turn signal on.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

lights up - System is activated and ready to intervene

lights up - System intervenes

Display



Lane boundary highlighted on the right: system intervenes on the right when approaching the lane marking.

Warning through steering wheel vibrations
The steering wheel vibrations are triggered in the following situations:

▸ The vehicle crosses the boundary line without the indicator light switched on.
▸ The system is not able to keep the vehicle within the lane.

› Correct the steering movement in the event of vibrations.

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is higher than 60 km/h.
✓ The lane markings are clearly visible.

Function restriction

The system function may be restricted in the following cases:

▸ The field of view of the sensor is limited by a dirty screen or an obstacle or a preceding vehicle.
▸ If the weather conditions are unfavourable.
▸ The vehicle is making a sharp turn.
▸ The vehicle is travelling on a sloping road or in ruts.
▸ When the driving lane is too narrow.
▸ The vehicle drives through a construction site.

⚠ **WARNING**
Danger of incorrect steering intervention!
Certain objects or markings on the road may be erroneously recognized as lane markings.
▸ Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be prepared to override the steering intervention.

Settings

Automatic activation
Lane Assist is **always** automatically activated when the ignition is switched on.

Activation/deactivation in the instrument cluster
› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.
› Select *Lane Assist* .

Activation/deactivation in Infotainment
In the menu MENU > > .

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability
› Clean the windscreen in the sensor area.
› Stop the engine and restart again after a short time.
› If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Travel Assist

Usage

Travel Assist helps to keep the vehicle within the lane while controlling the speed of the vehicle.

Functionality

Travel Assist uses the functions Lane Assist and ACC.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
- ▸ Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to take over the steering.
- ▸ The notes in the functional description of Lane Assist and ACC are to be taken into account.

Adaptive lane assist
This function keeps the driver within the selected position within the lane.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

 is lit up – the system is activated, cruise control and adaptive lane guidance are active

 is lit up – the system is activated, cruise control is active

 is lit up – the system is activated, adaptive lane guidance is active

 lights up - you have let go of the steering wheel, take over steering

 lights up - you have released the steering wheel, take over steering immediately

Operating conditions

✓ The ACC is activated.
✓ The vehicle speed is max. 210 km/h.
✓ The lane markings are clearly visible.

Function restriction

Travel Assist is only for support and does not absolve you from your responsibility for driving the vehicle.

The function may be restricted or unavailable in the following cases:

- ▸ The field of view of the sensor is limited by a dirty screen or an obstacle or a preceding vehicle.
- ▸ If the weather conditions are unfavourable.
- ▸ The vehicle is making a sharp turn.
- ▸ The vehicle is travelling on a sloping road or in ruts.
- ▸ When the driving lane is too narrow.

In addition to these restrictions, also note the ACC restrictions » page 162.

⚠ **WARNING**
Danger of incorrect steering intervention!
Certain objects or markings on the road may be erroneously recognized as lane markings.
- ▸ Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be prepared to override the steering intervention.

Settings

Activation
› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Regulation with the current speed and adaptive lane assist are started.

Deactivation
› Depress the brake pedal.

Or:

› Set the ACC lever in position **CANCEL** » page 161.

ⓘ Additional settings are identical to ACC and Lane Assist.

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability
› Follow the troubleshooting instructions in case of Lane Assist » page 163 and ACC » page 163.
› If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Lane change assist system Side Assist

Usage

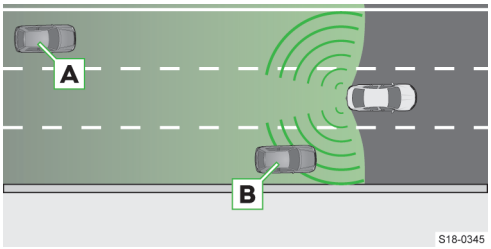
The system uses optical signals in the exterior mirror to alert the driver to vehicles that could be dangerous when changing lanes.

Functionality

The system monitors the area both beside and behind the vehicle.

The system warns of an approaching vehicle through the indicator light ■ in the exterior mirror cover on the vehicle side, where the vehicle is recognized.

Driving situations in which a system warning occurs



Your vehicle is being overtaken by vehicle A. The faster vehicle A approaches, the sooner the warning is given by the indicator light.

Vehicle B is overtaken by your vehicle at a speed that is faster by max. 10 km/h. If the speed is higher during the overtaking process, no warning will be provided by the indicator light.

Indicator light

■ **illuminates** - There is another vehicle behind your vehicle

■ **flashing** - There is another vehicle behind your vehicle, and the turn signal on the same side is switched on

For vehicles with Lane Assist, the indicator light will also flash if your vehicle crosses the lane markings in the direction of the approaching vehicle. The system will trigger a steering wheel vibration in this case.

For this, Lane Assist must be activated and the lane marking between the vehicles must be detected.

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is higher than 15 km/h.
✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

Function restriction

The system cannot detect lane width. For this reason, it may, for example, draw attention to a vehicle in a distant lane in the following cases:

▸ The vehicle is driving on a road with narrow lanes or on the lane edge.
▸ The vehicle is taking a turn.

The system can draw attention to objects along the road, such as high guard rails or noise barriers.

In the following cases, the system does not have to issue a warning of a vehicle, or the warning may be issued incorrectly:

▸ If the weather conditions are unfavourable.
▸ A very fast approaching vehicle.
▸ The vehicle is driving through a sharp bend or a roundabout.

Settings

In the instrument cluster display
In the menu *Assist systems*.

In Infotainment
In the menu **MENU** > ⚙ > 🚘.

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability
› Stop the engine and start again.
› If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Traffic sign recognition

Usage

The road sign recognition shows road signs in the display of the instrument cluster. This also indicates exceeding the speed limit.

⚠ **WARNING**
Road signs on the road always have priority over the road signs shown on the display.

Functionality

Displayed road signs
▸ Speed limits
▸ Overtaking prohibited
▸ Driving bans – one-way traffic
▸ Danger sign
▸ Additional characters, e.g. speed limit in wet conditions

Towing a trailer
If a trailer or other accessory is connected to the trailer socket, trailer-relevant road signs are also displayed.

Driving on roads without speed limits
If you are on a road with no speed limits, the road signs ⓘ will appear in the display.

Example of road sign display



Example of additional characters



Example of several simultaneously recognised road signs.

At the same time, a red display regarding the speed limit appears in the speedometer.

Speed units
The speed indications in the road signs shown refer to the speed units that are common in the country.

For example, the display may refer to 30 km/h or 30 mph depending on the country.

Restriction

The system function may be restricted in the following cases:

- The sensor is blinded by the sun or oncoming traffic.
- The field of view of the sensor is limited by an obstacle or a preceding vehicle.
- If the weather conditions are unfavourable.
- The vehicle is moving at high speed.
- The road signs are hidden, damaged, or are non-standard.
- The road signs are attached to flashing neon signs.
- The navigation map documents are not up-to-date or not available.

Settings

Activation / deactivation and setting
In the Infotainment system, in the menu MENU > > .

- *Traffic Sign Recognition*
  - *Show in instrument cluster* - Activation/deactivation of the additional road signs in the display of the instrument cluster
  - *Speed warning:* - Configures a warning when the speed limit is exceeded
  - *Warning at over* - Increases the speed limit for the warning when exceeding the permitted speed
- *Trailer detection*
  - *Show road signs relevant to trailers* Activation/deactivation of the display of road signs relevant to trailers
  - *Use for route calculation* - Activation/deactivation taking trailers in account for route calculation in navigation
  - *Tap on maximum speed for trailers* - Setting the speed limits for trailer operation

Crew Protect Assist proactive occupant protection

Usage

The system of proactive occupant protection triggers measures to protect vehicle occupants in dangerous situations.

Functionality

If the system evaluates the situation as critical, it triggers the following safety measures:

- The hazard warning lights are switched on.
- Open windows are closed except for a small gap.
- The sliding/tilting roof is closed.
- The front seat belts are tightened on the body.

The system response depends on the selected driving mode.

Risk of frontal impact
Applies to vehicles with the Front Assist system.

The system triggers safety measures when it detects the impending danger of a frontal impact.

Risk of rear impact
Applies to vehicles with the lane change assist Side Assist.

The system triggers safety measures when it detects the impending danger of a rear impact.

Driver inactivity hazard
Applies to vehicles with assist systems for emergency situations.

The system triggers safety measures when it detects the impending danger if the driver is inactive.

Function restriction

The function may be restricted or unavailable in the following cases:

- When deactivating the ASR or activating the ESC Sport
- When reversing
- If there is a malfunction in the ESC, reversible seat belt or airbag system
- If there is a malfunction or limitation of the Front Assist system
- If there is a malfunction or restriction of the lane change assist system Side Assist
- If there is a malfunction or restriction of the Emergency Assist assist systems

Settings

Automatic activation
The system is automatically activated when the ignition is switched on.

Troubleshooting

Crew Protect Assist faulty
illuminates together with ⚠
Message concerning unavailability or functional restriction

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Driver Alert fatigue detection assistant

Functionality

Driver Alert evaluates the steering behaviour. If it detects fatigue in the driver, a break is recommended. In the display of the instrument cluster, the following symbol lights up from the isolation box.

⚠ **WARNING**
There will be no system warning during the so-called micro-sleep.

Resetting the break recommendation
The break recommendation is reset in the following cases:

- The vehicle stops and the ignition is switched off
- The vehicle stops, the seat belt is removed and the driver's door is opened
- The vehicle stops for more than 15 minutes

ⓘ In some situations, the system may erroneously issue a break recommendation.

Operating conditions

✓ Driving speed between 60-200 km/h.

Settings

Activation/deactivation
In the Infotainment system, in the menu MENU > ⚙ > .

Emergency situation assist systemEmergency Assist

Usage

The assist systems for emergencies detect inactivity of the driver, which, for example, can be caused by a sudden loss of consciousness. The system then performs measures as safely as possible to decelerate the vehicle to a stop.

The assist systems are only available for vehicles with an automatic gearbox.

Functionality

When the assist system detects inactivity on the part of the driver

- An acoustic warning signal sounds and a message appears in the instrument cluster display.
- If, after repeated warnings, the driver does not take over the steering, the hazard warning lights are switched on and the vehicle automatically brakes.
- After the vehicle has come to a standstill, the parking brake is switched on. Depending on the equipment, an emergency call can be initiated.

Interruption of automatic braking

- By pressing the brake or accelerator pedal
- By actively steering

Operating conditions

✓ Assist system for emergency situations is activated.
✓ Lane Assist is activated and the boundary lines of the traffic lane are recognised.

Settings

Automatic activation
The Assistant is automatically activated when the ignition is switched on.

Activation/deactivation
In the Infotainment system, in the menu MENU > ⚙ > .

Hill descent assistant

Functionality

The Hill Hold Control helps to maintain a constant speed when driving downhill through automatic brake interventions.

The system also works when driving in neutral or when reverse gear is engaged.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
The system cannot properly fulfil its function on slushy soil for physical reasons, e.g. ice or mud.

Status display in the instrument cluster display
lit up in grey – the system is activated

lit up white - the system intervenes

Change speed
The driving speed can be changed by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal. After releasing the pedal, the assist system maintains the current speed.

Operating conditions

✓ The engine is running.
✓ Offroad is activated.
✓ The slope is at least 10 %.
✓ Neither the accelerator nor the brake pedal is pressed.
✓ The vehicle speed is max. 30 km/h.

Settings

Automatic activation
The system will be automatically activated when you turn on Offroad mode.

Automatic recuperation assistant Eco Assist

Usage

Eco Assist supports an economical driving style with the help of instructions in the display of the instrument cluster.

Functionality

When the system detects that it is possible to drive more economically, the following information is shown in the display of the instrument cluster:

- Symbol for an approaching event. These include e.g. a speed limit, a crossing etc.
- - Recommendation to release the accelerator pedal

After releasing the accelerator pedal, the vehicle adapts the driving speed and recuperation to the current situation.

The system uses the following sources to evaluate the situation:

- Navigation data
- Traffic Sign Recognition
- Sensors, radars and cameras

Function restriction

The function cannot be used in the following cases:

- If the automatic distance control (ACC) is activated
- If the cruise control system is activated
- If Sport driving mode is selected

Settings

Activation/deactivation
In the Infotainment system, in the menu MENU > > .

Park Assist systems

Park Pilot parking aid

Functionality

If an obstacle is detected, the Infotainment will display a visible message and an audible signal will sound.

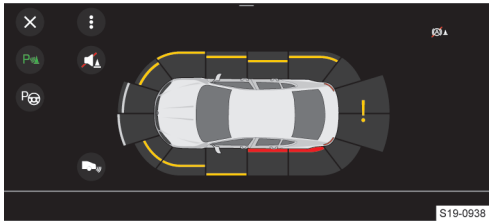
The interval between the signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced. At a distance of less than 30 cm from the obstacle, a continuous tone sounds.

If the driver does not respond to the warning, the system triggers automatic emergency braking at speeds below 8 km/h in order to reduce the impact.

Automatic braking can be activated and deactivated in the infotainment.

Display

The recorded areas vary according to the equipment.



- Acoustic signals on/off
- One-time deactivation/activation of automatic braking
- Park steering assistant
- Setting certain park assist systems
- ! System fault
- Change to the rear view camera display
- ■ Obstacle at a distance of less than 30 cm
- ■ Obstacle at a distance of more than 30 cm
- ☐ Obstacle outside the route

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is lower than 15 km/h.
✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

Turn on/turn off

Switching on
› Engage reverse gear.

Or:

› Press the P ASSIST button.

Automatic switch-on during forward travel
When approaching an obstacle at a speed of less than 10 km/h.

Automatic switch-on does not activate automatic braking.

Switching off
› Disengage reverse gear.

Or:

› Press the P ASSIST button.

Automatic switch off
The driving speed is higher than 15 km/h.

Function restriction

In the following cases, the system does not have to issue a warning of an obstacle, or the warning may be issued incorrectly:

▸ If the weather conditions are unfavourable.
▸ The detected obstacles are moving.
▸ Sensor signals are not reflected by the surface of the obstacles.
▸ It is a small obstacle, e.g. a stone or a pillar.

Settings

The system settings menu is displayed as follows:

› Press the P ASSIST button below the Infotainment > and tap the Infotainment screen.

Or:

› Press the P ASSIST button below the Infotainment > ⋮ > and tap the Infotainment screen.

Or:

› Engage reverse gear > in the infotainment screen tap the functional surface ⋮ > .

Troubleshooting

After switching on, an audible signal sounds for 3 seconds and there is no obstacle near the vehicle
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

After switching on, not all scanned areas are displayed on the Infotainment screen
› Move the vehicle a few meters forwards or backwards.
› If the scanned areas are still not displayed, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Rear view camera

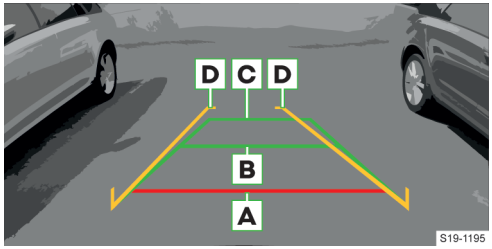
Functionality

When reversing, the area behind the vehicle is displayed in the Infotainment screen complete with orientation lines.

The camera is equipped with a cleaning system. Cleaning takes place automatically together with the washing of the rear window or with the aid of the functional surface in the Infotainment screen.

Orientation lines and functional surfaces

Orientation lines



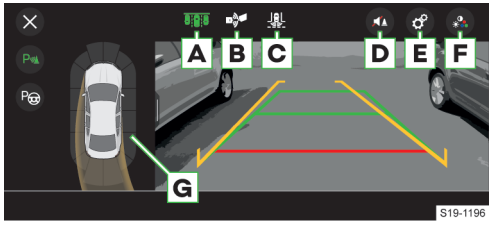
A Distance about 40 cm

B Distance about 100 cm

C Distance about 200 cm

D The lines indicate the track, which is controlled at the current steering angle. The distance between the side lines corresponds approximately to the vehicle width including mirrors.

Function surfaces



A Mode for transverse parking

B Mode for driving up to a trailer

C Mode for monitoring the area behind the vehicle (wide view)

D Switching audible parking signals on/off

E Setting the parking aid

F Brightness, contrast and colour settings of the image display
Functional surface for cleaning the rear view camera

G Parking Aid View

The full screen display of the parking aid is activated by tapping the view.

Operating conditions

✓ Ignition on

✓ Driving speed less than 15 km/h

Operation

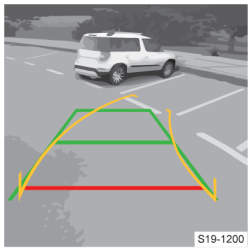
Switch on the system

› Engage reverse gear.

Or:

› Press the P ASSIST button below the Infotainment > and tap the Infotainment screen.

Mode for transverse parking



› Stop the vehicle in front of a suitable parking space.

› Reverse so that the yellow lines lead into the parking space.

› At the latest, stop when the red line touches the rear boundary (e.g. curb).

Mode for driving up to a trailer

On vehicles with a factory fitted tow-bar, this mode assists the driver when the vehicle is approaching a trailer draw bar. A line for approaching the trailer draw bar is displayed on the screen.

Mode for monitoring behind the vehicle

The area behind the vehicle is displayed on the screen.

Switch off the system

› Press the P ASSIST button under the Infotainment.

Or:

› Tap the functional surface × on the Infotainment screen.

Or:

› For vehicles with automatic transmission, choose mode P.

Automatic shut-off

The automatic system shut-off occurs when driving forward at a speed over 15 km/h.

Restriction

The camera image is distorted in contrast to the naked eye. The display may only be used to estimate the distance.

Some items may not be displayed properly on the screen. These include narrow columns, wire mesh fences, grids or road bumps.

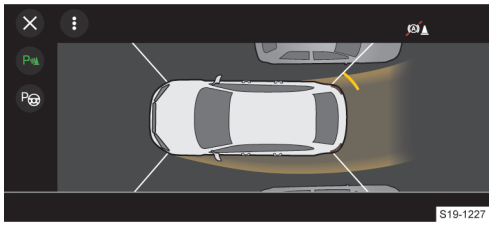
Area View, Top View

Usage

The area view assists the driver in parking and manoeuvring by displaying the vehicle area.

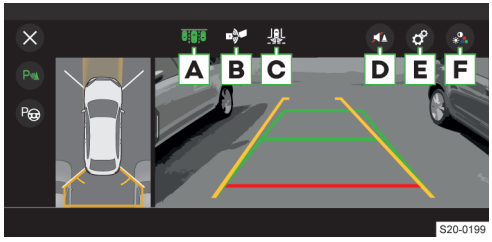
Overview

General overview



Selecting the camera image
The respective camera image is selected by touching the screen in the Infotainment in the area next to, in front of or behind the vehicle silhouette. The selected area is highlighted on the screen by a yellow border.

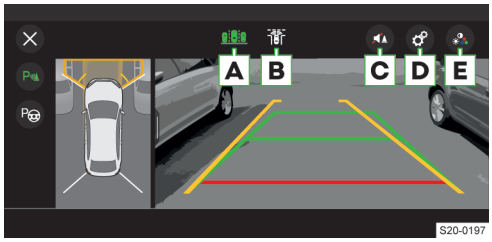
Camera rear view



- A Mode for transverse parking
- B Mode for driving up to a trailer
- C Mode for monitoring the area behind the vehicle (wide view)
- D Switching audible parking signals on/off
- E Setting the parking aid
- F Brightness, contrast and colour settings of the image display

  Functional surface for cleaning the rear view camera

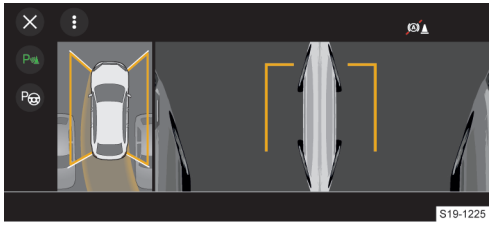
Front camera view



- A Mode for transverse parking
- B Mode for monitoring the area in front of the vehicle (wide view)
- C Switching audible parking signals on/off
- D Setting the parking aid
- E Brightness, contrast and colour settings of the image display

  Functional surface for cleaning the rear view camera

Side camera view



Left and right side

The yellow line is shown at a distance of about 40 cm from the vehicle.

Operating conditions

✓ Ignition on
✓ Driving speed less than 15 km/h

Operation

Switching on
› Engage reverse gear.

Or:

› Press the P ASSIST button below the Infotainment › P and tap the Infotainment screen.

Selecting the camera image

› In infotainment, tap the area next to, in front of or behind the vehicle silhouette. The selected area is highlighted on the screen by a yellow border.

Switching off

› Press the P ASSIST button under the Infotainment.

Or:

› Tap the functional surface × on the Infotainment screen.

Or:

› For vehicles with automatic transmission, choose mode **P**.

Automatic shut-off

The automatic system shut-off occurs when driving forward at a speed over 15 km/h.

Restriction

The camera image is distorted in contrast to the naked eye. The display may only be used to estimate the distance.

Some items, such as thin posts, chain link fences, grilles or uneven road surfaces may not be properly displayed.

Objects directly beside the corners of the vehicle may be outside the field of view of the cameras and may therefore not be displayed on the screen.

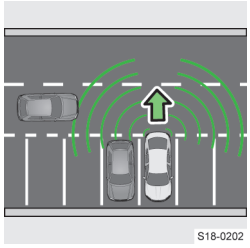
Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Rear Traffic Alert

Functionality



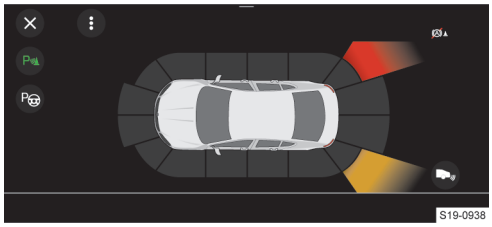
S18-0202

When reversing, the Rear Traffic Alert warns of approaching vehicles.

If the driver does not respond to the warning, the vehicle is braked automatically at a speed below 10 km/h.

Vehicle with Parking Aid

If an approaching vehicle is detected in the area behind your vehicle, a graphical warning is displayed in the Infotainment. At the same time, a continuous tone sounds.



S19-0938

■ Vehicle in collision area - danger of collision!

■ Approaching vehicle

Operating conditions

✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

Function restriction

Manoeuvre Assist's functionality may be limited in unfavourable weather conditions.

Settings

The activation/deactivation menu will be displayed as follows:

› Press the P ASSIST button below the Infotainment › ⚙ and tap the Infotainment screen.

› Select the manoeuvring assistant menu item.

Or:

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

› Select the manoeuvring assistant menu item.

Or:

› Engage reverse gear › in the infotainment screen tap the functional surface ⋮ › ⚙.

› Select the manoeuvring assistant menu item.

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability

› Stop the engine and start again.

› If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Exit warning

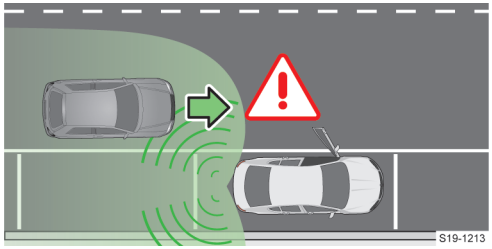
Usage

The assist system warns when opening the door in front of approaching objects, in order to avoid a possible collision.

Functionality

The assist system monitors the area beside and behind the vehicle up to a distance of approximately 35 m.

Situation in which a system warning occurs



Warning in the event of an impending collision

▸ The indicator light ■ in the exterior mirror cover on the side upon which the object was detected will flicker and then light up.

▸ A warning signal sounds.

Warning in the event there is no immediate danger of collision

▸ The indicator light ■ in the exterior mirror cover on the side upon which the object was detected will light up.

Requirements

✓ The vehicle does not move.
✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The speed of the approaching object is faster than 2 km/h.
✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

ⓘ After switching off the ignition, the assistant will remain active for about 3 minutes.

Restriction

In the following cases, the system does not have to issue a warning of an approaching object, or the warning may be issued incorrectly:

▸ If the weather conditions are unfavourable.
▸ The field of vision of the sensors is limited by an obstacle.
▸ A very fast approaching object.

Settings

To display the system activation/deactivation menu, do the following:

› Press the P ASSIST button below the Infotainment › ⚙ and tap the Infotainment screen.
› Select the Exit Indicator menu item.

Or:

› Engage reverse gear › in the infotainment screen tap the functional surface ⋮ › ⚙.
› Select the Exit Indicator menu item.

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability

› Stop the engine and start again.
› If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Park steering assistant

Usage

Park Assist helps drivers park in parallel and perpendicular parking places and to manoeuvre out of parallel parking spaces.

Functionality

The system looks for a parking space and only takes over the steering during the parking procedure or when leaving a parking place. The driver operates the pedals and the shift lever.

The system displays information and notes on the instrument cluster display and on the Infotainment screen.

If the system detects a risk of collision, automatic emergency braking takes place to prevent a collision.

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is lower than 7 km/h.
✓ The ASR is activated and there is no intervention.
✓ There is no driver intervention in the automatic steering operation.
✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

Operation

Switching on

› Press the P ASSIST button under the Infotainment › *Park Assist* on the Infotainment screen.

Select the lane side for the parking procedure

The system automatically searches for a suitable parking space on the passenger side.

› Press the driver's side indicator to find a parking space on this side of the road.

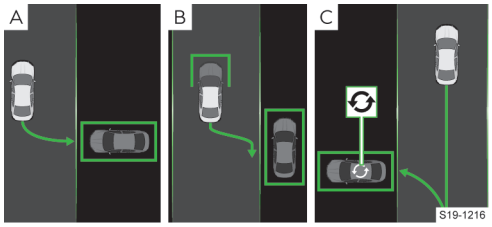
Operation while searching for a parking space

› Drive past a number of parked vehicles at a distance of 0.5–1.5 m.

› To search for a parking space across the road, drive slower than 20 km/h.

› To search for a parking space along the road, drive slower than 40 km/h.

Show the selected parking space



A Park backwards crosswise

B Park backwards longitudinally

C Park forwards across

↻ Touch the symbol - change park mode

Switching off

› Press the P ASSIST button under the Infotainment.

Or:

› Tap the symbol × in the Infotainment screen.

Before the parking process

› If a suitable parking space is found, stop and drive backwards or forwards as indicated by the arrow in the Instrument cluster display.

› When a steering intervention message is displayed, release the steering wheel. The steering operation is taken over by the system.

Parking operation

⚠ **CAUTION**
Risk of injury!

▸ Do not reach between the steering wheel spokes during the parking manoeuvre.

▸ Only operate the pedals and the shift lever / gear selector of automatic gearbox.

› Observe the area around the vehicle and drive backwards or forwards in accordance with the arrow in the Instrument cluster display.

› As soon as the symbol is shown in the instrument cluster display and an audible signal sounds, stop the vehicle. The steering wheel is taken over accordingly. The symbol goes out.

› Travel backwards or forwards in accordance with the arrow in the display.

As soon as the parking process is completed, the corresponding message is displayed and an audible signal sounds.

The parking procedure can be switched off in one of the following ways at any time:

▸ By pressing the P ASSIST button under the Infotainment

▸ By tapping the symbol × in the Infotainment screen

▸ Through a steering intervention

To complete the parking procedure using the park steering assistant

Park forwards

› Partially park forward into a suitable transverse parking space.

› Press the P ASSIST button under the Infotainment › *Park Assist* on the Infotainment screen.

› Follow the instructions on the screen.

Park backwards

› Stop the vehicle behind a suitable parallel or perpendicular parking space.

› Press the P ASSIST button under the Infotainment › *Park Assist* on the Infotainment screen.

› Follow the instructions on the screen.

Exiting a parking space

› Press the P ASSIST button under the Infotainment › *Park Assist* on the Infotainment screen.

When the system is switched on, the symbol lights up in the Infotainment screen P.

› Follow the instructions on the Instrument cluster display.

Automatic speed reduction

If a speed of 7 km/h is exceeded during the parking process, the system will reduce the speed.

Upon the speed being exceeded by 7 km/h a second time, the parking process is terminated.

Function restriction

If the parking space is too small, it is not possible to use the Park Assist to initiate a parking manoeuvre. A message is shown on the instrument cluster display.

Do not use the Park Assist in the following cases:

▸ The vehicle is moving on unpaved or slippery surfaces.

▸ If snow chains or a spare wheel are mounted on the vehicle.

▸ If the system chooses an inappropriate parking space for parking.

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability

› Stop the engine and start again.

› If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Incorrect resulting position of the vehicle in the parking space

The correct parking procedure depends on the size of the wheels. If other wheels approved by ŠKODA AUTO are fitted, have the system readjusted by a specialist garage.

Engine, exhaust system and fuel

Bonnet

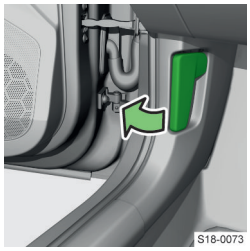
Opening the bonnet

Before opening

› Make sure the windscreen wiper arms are folded down onto the windscreen.

› Keep everyone away from the engine compartment.

Opening



› Pull the release lever underneath the dash panel.



› Release the lock.

› Lift the bonnet so that the gas pressure springs hold it open.

Closing

› Pull the flap down.

› Close the flap with a slight push from a distance of about 20 cm.

› Check that the bonnet is closed.

NOTICE

▸ Do not press down on an unclosed bonnet.

▸ Open and close the flap again.

Engine oil

Checking the fill level and topping up

Test conditions

✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface

✓ The parked engine is warm

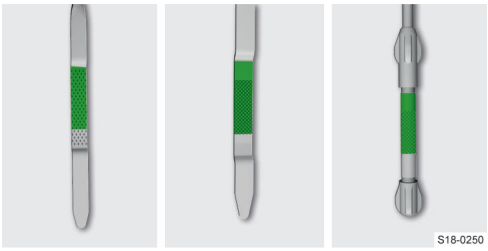
Check the level with the dipstick

› Wait a few minutes for the engine oil to flow back into the oil sump.

› Remove the dipstick and wipe with a clean cloth.

› Insert the dipstick as far as it will go and pull it out again.

› Read the oil level and push the dipstick back in again.



The oil level must be within the marked range.

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!
- The oil level must not be outside the marked range. If it is not possible to top up the engine oil or if the oil level is above the marked range, do not continue driving. Stop the engine and seek the help of a specialist garage.
- Do not use any oil additives.

Consumption
Depending on driving style and operating conditions, the engine consumes some oil, up to 0.5 l/1000 km. Consumption may be higher over the next 5000 km.

Refilling
› Unscrew the cover of the engine oil filler opening.
› Top up the oil to the correct specification in 0.5 litre portions.
› Check the oil level.
› Screw on the cover of the engine oil filler opening.

Specification
Ask a specialist garage for the correct engine oil specification for your vehicle.

If no oil of the correct specification is available, **max. 0.5 l** of oil with the following specifications may be used until the next oil change:
- **Petrol engines**: VW 504 00, VW 508 00, ACEA C3, ACEA C5
- **Diesel engines**: VW 507 00, VW 509 00, ACEA C3, API CJ-4

  For vehicles without a particulate filter, VW 505 01 can be optionally used.

Changing
Have the oil changed by a specialist garage.

Troubleshooting

Engine oil pressure too low
flashes, lights up at the same time ⚠

or

flashes, lights up at the same time ⚠

› Check the engine oil level.

The oil level is OK, the warning light continues to flash:

› Stop the engine and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Engine oil level too low
illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠
Message regarding required engine oil top up

› Check the engine oil level, top up with oil if required.

Engine oil level too high
illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠
Message regarding the need to reduce the engine oil level

› Check the engine oil level.

The oil level is too high:

› Drive on, exercising appropriate caution.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Engine oil level sensor impaired
illuminates together with ⚠

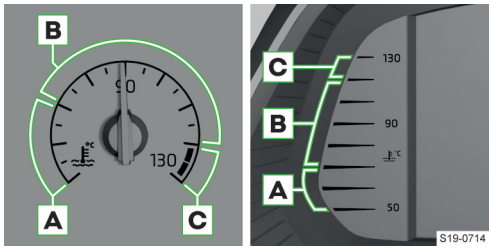
or

illuminates together with ⚠
Message regarding the engine oil sensor

› Drive on, exercising appropriate caution.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Coolant

Coolant temperature gauge



A Cold area
› Avoid high engine speed.
B Operating range
C High temperature range

Checking the fill level and topping up

Test conditions
✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface
✓ The engine is turned off and cooled

Checking the level



The fill level must be within the marked range.
› If the fill level is below the mark **MIN**, top up the coolant.

NOTICE
Danger of damage to the engine compartment!
▸ Do not top up the coolant above the marked area. The coolant could be forced out of the cooling system when heated.

NOTICE
There must be a small quantity of coolant in the tank.
▸ Do not add coolant when the tank is empty.
▸ Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Refilling

CAUTION
Risk of scalding!
The cooling system is pressurised.
▸ Do not open the cap of the coolant expansion tank while the engine is warm. Let the engine cool down.
› Place a wipe on the lid of the tank and carefully unscrew the lid.
› Refill with coolant of the correct specification.
› Screw on the cap until it clicks into place.

Specification
To refill the coolant additive use G12evo (TL 774 L).

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the cooling system and the engine!
Adding coolant that does not conform to the correct specification can reduce the corrosion protection of the cooling system.

Troubleshooting

Coolant level is too low
illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠
Message concerning the required coolant check
› Check the coolant level.

If the coolant level is OK:
› Check the fuse for radiator fan, replace if required » page 187, *Replacing a fuse*.

If the fuse is OK but the indicator light lights up again:
› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Coolant temperature too high
illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠
Report regarding the engine overheating
› Stop driving.
› Stop the engine and allow it to cool.
› Drive on after the indicator light goes out.

Engine fault
illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠
› Stop driving!
› Stop the engine and seek the help of a specialist garage.

There is no coolant of the correct specification available
› Top up with distilled or demineralised water.
› Have the correct coolant mixing ratio corrected by a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Another substance was used for topping up, other than distilled or demineralised water:
› Have the coolant changed by a specialist garage.

It is not possible to top up with a sufficient amount of coolant
› Stop driving.
› Stop the engine and seek the help of a specialist garage.

There is a loss of coolant
› Top up the coolant and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Engine electronics

Troubleshooting

Petrol engine control faulty

EPC illuminates

Driving in emergency mode is possible - a noticeable reduction in engine performance may occur.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Diesel engine control faulty

flashes

Driving in emergency mode is possible - a noticeable reduction in engine performance may occur.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Diesel preheating system faulty

illuminates, or does not illuminate after the ignition is switched on

Driving in emergency mode is possible - a noticeable reduction in engine performance may occur.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Particle filter

Troubleshooting

Clogged particle filter

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠

› Clean the filter.

When the indicator light is on, it must be assumed that fuel consumption will be higher, engine power will be reduced, and the START-STOPP function will not be available.

Filter cleaning

Conditions for cleaning

✓ The engine is warm.

✓ For vehicles with manual transmission, observe the gear recommendation shown in the display of the instrument cluster.

Procedure for vehicles with diesel engines

› Drive at a speed of at least 60 km/h at engine speeds of at least 2000 rpm.

If the filter is successfully cleaned, the indicator light goes off. or .

If the indicator light or does not go off within 40 minutes, no filter cleaning was performed.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Procedure for vehicles with petrol engines

› Drive at a speed of at least 80 km/h at engine speeds between 3000-5000 rpm.

› Release the accelerator pedal and let the vehicle roll with the gear engaged for a few seconds.

› Repeat this procedure several times.

If the filter is successfully cleaned, the indicator light goes off. or .

If the indicator light or does not go off within 30 minutes, no filter cleaning was performed.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Exhaust control system

Troubleshooting

Emission control system faulty

illuminates

Driving in emergency mode is possible - a noticeable reduction in engine performance may occur.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Fuel filter

Troubleshooting

Water in the diesel fuel filter

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Radiator blinds

Usage

The radiator blinds reduce emissions harmful to the environment and CO_2-Emissions and saving fuel.

Troubleshooting

If the display of the instrument cluster shows a message relating to the function restriction of the blinds, the maximum speed of the vehicle is limited to 160 km/h.

The cause may be ice or snow in the area around the blinds. After the ice or snow has thawed, the blinds are functional again.

› Should the impairment not be due to ice or snow, assistance from a specialist should be sought.

Fuel filler flap

Opening the fuel filler flap



› Press the flap and open it.

AdBlue

Regulations

Only use AdBlue® that corresponds with the ISO 22241-1 standard. Do not add additives to AdBlue®.

AdBlue® is a registered trademark of VDA and is also popular as AUS 32 (Aqueous Urea Solution) or DEF (Diesel Exhaust Fluid).

Functionality

To reduce pollutant emissions, a urea solution is automatically injected into the exhaust system - AdBlue®.

AdBlue® freezes at temperatures below -11 C. The system function is ensured by automatic heating.

Checking the fill level and topping up

Checking the level

The AdBlue® level is monitored automatically.

The range with the existing AdBlue® tank fill level as well as the indication of the minimum and maximum AdBlue® top up quantity can be viewed in the driving data in the instrument cluster display under the menu item .

If the range with the existing AdBlue® tank fill level drops to 0 km, it is not possible to start the engine.

› If possible, top up AdBlue® to the maximum level.

Requirements for refilling

✓ Vehicle unlocked
✓ Stationary heating switched off
✓ Ignition off
✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface

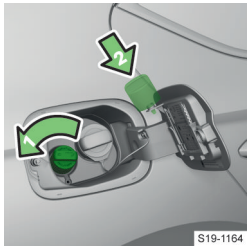
Methods of refilling

▸ With the fuel nozzle at the petrol station
▸ With the refill bottle or from the canister
▸ At a specialist garage

For refilling using refill bottles or canisters, we recommend using refill bottles and canisters from ŠKODA original parts. The refill bottles are equipped with overfill protective function.

Refilling

› Open the tank flap.



› Turn the tank cap in the direction of the arrow and remove it.
› Place the tank cap on the tank flap.
› Refill AdBlue®.

The AdBlue® tank is full when the fuel nozzle switches off or as soon as no more AdBlue® flows out of the refill bottle. Do not continue refilling.

› Place the tank cap on the filler neck and turn it in the opposite direction to the arrow until it clicks into place.
› Close the tank flap and click into place.
› Before starting the engine, leave the ignition on for 30 seconds to allow the system to detect the refilling.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the system for injecting AdBlue® in to the exhaust system!

▸ Do not exceed the maximum refill quantity specified in the instrument cluster.
▸ The service life of AdBlue® is 4 years. If the tank contents are not consumed within this period, have them replaced by a specialist garage. When topping up, do not use AdBlue® that is past its expiry date.

Troubleshooting

AdBlue®-Level too low

or or illuminates

› Refill AdBlue®.

AdBlue®-system malfunction.

 or or illuminates

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Technical data

AdBlue®-tank filling level is about 12 litres.

Petrol

What you should be mindful of

⚠ **DANGER**
Risk of death!
Fuel and fuel vapours are explosive.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Risk of serious damage to the engine and the exhaust system!
▸ **Never run the fuel tank completely empty!**

If you would like to operate your vehicle in a country other than that intended for vehicle operation, please contact a ŠKODA Partner. They will let you know whether a suitable fuel is offered in the associated country.

Regulations

Standards
Petrol must comply with European standard EN 228 (in Russia, GOST 32513-2013).

Only use **unleaded petrol** that contains **max** 10% bioethanol **(E10)**.

ⓘ We recommend using petrol with additives, which is available at petrol stations at the petrol pumps.

Octane number
Use the petrol with the octane number prescribed for your vehicle.

Petrol with an octane number that is one **higher** than the one prescribed for your vehicle can be used without restriction.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!
▸ When petrol with a lower than the prescribed octane is used, only continue driving at mid-range engine speeds and with minimal strain on the engine.
▸ Refuel using petrol of the prescribed octane number as soon as possible.
▸ Do not use petrol with an octane number that **lower** than **91**!

Prescribed petrol 95 / min. 92 or 93 RON / ROZ
We recommend using petrol **95** ROZ.

Optionally, the petrol **92** or. **93** ROZ can be used (slight power loss, a slightly increased fuel consumption).

In an **emergency**, **91** RON petrol may be used (low power loss, slightly increased fuel consumption).

Specified petrol is unleaded, min. 95 RON / ROZ
Use min. **95** ROZ petrol.

Using higher octane petrol than 95 RON may result in improved performance and lower fuel consumption.

In an **emergency 91**. **92** or. **93** RON may be used (low power loss, slightly increased fuel consumption).

Prescribed petrol 98 / (95) RON / ROZ
We recommend using petrol **98** ROZ.

95 RON petrol may be used as an option (low power loss, slightly increased fuel consumption).

In an **emergency 91**. **92** or. **93** RON may be used (low power loss, slightly increased fuel consumption).

Additive

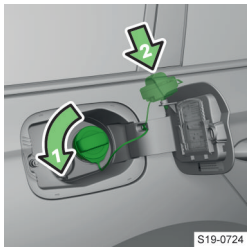
ⓘ **NOTICE**
Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!
▸ Do not use petrol containing metal-based additives, e.g. manganese, iron, lead, and do not use, for example, any LRP-petrol - lead replacement petrol.
▸ Do not add any additional additives to the petrol in accordance with EN 228.
▸ If petrol is not used in accordance with EN 228, we recommend obtaining information from a specialist company regarding the possible use of petrol additives approved by ŠKODA AUTO.

Requirements for refuelling

✓ Vehicle unlocked
✓ Stationary heating switched off
✓ Ignition off

Refilling

› Open the tank flap.



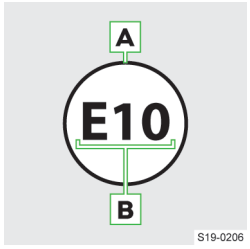
› Turn the tank cap in the direction of the arrow and remove it.
› Place the tank cap on the tank flap.
› Insert the fuel nozzle into the fuel filler neck up to the stop and refuel.
› Do not continue refuelling after the fuel nozzle switches off.
› Remove the fuel nozzle and put it back on the petrol pump.
› Place the fuel cap on the fuel filler neck and turn it in the opposite direction to the arrow until it clicks into place.
› Close the tank flap and click into place.

Troubleshooting

If fuel other than unleaded petrol has been used as per standards applicable to your vehicle
› Neither start the engine nor switch on the ignition.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Technical data

The fuel prescribed for your vehicle is indicated on a sticker on the inside of the fuel filler flap.



A Unleaded petrol
B Organic share as a percentage

Tank capacity for vehicles with front-wheel drive
▸ About 45 litres or 50 litres (depending on engine type), of which 6 litres are a reserve.
▸ For natural gas vehicles, the content of the petrol tank is approximately 9 litres.

Tank capacity for vehicles with all-wheel drive
About 55 litres, including a reserve of approx. 6 litres.

illuminates - the fuel level has reached the reserve area.

Diesel

What you should be mindful of

⚠ **DANGER**
Risk of death!
Fuel and fuel vapours are explosive.

NOTICE
Risk of serious damage to the engine and the exhaust system!
▸ **Never run the fuel tank completely empty!**

If you would like to operate your vehicle in a country other than that intended for vehicle operation, please contact a ŠKODA Partner. They will let you know whether a suitable fuel is offered in the associated country.

Regulations

Standards
The diesel fuel must comply with European standard EN 590 (in Russia, GOST 32511-2013 or GOST R 55475-2013).

Only use a **diesel fuel** that contains a **maximum** of 7 % biodiesel **(B7)**.

We recommend using diesel with additives, which is available at petrol stations at the petrol pumps.

Operation in different weather conditions
Only use a diesel fuel according to the current or the expected weather conditions.

Additive

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!
▸ Do not use RME biofuel, even as a diesel fuel additive.
▸ Do not add any additional additives to the diesel in accordance with EN 590.
▸ If diesel is not used in accordance with EN 590, we recommend obtaining information from a specialist company regarding the possible use of diesel additives approved by ŠKODA AUTO.

Requirements for refuelling

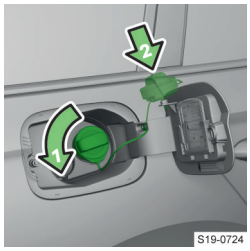
✓ Vehicle unlocked
✓ Stationary heating switched off
✓ Ignition off

Refilling

Misfuelling protection
The fuel filler neck on diesel vehicles may be equipped with a misfuelling protection device.

In some countries, the diameter of the diesel fuel nozzle may be identical to that of the petrol nozzle. Before driving in these countries, have the protection device removed by a specialist garage.

Refilling
› Open the tank flap.



› Turn the tank cap in the direction of the arrow and remove it.
› Place the tank cap on the tank flap.
› Insert the fuel nozzle into the fuel filler neck up to the stop and refuel.
› Do not continue refuelling after the fuel nozzle switches off.
› Remove the fuel nozzle and put it back on the petrol pump.
› Place the fuel cap on the fuel filler neck and turn it in the opposite direction to the arrow until it clicks into place.
› Close the tank flap and click into place.

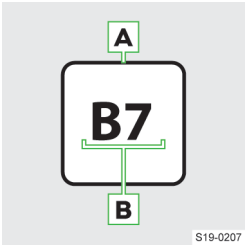
Troubleshooting

If fuel other than diesel has been used as per applicable standards
› Neither start the engine nor switch on the ignition.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

The diesel nozzle cannot be inserted correctly into the tank filler neck
› If the nozzle cannot be inserted correctly into the tank filler neck, move it slightly back and forth when plugging it in.

Technical data

The fuel prescribed for your vehicle is indicated on a sticker on the inside of the fuel filler flap.



A Diesel
B Organic share as a percentage

Tank capacity for vehicles with front-wheel drive
About 45 litres or 50 litres (depending on engine type), of which 6 litres are a reserve.

Tank capacity for vehicles with all-wheel drive
About 55 litres, including a reserve of approx. 6 litres.

illuminates - the fuel level has reached the reserve area.

CNG (compressed natural gas)

What you should be mindful of

⚠ **WARNING**
Natural gas is highly explosive and highly flammable.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of death, explosion or fire!
▸ Do not ignore the smell of gas in the vehicle or when refuelling.
▸ The natural gas tanks in the vehicle must not be exposed to undesirable heat sources.
▸ Do not enter the vehicle when refuelling with natural gas. Electrostatic discharges may occur when entering the vehicle. If the fuelling nozzle of the refuelling system is subsequently touched, sparks may form and a fire may break out.

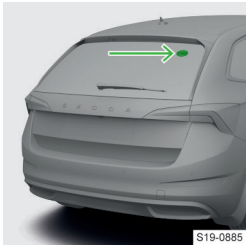
⚠ **WARNING**
Touching the floor of the vehicle or an accident may damage the natural gas containers. If damaged natural gas tanks are refuelled, they can burst and cause serious or fatal injuries!
▸ Ensure a gas system test is carried out immediately by a specialist company.
▸ Do not refuel using natural gas until a gas system test has been carried out.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system.
▸ Do not use Liquefied Natural Gas (LPG), Liquefied Petroleum Gas (LPG) or Hythane (hydrogen/methane mixture).

Regulations



Variants of the CNG sticker in natural gas vehicles .



Position of the sticker

Regular gas system checks
On natural gas-powered vehicles regular gas system checks must be carried out at a specialist workshop. The vehicle operator is responsible for ensuring these tests are carried out properly.

For new cars, this is after 4 years and then every 2 years
- ▸ Check the gas system for leaks and carry out an examination of gas containers
- ▸ Check the filler cap
- ▸ Check the condition of fuel filler tubes and the sealing ring in the fuel filler tubes, and clean sealing ring if necessary

Lifetime of the containers
The lifetime of the natural gas containers is max. 20 years.

› Ensure the gas tanks are replaced at the appropriate time.

Indicates the natural gas system test.
illuminates
Notification regarding the remaining days until the natural gas system is checked

› Ensure the test is carried out by a specialist company.

NOTICE
If the natural gas system is not tested by the due date, the natural gas drive will not be available in your vehicle.

Functionality

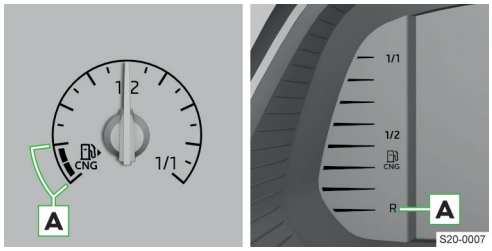
A natural gas vehicle also has a petrol engine » page 180,

Natural gas operation display
illuminates

Automatically switching over from natural gas mode to petrol mode
The vehicle automatically switches from natural gas to petrol, for example, if the following situations occur.

- ▸ With an empty natural gas tank or insufficient pressure in the tank.
- ▸ After natural gas refuelling - the fuel system of the vehicle determines the quality of natural gas.
- ▸ At very low ambient temperatures.

Gas gauge



A The natural gas supply has reached the reserve area.

WARNING
Danger of remaining in traffic.
- ▸ After the indicator light illuminates Fill up with petrol as soon as possible.
- ▸ **Never fully empty the petrol tank.**
- ▸ Track the range with natural gas in the drive data menu item » page 66. Plan to fill up with natural gas in good time.

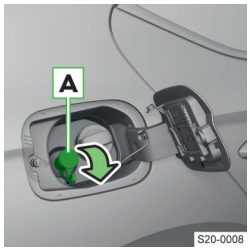
Every six months, to ensure the correct functioning of the fuel system, it is recommended that the fuel tank for petrol should be run down until the warning light comes on. run empty.

Requirements for refuelling

✓ Vehicle unlocked
✓ Stationary heating switched off
✓ Ignition off

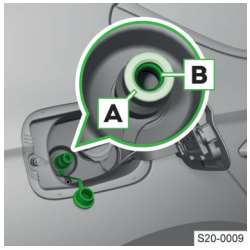
Refilling

› Open the tank flap.



› Remove the cap A from the natural gas filler neck.
› Plug the coupling of the refuelling system onto the filler neck and start refuelling with natural gas and while doing so, follow the instructions given on the refuelling system.

The refuelling system stops the refuelling process automatically when the tank is full.



› After releasing the coupling of the refuelling system, check whether the sealing ring B is stuck in the filler neck A.
› If the sealing ring has slipped on the connector, reinsert it into the filler neck.
› Place the cap on the filler neck.
› Close the tank flap and click into place.

The natural gas refuelling systems have an overfill protection with a dependence to the outdoor temperature. With very high outside temperatures, it may not be possible to fully refuel the natural gas tank.

If the car is parked directly after a refuelling operation, on restart the pointer of the gas gauge may not show exactly the same level as immediately after the filling process. This is not a leak in the system, but a reduction in pressure due to the cooling of the gas in the natural gas container after refuelling.

Troubleshooting

Unknown refuelling system
Natural gas refuelling may vary from station to station. If refuelling with natural gas at a station is unfamiliar to you, get someone to instruct you or allow the fuelling operation to be carried out by the station staff.

Gas leakage
If a gas leak is suspected (perceptible odour), proceed as follows.

› Stop the vehicle.
› Switch off the ignition.
› Extinguish cigarettes, switch off spark-producing or incendiary items and remove them from the vehicle.
› Open doors and the boot lid to ventilate the vehicle sufficiently.
› Do not continue to drive if the odour persists.
› If it is not possible to drive a vehicle with a gas leak out of an enclosed area (e.g. tunnel, underpass, garage, ferry etc.), call the emergency services immediately.
› Ensure a gas system test is carried out immediately by a specialist company.

Technical data

The fuel prescribed for your vehicle is indicated on a sticker on the inside of the fuel filler flap.



CNG (compressed natural gas)

The fuel tank is built with a capacity of approximately 17.5 kg CNG.

12 volt vehicle battery and fuses

12 volt vehicle battery

What you should be mindful of

Explanation of the warning symbols on the 12-volt vehicle battery

Wear safety goggles!

The battery acid of the 12-volt vehicle battery is very caustic. Wear gloves and eye protection.

Keep fire, sparks and open light away from the 12 volt vehicle battery! Do not smoke!

When charging the 12 volt vehicle battery, a highly explosive gas mixture is produced!

Keep children away from the 12 volt vehicle battery!

Refer to the owner's manual!

Functionality - Protection against discharge of the 12 volt vehicle battery

Possible causes for the discharge of the 12 volt vehicle battery

- Worn 12 volt vehicle battery
- Frequent short journeys
- Low temperatures
- Vehicle stationary for a long period of time

Automatic system-related discharge protection measure with regard to the 12 volt vehicle battery

- Increasing the engine idling speed
- Switching off certain consumers or limiting their power

Recommended measure to be taken when vehicle is stationary for more than three weeks

› Disconnect the ⊖ terminal of the 12 volt vehicle battery.

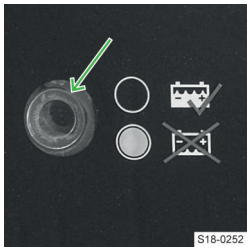
Checking and charging the 12 volt vehicle battery

Checking the condition

The condition of the 12 volt vehicle battery is checked by a specialist garage during servicing.

Checking the acid level

Applies to a 12 volt vehicle battery with an acid level indicator.



› Tap on the indicator before testing, to clear air bubbles.

- Black colour - the acid level is OK.
- Colourless or pale yellow colour - acid level is too low, the 12 volt vehicle battery must be replaced.

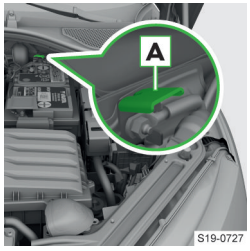
Requirements for charging a 12 volt vehicle battery

✓ Ignition off

✓ Power consumers switched off

12 volt vehicle battery charging

To charge the 12 volt vehicle battery fully, set a charging current of max. of 0.1 times the battery capacity.



Earth point

› Connect the ⊕ terminal of the charger to the ⊕ terminal of the 12 volt vehicle battery.

› Connect the ⊖ terminal of the charger to the earth point A.

› Plug the charger's power cable into the socket and switch on the device.

› After charging, switch off the charger and unplug the power cable from the socket.

› Disconnect the charger terminals from the 12 volt vehicle battery.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of explosion!

- During charging, hydrogen is released. An explosion can also be caused by sparks, for example, when disconnecting or loosening the cable connector.
- Never charge a frozen or thawed 12 volt vehicle battery.
- Do not carry out the so-called quick charging of the 12 volt vehicle battery yourself, but have it carried out by a specialist garage.

⚠ NOTICE

A flat 12 volt vehicle battery can freeze easily!

Troubleshooting

The 12 volt vehicle battery does not charge while the engine is running

or illuminates

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Low charge level of the 48 volt battery
Applies to e-TEC-vehicles.

or illuminates

› Keep the engine turned on, but do not drive off.

› Stop with the vehicle on the spot until the indicator light goes out.

Engine fault

or illuminates

› Stop driving!

› Stop the engine and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Disconnecting, connecting and replacing

⚠ CAUTION
Risk of fire!
▸ Do not mix up the connection cables.

Disconnecting
› Close the electric boot lid, the tilting/sliding sunroof, all windows and the electric sunblind.
› Switch off the ignition and any connected power consumers.
› Disconnect the ⊖ terminal and then the ⊕ terminal.

Connecting
› Connect the ⊕ terminal and then the ⊖ terminal.

After switching on the ignition, the indicator lights light up from the isolation box.

› If, after a short distance, one of the above-mentioned indicator lights does not go out, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Operate these vehicle functions after disconnecting and connecting the 12 volt vehicle battery
▸ Window operation » page 29.

Changing
The new 12 volt vehicle battery must have the same parameters as the original battery. Have the replacement carried out by a specialist garage.

Using the jump-starting cable

Usage

With the help of jump start cables, a vehicle with a discharged or defective 12-volt vehicle battery can be started using the 12-volt vehicle battery of another vehicle.

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING
Risk of explosion and chemical burns!
▸ Do not jump start with the 12 volt vehicle battery of another vehicle under the following conditions:
  ▸ The discharged 12 volt vehicle battery is frozen. A discharged 12 volt vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C.
  ▸ The acid level of the 12-volt vehicle battery is too low » page 185.

Use jump leads with a sufficient cross section and insulated terminal clamps.

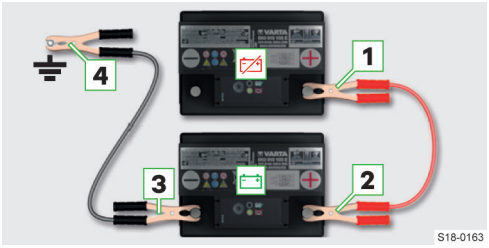
The rated voltage of both batteries must be 12V. The capacity (in Ah) of the 12 volt charging vehicle battery must not be significantly lower than the capacity of the discharged 12 volt vehicle battery.

Use another vehicle's 12 volt vehicle battery to operate the vehicle

⚠ WARNING
Risk of injury! Danger of damage to vehicle!
▸ Lay the jump start cables so that they cannot become caught by rotating parts in the engine compartment.

ⓘ NOTICE
Short circuit!
▸ The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must not touch each other.
▸ The cable connected to the positive pole of the 12 volt vehicle battery must not come into contact with electrically conductive vehicle parts.
▸ The vehicles must not touch each other.

Connect the jump start cable
› Switch off the ignition.
› Connect the terminal clamps of the jump start cables in the order shown in the legend.



discharged 12 volt vehicle battery

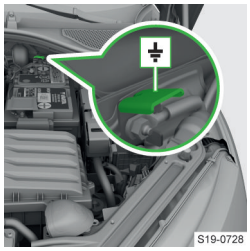
current-supplying 12 volt vehicle battery

1 ⊕-pole of the discharged 12-volt vehicle battery

2 ⊕-pole of the current-supplying 12 volt vehicle battery

3 ⊖-pole of the current-supplying 12 volt vehicle battery (or earth point)

4 ⏚ Earth point of the vehicle with discharged 12 volt vehicle battery



Earth point

Start the engine

› Start the engine of the current-giving vehicle and let it idle (applies to vehicles with combustion engine)

Or:

› Switch on the electric drive of the vehicle supplying power (applies to vehicles with an electric motor).

› Start up the vehicle with the discharged 12 volt vehicle battery.

› If the engine of the vehicle with the discharged 12 volt vehicle battery does not start within 10 seconds, repeat the starting procedure after approximately 30 seconds.

Disconnecting the cable

› Disconnect the cables in the reverse order from connection.

Fuses

What you should be mindful of

NOTICE

Fire hazard and risk of damage to the electrical system.

▸ Do not repair fuses or replace them with stronger fuses.

▸ Replace the defective fuse with a new fuse with the same amperage.

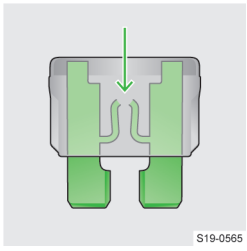
▸ We recommend using replacement fuses from the ŠKODA Genuine Accessories range. These guarantee reliable and safe protection of the vehicle's electric system.

▸ If a newly inserted fuse blows again, seek the help of a specialist garage.

One fuse may belong to several consumers. One consumer may have several fuses.

Functionality

Fuses protect the vehicle systems from damage caused by excessive current. The fuse blows when the current is exceeded.



Blown fuse

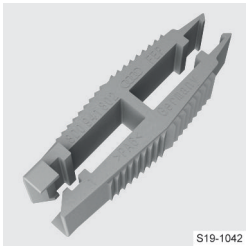
Conditions for replacing a fuse

✓ Ignition off

✓ Driver door opened

✓ All consumers switched off

Replacing a fuse



› Replace the fuse with the clip located under the cover of the fuse box in the engine compartment.

› Use the appropriate end of the clamp according to the fuse dimensions.

Fuses in the dash panel

Overview

Access to fuses – left-hand drive

› Open the storage compartment on the driver's side.



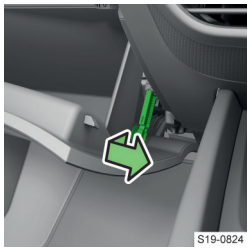
› Press the button and open the tray.

› Change the fuse.

› Close the storage compartment.

Access to fuses – right-hand drive

› Open the storage compartment on the passenger's side.

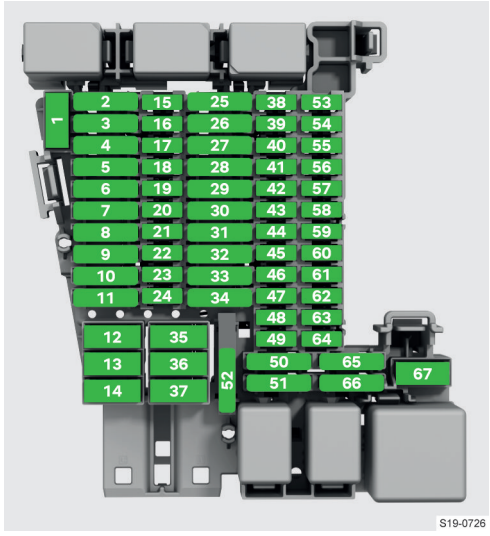


› Loosen the brake rod of the storage compartment.



› Press the locking lugs, the storage compartment folds down.
› Change the fuse.
› Insert and lock the brake rod.
› Close the storage compartment.

Fuses overview



Fuse number	Consumer
1	Not used
2	Not used
3	Tow hitch
4	SCR (AdBlue®)
5	Selector lever (automatic transmission)
6	Interior lighting
7	Heating of the front seats
8	Sliding/tilting roof
9	Central locking + window lifter (left side of the vehicle), left, exterior mirrors

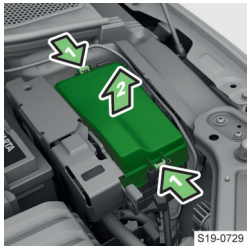
Fuse number	Consumer
	(Heating, fold-in function, setting the mirror surface)
10	Not used
11	Tow hitch
12	Exterior vehicle lighting, fog lights on the right, raised brake lights, license plate lights
13	Central locking (rear doors and boot lid, fuel filler flap), windscreen washer system, headlight cleaning system
14	Music amplifier
15	Not used
16	Airbags
17	SCR (AdBlue®)
18	Steering column lock, KESSY (keyless locking system)
19	Instrument cluster, emergency call, online services
20	Phonebox, USB connections
21	Rear view camera, Top View
22	Seat ventilation at the front
23	Interior lighting in front, microphone, operation of the sliding/tilting sunroof
24	All-wheel drive
25	Belt tensioner - front left
26	Central locking + window lifter (right side of the vehicle), right, exterior mirrors (Heating, fold-in function, setting the mirror surface)
27	Belt tensioner - front right
28	Not used
29	Tow hitch
30	Infotainment
31	Tow hitch
32	Seat heating - rear
33	Not used
34	230 volt socket
35	Vehicle exterior lighting, left fog light
36	Air conditioning
37	Electric boot lid
38	Not used
39	Heated steering wheel
40	Not used
41	Databus
42	Automatic transmission, gear display
43	Front air conditioning, rear air conditioning, auxiliary heater (auxiliary heating), rear window heating
44	Lane change assist system (Side Assist), diagnostic connection, rain and light sensor, automatic headlamp levelling, parking brake, alarm system, light switch, buttons in the centre console
45	Steering column electronics, control lever under steering wheel

Fuse number	Consumer
46	Infotainment screen, Head-up display
47	Adaptive Chassis Control (DCC)
48	Not used
49	Not used
50	Not used
51	Not used
52	12 volt socket in the luggage compartment
53	Non-contact operation of boot lid
54	Not used
55	Not used
56	Not used
57	Not used
58	Parking assistance, Park Assist, front radar sensor, front camera for assistance systems
59	Parking brake, air conditioning, reverse gear sensor, interior rearview mirror, engine sound generator
60	Diagnostic connection
61	Clutch pedal switch, engine start
62	USB rear, USB on interior rearview mirror
63	Not used
64	Not used
65	Not used
66	Rear window wiper
67	Heated rear window

Fuses in the engine compartment

Overview

Access to the fuses



- › Simultaneously press the locking buttons on the fuse box cover and remove the cover.
- › Change the fuse.
- › Fit the cover and click into place.

NOTICE

Danger of water entering the fuse box.

▸ Fit the cover correctly and click into place securely.

Fuses overview



Fuse number	Consumer
1	Power steering The fuse can only be changed by a specialist company!
2	Assistance system ESC, engine control system, engine components
3	Ignition, natural gas drive (applies to G-TEC-vehicles)
4	Left headlight
5	Right headlight
6	Alarm system
7	Automatic gearbox
8	Brake servo
9	Horn
10	Windscreen wiper
11	Not used
12	Automatic gearbox
13	Assistance system ESC
14	Auxiliary heating
15	Assistance system ESC
16	Not used
17	Heating
18	Heating
19	Not used
20	Front differential lock (VAQ)
21	Engine control system
22	Starter
23	Engine control system
24	Engine components
25	Engine components
26	Engine components
27	Lambda sensors, particle filter, NOx sensor
28	Engine components
29	Fuel pump
30	Not used
31	Not used
32	Heated windscreen
33	Heating

Wheels

Tyres and rims

What you should be mindful of

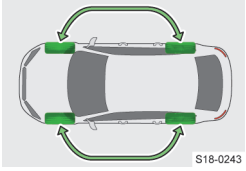
NOTICE

- Protect tyres from contact with lubricants and fuel.
- Always store wheels or tyres in a cool, dry and, where possible, dark place. Tyres without rims should be stored in an upright position.
- Alloy rims can be damaged by grit.
- Do not use light alloy rims with a high-sheen surface in wintry weather conditions or with snow chains

Causes of uneven tyre wear

- Improper tyre pressure.
- Driving style (e.g. fast cornering, rapid acceleration and deceleration).
- Wheel alignment errors.
- Incorrect wheel balancing.

Wheel changes


S18-0243

For uniform wear on all tyres, we recommend that you change the wheels every 10,000 km according to the schedule.

Advice for tyre assembly

› With directional tires, the correct direction of rotation must be observed. The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by arrows on the wall of the tyre.

› Always replace the tyres by the axle.

Additional information

Only fit radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern on one axle.

Approved tyre sizes are specified in the technical vehicle documentation and in the declaration of conformity (in the so-called COC Document).

The declaration of conformity can be obtained from a ŠKODA Partner (valid for some countries and some models).

Overview of tyre labelling

Explanation of tyre markings

e.g. 205/60 R 16 92 H

205 Tyre width in mm
60 Height/width ratio in %
R Code letter for the type of tyre - Radial
16 Diameter of wheel in inches
92 Load index
H Speed symbol

Load index

The load index indicates the maximum permissible load for each individual tyre.

88 560 kg
89 580 kg
90 600 kg
91 615 kg
92 630 kg
93 650 kg
94 670 kg
95 690 kg

Speed symbol

The speed symbol indicates the maximum permissible speed for a vehicle fitted with tyres in the category concerned.

S 180 km/h
T 190 km/h
U 200 km/h
H 210 km/h
V 240 km/h
W 270 km/h
Y 300 km/h

WARNING

- Do not exceed the maximum permissible load and speed for the mounted tires.

Tread wear indicators



S18-0245

Wear indicators are located in the profile of the tyres that display the permissible minimum tread depth.

Markings on the walls of the tyres with the letters TWI or other symbols (e.g. △) indicate the position of the wear indicators.

A tyre is to be regarded as worn out when this wear indicator is flush with the tread.

The tread depth can be measured with a tread depth gauge on the ice scraper. The ice scraper is located on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

WARNING

Risk of accident!

- Do not use worn tires.

Tyre manufacturing date

The date of manufacture is indicated on the tyre sidewall.

For example, DOT ... 18 20 means that the tyres were produced in the 18th week of the year 2020.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
▸ Do not use tyres that are older than 6 years.

Troubleshooting

Help with a flat tyre
▸ Spare and emergency spare wheel » page 191
▸ Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle » page 192
▸ Breakdown kit » page 194

Change of tyre pressure
illuminates
› Stop the vehicle.
› Check the tyres and tyre pressures.

Show tyres with modified pressure
› In the following menu, select the menu item for displaying the tyre condition:

CAR > Tyres

Or:

MENU > >

All-season or winter tires

Usage

All-season or winter tyres improve handling in winter weather conditions. They are characterised by 'M+S' and a mountaintop and snowflake symbol .

What you should be mindful of

For the best possible handling, use tyres on all four wheels with a minimum tread depth of 4 mm.

Change winter tyres to summer tyres at the appropriate time. Summer tyres have better driving and braking characteristics on snow- and ice-free roads and at temperatures above 7 °C.

Usage conditions

If all-season or winter tyres are installed that have a lower speed category than the actual specified maximum vehicle speed, then proceed as follows:

› In Infotainment, set the speed limit according to the category of tyres fitted.
› In the driver's field of view, affix a warning label with the maximum value of the speed category intended for the tyres fitted (applies only to certain countries).

Settings

The speed limit setting for tyres is set in the Infotainment in the following menu item:

CAR > > *Outside* > *Tyres*

Or:

MENU > > > *Outside*

› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Tyres* .
› Select *Tyres* – select them and set the speed limit.

Snow chains

Usage

The snow chains improve driving in wintry road conditions.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of accident as well as tyre damage!
▸ Do not use chains on routes that are free from snow and ice.

What you should be mindful of

› Before fitting the snow chains, remove the full wheel trims.
› Only mount the snow chains on the front wheels.

Technical data

Permitted rim/tyre combinations for mounting of snow chains:

Rim size	Tyre size
6.5Jx16 ET46	205/60 R16
6.5Jx17 ET46	205/55 R17

Only fit snow chains with links and locks that are no larger than 9 mm.

Spare and emergency spare wheel

Overview

Spare wheel
▸ The dimensions of a standard spare wheel correspond to the dimensions of the wheels mounted on the vehicle.
▸ A temporary spare wheel is provided with a warning label on the rim. This wheel is intended to enable you to reach the nearest specialist garage.

Inflate a space saver wheel with the maximum prescribed pressure.

Emergency wheel
A warning label is displayed on the rim of the temporary spare wheel. This wheel is intended to enable you to reach the nearest specialist garage.

An emergency wheel is significantly narrower than the wheels mounted ex-factory.

Remove the wheel on vehicles without sound system and replace

The spare wheel or emergency wheel is mounted in a recess under the floor covering or the variable loading floor in the boot.

Removing

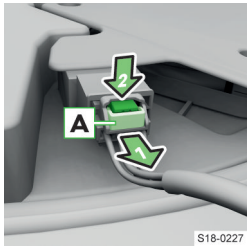

S18-0229

› Loosen the retaining belt and take out the box with the tool kit.
› Unscrew the lock nut.
› Take out the wheel.

Inserting
› Insert the wheel into the wheel well with the outside facing downwards.
› Pull the fixing band through the opposite holes in the wheel rim.
› Screw in the locknut until it stops.
› Replace the box with the tool kit into the wheel and secure it with the tape.

Remove the wheel on vehicles with sound system and replace

Removing



› Loosen the retaining belt and take out the box with the tool kit.
› Partially pull out the safety tab A.
› Press the safety button and remove the plug.


S18-0228

› Unscrew the lock nut.
› Remove the bass loudspeaker.
› Take out the wheel.

Inserting
› Insert the wheel into the wheel well with the outside facing downwards.
› Insert the bass loudspeaker.
› Screw in the locknut until it stops.
› Insert the connector in the bass loudspeaker.
› Secure the safety tab A.
› Place the box with the tool kit and secure it with the tape.

Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle

What you should be mindful of

Before changing
› Park the vehicle securely and secure it from rolling away.
› Turn off the engine.
› Let all of the occupants get out. During the wheel change they should not stand on the road, e.g. behind the crash barriers.
› Close all doors, the boot and bonnet.
› Uncouple any trailers.

Raise vehicle

⚠ **WARNING**
Always ensure the base plate of the lifting jack cannot slip!
▸ Provide a wide and firm base under the jack on loose surfaces.
▸ Create a non-slip base (e.g. a rubber floor mat) under the jack on a smooth surface.
▸ Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.
▸ Do not insert any body parts under the raised vehicle.
▸ Do not start the engine of the lifted vehicle.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Danger of damage to vehicle!
▸ Make sure that the jack is attached correctly to the bridge of the sill.

After having been changed
› Check the tyre pressure on the mounted wheel and adjust if necessary.

› In vehicles with a tyre indicator, save the tyre pressure values in the system.
› Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts of the mounted tyres checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible.

The specified tightening torque is 140 Nm.

Drive carefully until the tightening torque is checked.

Replace the damaged tyre. It is not recommended to repair the tyre.

⚠ WARNING
Risk of an accident!
▸ Too low a tightening torque may cause the wheel to disengage while driving.
▸ Too high a tightening torque can damage the threads and cause the rim to deform.

⚠ WARNING
Risk of an accident!
▸ Do not grease or lubricate screws.
▸ Do not use corroded or damaged screws.

Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle

Release screws
› If the vehicle has covers over the wheel bolts or wheel trims, remove them.

⚠ WARNING
▸ If you step on the key end when loosening the screw, hold on to the vehicle for better stability.


S18-0231

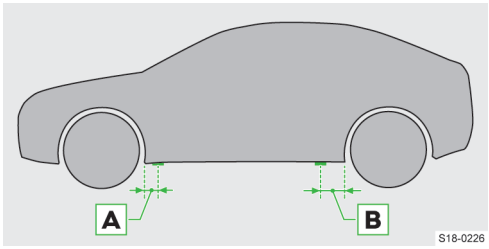
Some vehicles may have anti-theft wheel bolts that protect the wheels from theft.

› Insert the upper section on the anti-theft wheel bolt until it stops.


S18-0301

› Place the key on the wheel bolt or on the attachment piece.
› Turn the screw a maximum of half a turn so that the wheel does not come loose and fall off.

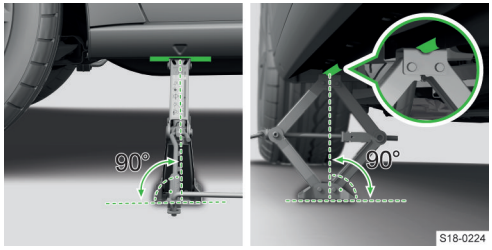
Jacking points for the jack



S18-0226

A 18 cm
B 30 cm

Position the jack and lift the vehicle
Use the jack from the tool kit.



S18-0224

› Position the jack at the jacking point closest to the wheel to be replaced.
› Support the base plate of the jack with its full area resting on level ground and ensure that the jack is located in a vertical position at the jacking point.
› Use the crank to raise the jack until its claw encloses the bar.
› Continue to lift the vehicle until the wheel is just off the floor.

Changing a wheel
› Unscrew the screws and place them on a clean surface.
› Remove the wheel carefully.
› Attach the wheel.
› Slightly screw in the screws.
› Lower the vehicle.

ⓘ NOTICE
▸ Applies to wheel trims supplied ex-factory or from ŠKODA Original Accessories: the anti-theft wheel bolt should be installed in the position marked on the back of the wheel trim.

Tighten screws
› Tighten the opposite wheel bolts including the anti-theft wheel bolt one after the other.
› Reinstall the cover caps of the wheel bolts or the full wheel covers.

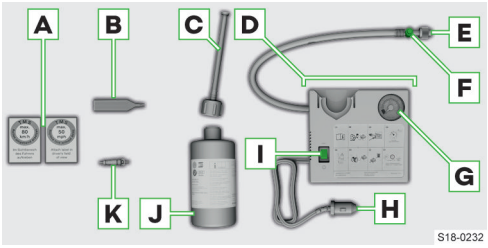
ⓘ Keep the label with the code number of the anti-theft wheel bolts. A replacement upper section can

be acquired from ŠKODA original parts based on this.

Breakdown kit

Content overview

The kit is located in a box under the floor covering in the luggage compartment.



- A Sticker with speed indication
- B Valve remover
- C Inflation hose with plug
- D Air compressor (the layout of the controls may be different depending on the type of air compressor)
- E Tyre inflation hose
- F Button for pressure reduction
- G Pressure indicator
- H 12 volt cable connector
- I ON and OFF switch
- J Tyre inflation bottle
- K Replacement valve core

The declaration of conformity is included with the air compressor or the log folder.

Usage conditions

Performing a repair with the breakdown kit not at all intended to replace a permanent repair on the tyre.

The purpose of the repair is to get you to the nearest specialist garage.

Change the tyre repaired by the breakdown kit as soon as possible.

Before using the kit

› Park the vehicle securely and secure it from rolling away.
› Turn off the engine.
› Let all of the occupants get out. During the wheel repair they should not stand on the road, e.g. behind the crash barriers.
› Close all doors as well as the bonnet and boot lid.
› Uncouple any trailers.

After using the kit

If a tyre pressure of 2.0 bar cannot be achieved, the tyre is too damaged and cannot be sealed with the puncture set.

› Stop driving. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Once a tyre pressure of 2.0–2.5 bar is achieved, continue the journey at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

› Avoid full accelerations, strong braking and fast cornering.

Information for driving with repaired tyres

› The pressure of the repaired tyre must be checked after driving for 10 minutes.
› If the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar and less, do not continue! Seek the help of a specialist garage.
› If the tyre pressure is higher than 1.3 bar, correct the pressure to the correct value of at least 2 bar and continue driving.

NOTICE

Danger of damage to the compressor!

▸ After the maximum running time of the air compressor, allow it to cool for a few minutes.

WARNING

Risk of burns!

The tyre inflation hose and the air compressor may become hot when inflated.

▸ Allow the air compressor and hose to cool for a few minutes.

Usage restrictions

Do not use the kit in the following cases:

▸ The rim is damaged.
▸ The outdoor temperature is below the minimum temperature indicated in the manual of the tyre filling bottle.
▸ Tyre punctures are greater than 4 mm.
▸ There is damage to the tyre wall.
▸ The expiry date stated on the tyre inflation bottle has expired.

Self-help

Seal the tyres

› Unscrew the valve cap from the damaged tyre.
› Unscrew the valve core with the valve insert and place it on a clean surface.
› Shake the tyre inflation bottle back and forth with sealant.

› Screw the inflation hose onto the tyre inflater bottle. The film on the closure is pierced automatically.
› Remove the plug from the inflation hose and push it fully onto the tyre valve.
› Hold the bottle with the bottom facing upwards and fill all of the sealing agent into the tyre.
› Remove the filler plug from the valve.
› Screw in the valve insert.

Inflate tyres

› Fit the tyre inflation hose of the air compressor to the tyre valve.
› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
› Start the engine.
› Plug the connector into the 12 volt socket .
› Turn on the air compressor.
› Once a tyre pressure of 2.0-2.5 bar is reached, turn off the air compressor.

Observe the maximum running time of the air compressor according to the directions of the repair kit manufacturer.

› If an air pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar has not been reached, remove the tyre inflation hose from the valve.
› Drive approx. 10 metres forwards or backwards to allow the sealing agent to distribute in the tyre.
› Replace the tire inflation hose on the valve and repeat the inflation procedure.

Tyre pressure

What you should be mindful of

NOTICE

▸ Always adjust the tyre pressure to the load.
▸ Check the pressure in all tyres at least once a month and before each longer ride.
▸ Check the pressure when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure of warm tyres.
▸ After each change in tyre pressure, save the new values in the tyre control display.

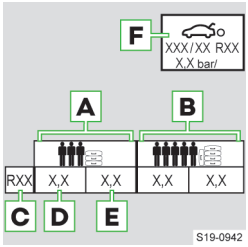
WARNING

Risk of an accident!

▸ If tyre pressure loss is very quick, try to stop the vehicle carefully without heavy steering or heavy braking.

Sticker with prescribed tyre pressures

The sticker with prescribed tyre pressures is located on the inside of the fuel filler flap.



A Inflation pressure for half load
B Inflation pressure for a full load
C Tyre diameter in inches
This information only serves as information for the prescribed tyre pressure. This is not a listing of approved tyre sizes for your vehicle. These are in the vehicle's technical documentation, as well as in the declaration of conformity (in the so-called COC document).
D Tyre pressure reading for the front axle tyres
E Tyre pressure reading for the rear axle tyres
F Prescribed tyre pressure value for the emergency wheel

Tyre pressure monitor

Functionality

The tyre pressure monitoring indicator indicates a change in tyre pressure.

Warning when pressure changes

illuminates

› Stop the vehicle.

› Check the tyres and tyre pressures.

Show tyres with modified pressure

› In the following menu, select the menu item for displaying the tyre condition:

MENU > >

Or:

CAR > Tyres

Function restriction

The system is unable to provide a warning in the event of a very rapid tyre pressure loss, e.g. sudden puncture.

The system function may be restricted in the following cases:

▸ Uneven loading of the wheels, e.g. with a trailer attached
▸ Sporty driving style
▸ Driving on dirt roads
▸ Snow chains fitted

Saving tyre pressure values

Saving tyre pressure values

› Press the SET button under the Infotainment.
› In the displayed menu in Infotainment, tap the functional surface SET.
› Then follow the instructions on the screen.

Save the tyre pressures in the following cases:

▸ Change of tyre pressure
▸ Change of one or more wheels
▸ Change of position of a wheel on the vehicle
▸ Always after covering a distance of 10,000 km or once a year

Troubleshooting

Tyre pressure display faulty

flashes for about 1 minute and stays on

› Stop the vehicle, switch off the ignition and start the engine.

If the symbol flashes again after starting the engine, there is a system fault.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Wheel bolt cover caps

Remove cover caps and install

Disconnecting



› Push the pull-off clamp onto the cover cap up to the stop.
› Remove the cover cap.

Installing

› Push the cover cap onto the wheel bolt to the stop.

Full wheel frame

Removing and installing the trim

Applies to factory built or original accessory trims from ŠKODA.

Disconnecting

› Hang the clamps for removing the wheel trims at the edge of one of the openings in the trim.
› Push the wheel wrench through the clamp, support on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

Installing

› Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the designated valve opening.

When using an anti-theft wheel bolt, it must be located at the location indicated on the bezel.

› Press the trim, starting at the valve, into the rim on both sides until it engages around the entire circumference.

NOTICE

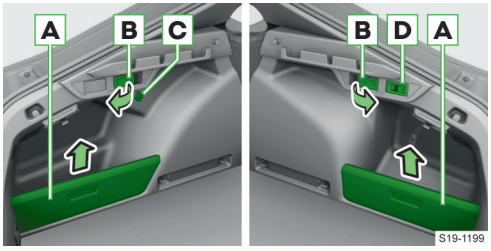
▸ Use hand pressure, do not hit the wheel cover.

Storage space and interior equipment

Equipment in the boot

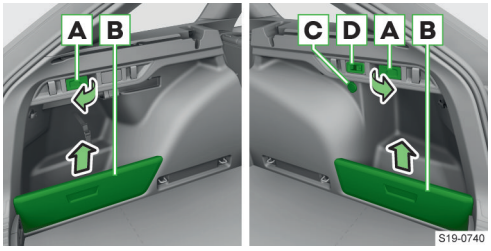
Overview

Luggage compartment of a vehicle without natural gas drive



Variant 1

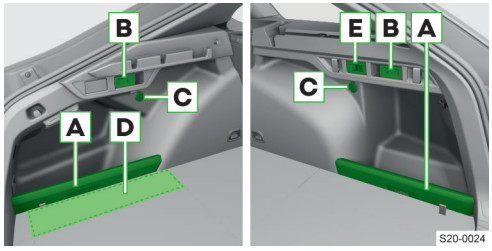
- **A** Removable partition of the storage compartment
  Max. load 2.5 kg
- **B** Lever for folding forward the rear seat backrests
- **C** 12 voltsocket
- **D** Hitch switch



Variant 2

- **A** Lever for folding forward the rear seat backrests
- **B** Removable partition of the storage compartment
  Max. load 2.5 kg
- **C** 12 voltsocket
- **D** Hitch switch

Luggage compartment of a natural gas vehicle

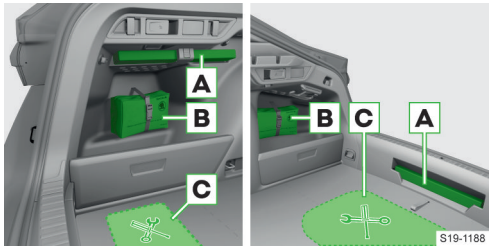


- **A** Removable partition of the storage compartment
  Max. load 2.5 kg
- **B** Lever for folding forward the rear seat backrests
- **C** 12 voltsocket
- **D** Under the floor covering: Storage compartment for the cargoelements
  Load on floor covering max. 75 kg
- **E** Hitch switch

Emergency equipment

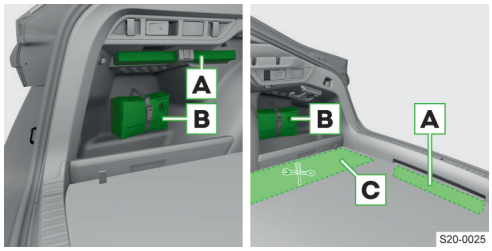
Overview

Emergency equipment in the boot of a vehicle without natural gas drive



- **A** Positioning of the warning triangle (depending on equipment)
- **B** Positioning of the first aid kit (depending on equipment)
- **C** Tool kit

Emergency equipment in the boot of a natural gas vehicle



A Positioning of the warning triangle (depending on equipment)

B Positioning of the first aid kit (depending on equipment)

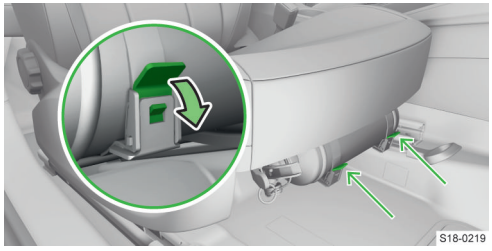
C Tool kit

› In order to access the tool kit in the front luggage compartment area, fold forward the rear seat on the right.

Storage compartment for the reflective vest

The storage compartment for the reflective vest is in the storage compartment of the front door.

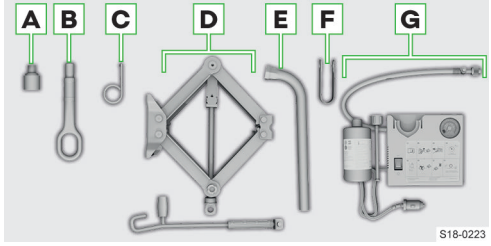
Fire extinguisher under the passenger seat



Tool kit

Overview

Depending on the equipment, not all of the following components may be included in the tool kit.



A Attachment for the anti-theft wheel bolts

B Towing lug

C Bracket for removing the full wheel covers

D Jack with sign and crank

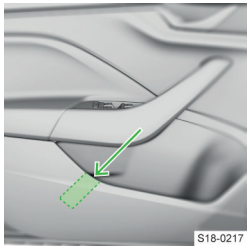
E Wheel wrench

F Removal clip for the wheel bolt cover caps

G Breakdown set

The declaration of conformity is enclosed with the jack or the logbook folder.

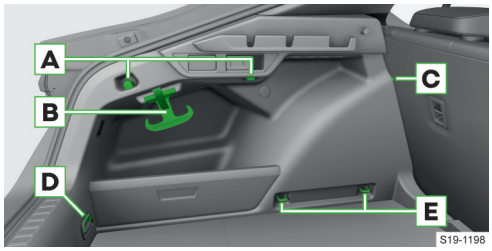
Storage compartment for the reflective vest



Fasteners in the boot

Overview

Vehicle without variable loading floor



Version 1

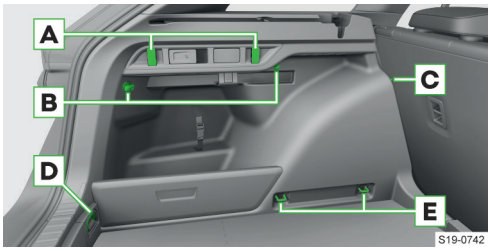
A Hook for securing the fastening nets

B Fold-out double bag hook
Load a max. of 5 kg on each side of the double hook

C Fastener for securing the fastening nets

D Lashing eye for securing the load and the fastening nets
Max. load 350 kg

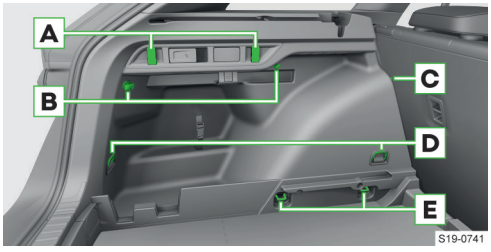
E Lashing eyes for securing the load and the fastening nets
Max. load 350 kg



Version 2

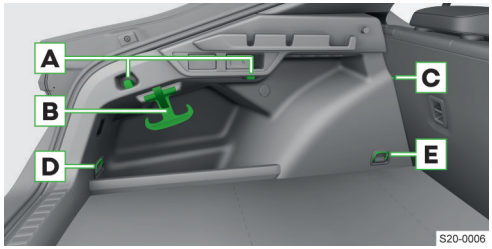
- **A** Fold-out bag hook
  Max. load 7.5 kg
- **B** Hook for securing the fastening nets
- **C** Fastener for securing the fastening nets
- **D** Lashing eye for securing the load and the fastening nets
  Max. load 350 kg
- **E** Lashing eyes for securing the load and the fastening nets
  Max. load 350 kg

Vehicle with variable loading floor



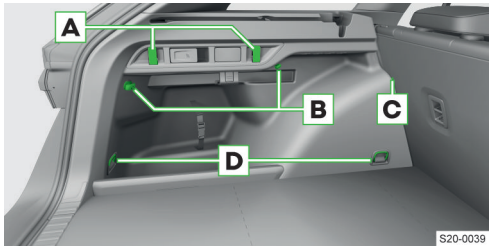
- **A** Fold-out bag hook
  Max. load 7.5 kg
- **B** Hook for securing the fastening nets
- **C** Fastener for securing the fastening nets
- **D** Lashing eyes for securing the load and the fastening nets
  Max. load 350 kg
- **E** Lashing eyes for securing the load and the fastening nets
  Max. load 350 kg

Natural gas vehicle



Version 1

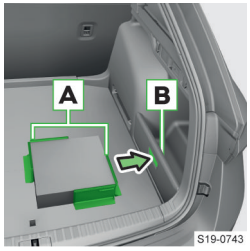
- **A** Hook for securing the fastening nets
- **B** Fold-out double bag hook
  Load a max. of 5 kg on each side of the double hook
- **C** Fastener for securing the fastening nets
- **D** Lashing eye for securing the load and the fastening nets
  Max. load 350 kg
- **E** Lashing eye for securing the load and the fastening nets
  Max. load 350 kg



Version 2

- **A** Fold-out bag hook
  Max. load 7.5 kg
- **B** Hook for securing the fastening nets
- **C** Fastener for securing the fastening nets
- **D** Lashing eyes for securing the load and the fastening nets
  Max. load 350 kg

Other fasteners

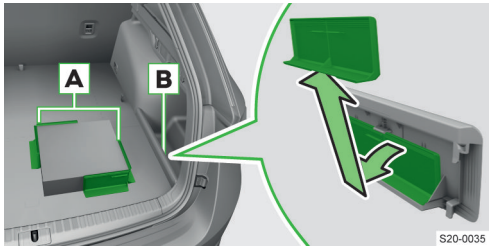


Vehicle without natural gas drive

A Cargo elements
Max. load 8 kg
› Fold up the cargo element and fasten it to the floor covering in the boot.

A storage compartment for the Cargo elements is located on the inside of the side storage compartment or under the floor covering in the boot.

B Release button for the Cargoelements



Natural gas vehicle

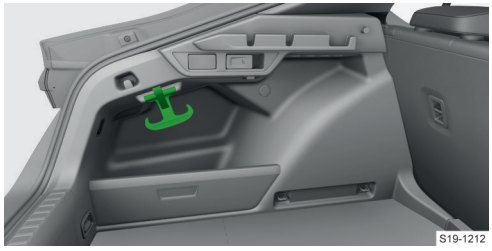
A Cargo elements
Max. load 8 kg
› Fold up the cargo element and fasten it to the floor covering in the boot.

A storage compartment for the Cargo elements is located on the inside of the side storage compartment or under the floor covering in the boot.

B The Cargo elements can be removed manually.

Bag hooks in the boot

Vehicle without natural gas drive



Version 1

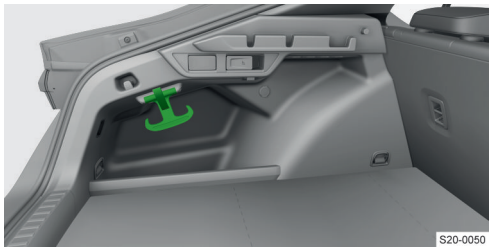
The maximum load on both sides of the double hook is 5 kg each.



Version 2

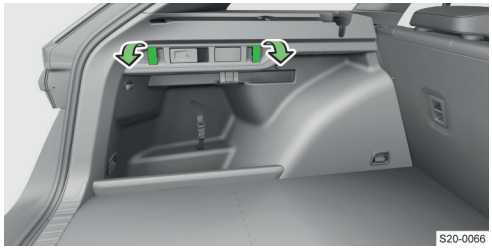
The maximum load for the hook is 7.5 kg.

Natural gas vehicle



Version 1

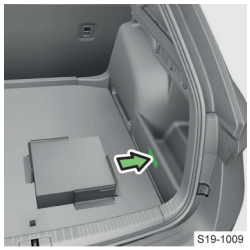
The maximum load on both sides of the double hook is 5 kg each.



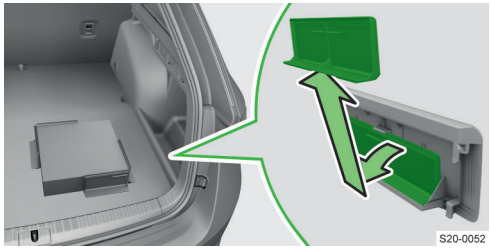
Version 2

The maximum load for the hook is 7.5 kg.

Storage compartment with Cargoelements in the boot



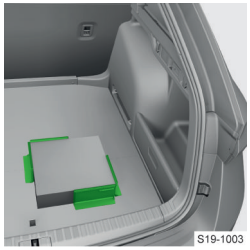
Vehicle without natural gas drive



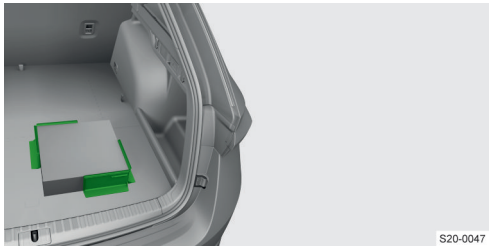
Natural gas vehicle

The maximum load for the Cargoelements is 8 kg.

Cargo elements in the luggage compartment



Vehicle without natural gas drive

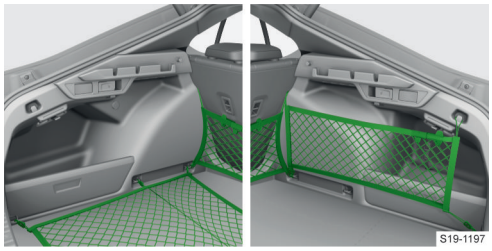


Natural gas vehicle

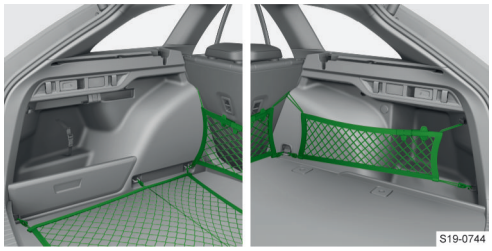
The maximum load for the Cargoelements is 8 kg.

Fastening nets

Overview



Version 1



Version 2

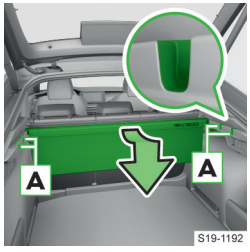
The maximum load of the respective fastening nets is 1.5 kg.

Multifunctional pocket

Operation

The maximum load for the multifunctional pocket is 3 kg.

Unfolding



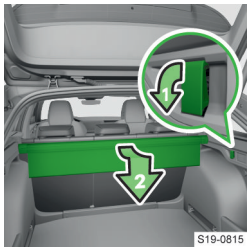
Version 1

› Separate the rear strip by turning in the direction of the arrow.
› Place the rear strip in the wells A.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the rear window.

▸ The contents of the multifunctional pocket must not protrude beyond the top edge of the strips.



› Fold down the front hooks on both sides of the boot.
› Separate the rear strip by turning it in the direction of the arrow and place it on the hooks.

Version 2

Folding



› Remove the rear strip from the wells.
› Place the rear strip against the front strip and fold the two strips together by turning them.

Version 1



› Remove the rear strip from the hooks.
› Place the rear strip against the front strip and fold the two strips together by turning them.

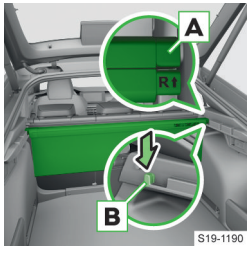
Version 2

Removing and inserting

Removing

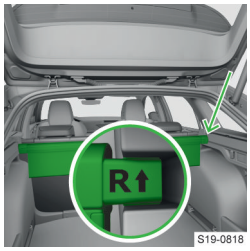
› Remove the boot cover.
› Take out the folded pocket in an upwards direction.

Inserting



› Put the end of the strip A on the holder B.
› Proceed in the same way on the left side.

Version 1



› Insert the end of the strip marked with R↑ into the right-hand mount and the end of the strip marked with ↑L into the left-hand mount.

Version 2

Stowing the pocket under the variable loading floor

› Remove the variable loading floor.

Or:

› Unfold the variable loading floor in the upper position and lift it in the rear area.



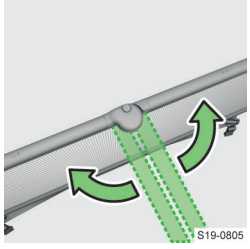
› Insert the pocket into the recesses of the side partitions.

If the multifunction pocket and the roll-up cover are stowed at the same time, the roll-up cover at the front must cover the multifunction pocket.

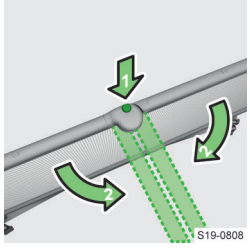
Net partition

Attach the net partition

Unfolding/folding



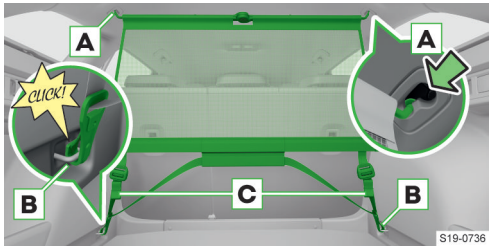
› Open the arms of the cross bar until you hear the locking button audibly click into place.



› Press the safety button and fold the arms of the crossbar together.

The folded mesh partition can be stowed under the variable loading floor.

Attach at the back



› Remove the roll-up cover or fold up the rear seat backrests.
› Insert the crossbar into the mount A on one side and push it forwards.
› Fix the bar in the same way on the other side.
› Snap the carabiners B into the lashing eyes.
› Pull the straps firmly at the free ends C.

Fasten in the front
The procedure is analogous to the process behind.

The lashing eyes for the carabiner are located under the central body pillars.

Loosening
Loosening takes place in the reverse order to fixing.

Double-sided floor covering

Overview

Depending on the equipment, the vehicle may be equipped with a double-sided floor covering in the luggage compartment. One side is made of fabric, the other side is washable.

Rigid boot cover

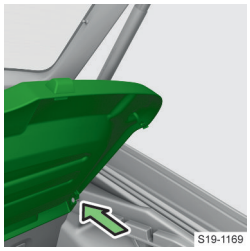
Removing and inserting

The maximum load of the other fastening nets is 1 kg.

Removing

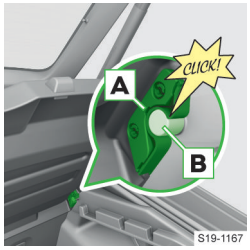


› Unhook the straps.



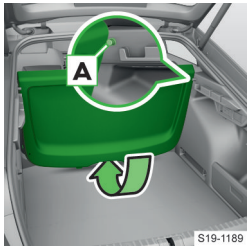
› Hold the raised cover in place and press the underside of the cover on both sides.
› Remove the cover.

Inserting



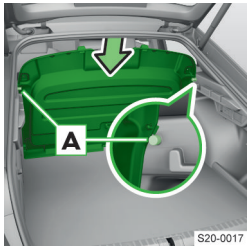
› Insert the mount A opposite the holder B on both sides of the boot.
› Press on the cover from above until it engages.
› Hook in the retaining straps.

Stow the cover behind the rear seats of a vehicle without natural gas drive



› Remove the cover and place it on the floor cover in the boot.
› Lift up the cover in the front area.
› Push the cover up between the rear seats and the bracket A.

Store the cover behind the rear seats of a natural gas vehicle



› Push the cover up between the rear seats and the bracket A.

⚠ **WARNING**
The boot cover stowed behind the rear seats restricts the driver's rear view.

Roll-up luggage compartment cover

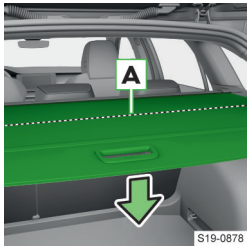
Operation

Extending



› Pull out the cover on the handle until it clicks into place.

Retracting



› Press the cover in the handle area.

The cover rolls up to the intermediate position A.

Press again to fully open the cover.

It is possible that the cover rolls more slowly during winter weather conditions.

Settings

Automatic rewinding of the cover to the intermediate position

The cover automatically rolls into the intermediate position when the boot lid is opened.

The function is activated or deactivated in the following menu in the Infotainment system:

CAR > ⚙ > *Outside* > *Opening and closing*

Or:

MENU > 🚗 > 🚗 > *Outside*

› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Central locking* .

› Select *Central locking* .

Removing and inserting

Take out and insert the roll-up cover



› Press the end of the crossbar and take out or insert the cover.

Stowing the cover under the variable loading floor

› Remove the variable loading floor.

Or:

› Unfold the variable loading floor in the upper position and lift it in the rear area.



› Insert the cover into the recesses of the side partitions.

› Fold the free part of the cover forwards with the handle.

If the roll-up cover and the multifunction bag are stowed at the same time, the roll-up cover must cover the multifunction bag at the front.

Variable loading floor in the boot

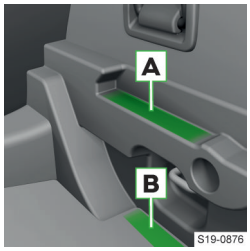
Setting the position

The maximum load of the variable loading floor is 75 kg.

Set the variable loading floor to the upper or lower position



› Lift the variable loading floor and pull it towards you so that it is lowered in the front area onto the floor covering in the boot.



› To set in the upper position, position the variable loading floor in the front area on area A.
› To set in the lower position, position the variable loading floor in the front area on area B.



› Press the variable loading floor forward and hang up.

Fasten the raised variable loading floor in the upper position



› Raise the rear part of the variable loading floor.



› Fasten the raised variable loading floor to the frame of the luggage compartment lid using the hook.

NOTICE
Before closing the boot lid, remove the hook from the frame.

Removing and inserting

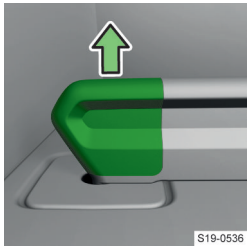
› Lift the variable loading floor up to a distance of about 15 cm below the boot cover and then remove it.
› Insertion takes place in reverse order.

Partition in the boot

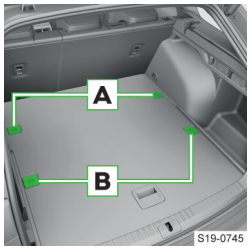
Removing and inserting

Removing and inserting the partition
The partition prevents the cargo from slipping.

The maximum load for the partition is 10 kg.



› To **remove**, pull the securing tabs upwards and outwards and remove the partition.

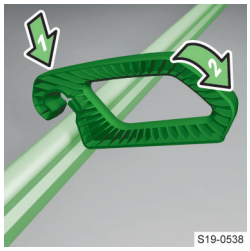


› To **insert**, engage the partition in the fixing points A or B.

Remove fastening element and insert
The fastening element prevents the cargo from slipping.

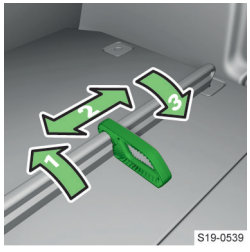
The fastening element is attached to the partition on the variable loading floor.

The maximum load for the fastening element is 10 kg.



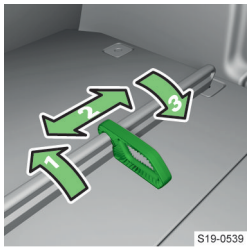
› To **insert**, position the fastening element in an oblique direction on the partition and press downwards.
› **Removing** takes place in reverse order.

Move the fastening element



1 Release
2 Moving
3 Applying

Partition with fastening element in the boot



The maximum load for the partition is 10 kg.

The maximum load for the fastening element is 10 kg.

Through-loading bag

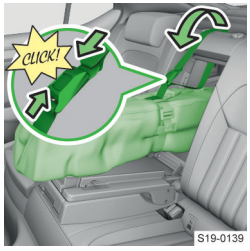
Insert and lock

In the bag, a max. of 4 pairs of skis with poles can be transported.

› Fold the rear armrest and the cover in the seat backrest downwards.
› Place the empty bag in the opening in such a way that the end of the bag with the zip is in the boot.
› Place the skis with the tips facing to the front and the poles with the tips facing to the rear into the bag and close the bag.



› Tighten the strap A around the skis in front of the bindings.
› Fold the seat backrest a little forward.



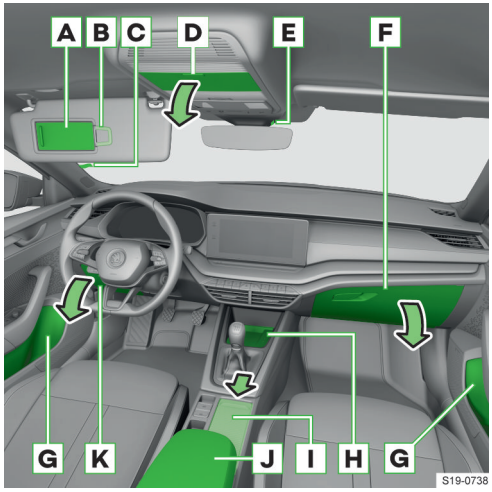
› Guide the securing strap B through the opening around the upper part of the seat backrest.
› Fold the seat backrests back until the locking button clicks into place.
› Insert the securing strap into the lock until it clicks into place.

⚠ WARNING
The maximum weight of the transported skis is 17 kg.

ⓘ NOTICE
Risk of damage to the armrest!
▸ Handle the bag and the skis with care.

Interior equipment front

Overview



A Make up mirror

B Ticket holder

C Car park ticket holder

D Glasses compartment
Max. load 0.25 kg
› To open, press the button.

E USB-connection
The USB connection is for charging only.

F Storage compartment with air outlet nozzle
Max. load 3 kg
In the compartment, there is a card holder and a pen holder.
› Pull the handle to open the compartment.
› Turn the knob to position ☼ to open the air outlet nozzle.

G Storage tray
▸ Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 1.5 l
▸ Storage compartment for the waste container
▸ Storage compartment for the reflective vest

H Storage compartment (depending on vehicle equipment):
▸ Phonebox
▸ USB-connections

The USB connections can be used for charging and for data transfer.

I Storage tray
A drinks holder is located in the compartment.
› Pull the strip to open the compartment.

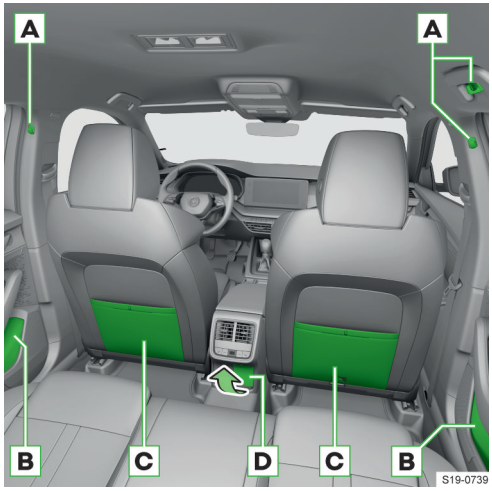
J Openable and adjustable armrest with storage compartment
› To open the compartment, lift the armrest.

K Storage tray
Max. load 0.5 kg
A card holder is located in the compartment.
› Pull on the handle to open.

NOTICE
▸ Do not leave any heat-sensitive objects in the spectacle compartment D.

Interior equipment rear

Overview



A Coat hook
Max. load 2 kg

B Storage tray
▸ Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 1.5 l
▸ Storage compartment for the reflective vest

C Storage pocket
▸ Telephone pocket

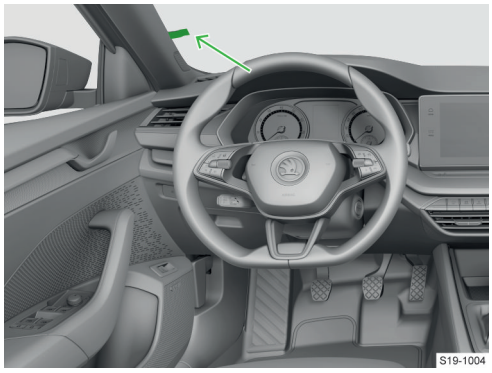
D Depending upon vehicle equipment:
▸ 230 volt socket and USB connection
The USB connection is for charging only.
▸ USB-connections
The USB connections are for charging only.
▸ Storage tray

WARNING
▸ Only hang light clothing on the hooks. Do not leave heavy and sharp objects in the pockets of the clothing.
▸ Do not use hangers to hang clothes.

Storage pocket for phone



Car park ticket holder



Bottle tray in the storage compartment of the front door



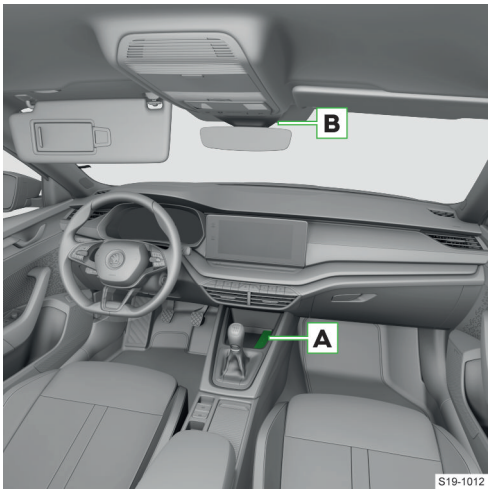
The tray is suitable for bottles with a max. size of 1.5 l.

Bottle tray in the storage compartment of the rear door



The tray is suitable for bottles with a max. size of 1.5 l.

USB-connections



A The USB connections can be used for charging and for data transfer.

B The USB connection is for charging only.



The USB connections are for charging only.

Hook on the centre body pillar



The maximum load for the hook is 2 kg.

⚠ **WARNING**

- Only hang light clothing on the hooks. Do not leave heavy and sharp objects in the pockets of the clothing.
- Do not use hangers to hang clothes.

Glasses compartment



The maximum load for the compartment is 0.25 kg.

ⓘ **NOTICE**

- Do not leave heat-sensitive objects behind in the glasses compartment.

Pen holder

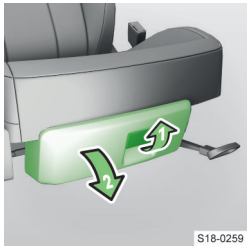


Storage compartment for cards in the storage area on the driver's side



Storage compartment under the front seat

Opening the storage compartment



The maximum permissible load for the storage compartment is 1.5 kg.

Storage compartment for an umbrella

Overview



NOTICE
Risk of damage to the bodywork and the interior trim of the vehicle!
- In the storage compartment, only insert the umbrella from the ŠKODA original accessories.
- Always push the umbrella into the storage compartment as far as it will go.

Storage compartment for hand brush

Overview



NOTICE
Risk of damage to the body and the interior trim of the vehicle!
- In the storage compartment, only insert the hand brush from the ŠKODA original accessories.
- Always push the hand brush into the storage compartment as far as it will go.

Phonebox

What you should be mindful of

CAUTION
Risk of burns during charging.
- The phone may get warm, remove it carefully from the storage compartment.
- Do not leave any metal objects in the compartment under the phone. If there is a metallic object in the storage compartment, which has become hot, remove the phone and let it cool down in the storage compartment!

Functionality

Phonebox functions
- Wireless charging of phones.
- Amplification of the telephone signal (only valid for some countries).

The Phonebox is located in the storage compartment in the centre console at the front.

Insert a telephone with a maximum size of 160x80 mm into the storage compartment.

Charging Indicator
Applies to Infotainment Swing.

The state of charge is indicated by the colour of the symbol in the status bar on the Infotainment screen.
- White - the phone is in the storage compartment, is detected and is charging.
- Grey - the phone is not in the storage compartment/does not support wireless charging/is fully charged.
- Red - the phone is in the storage compartment, is detected, but cannot be charged.
- No icon displayed - the function is not available.

Charging Indicator
Applies to Infotainment Bolero and Columbus.

The charge status is indicated by text on the Infotainment screen.

Recommendations for optimal function
- The phone is positioned with the screen facing up.
- Insert the phone without the protective case.
- Position the phone centrally on the phone symbol on the pad.

Operating conditions

Conditions for wireless charging
- ✓ The ignition is switched on.
- ✓ The phone supports the Qi standard.
- ✓ There is no object between the pad and the phone.

Troubleshooting

A message has been displayed on the Infotainment screen indicating that the mobile phone cannot be charged. The symbol lights up in the status bar along with !.
- Check that there is no object between the support and the phone to be charged. If this is the case, remove the phone and the item. Place the phone centrally on the phone symbol on the pad again.

▸ Check that the position of the phone to be charged has not changed. If this is the case, remove the phone and put it back in the centre of the phone symbol on the pad.

Cup holder

Overview

Cup holder at the front



A bottle can be opened with one hand in the holder.

› Press the bottle into the holder and unscrew the cap.

Rear cup holder



› To open it, open the lid.

⚠ **CAUTION**
Risk of scalding!
▸ Never put hot beverage containers in the drinks holder.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Danger of damage to the electrical system and the panels from spilled drinks.

Cup holder Easy Open

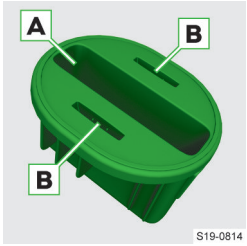


A bottle can be opened with one hand in the holder.

Multimedia holder

Overview

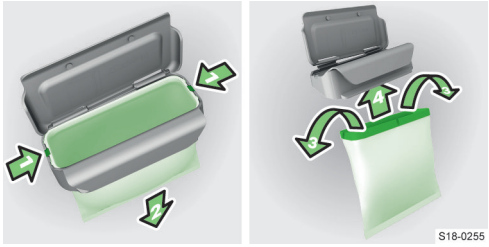
The multimedia holder is inserted in the cup holder.



A Storage compartment for a mobile phone
B Storage compartment for coins

Waste container

Replace bags



Ceiling

Removing and inserting

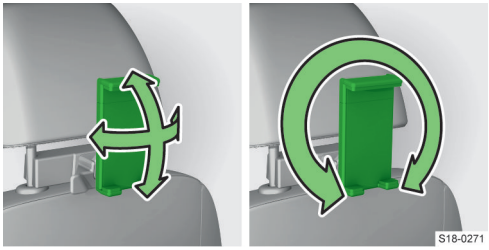
The blanket is in a bag that can be attached to one of the following locations:

▸ On the guide rods of the front headrests
▸ In the storage pockets on the backs of the front seats

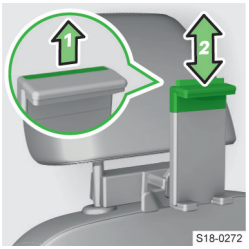
Tablet holder

Settings

Tilt and turn



Adjust size

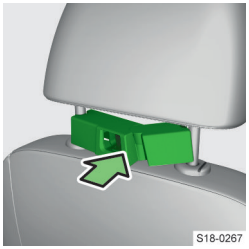


› Pull out the locking tab and move the upper part of the holder to the desired position.

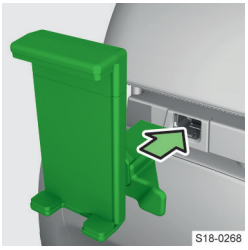
Set the minimum size of the empty holder to avoid noise while driving.

Removal and Insertion

Fasten behind the headrests

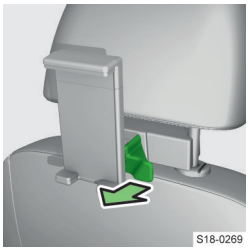


› Place the open adapter on the front guide rods of the headrest and clip in carefully.

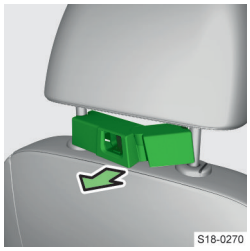


› Clip in the holder in the adapter.

Removal



› Press the safety button and unfold the holder.



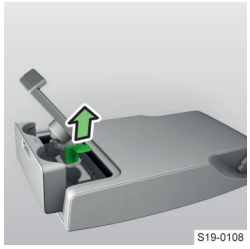
› Press on the adapter and remove it.

Insert into the rear armrest



› Clip the holder into the opening.

Removal



› Press the safety button and unfold the holder.

Technical data

The holder is for fixing a tablet with a height of min. 11.5 cm and max. 19.5 cm.

The maximum load for the holder is 0.75 kg.

12-Volt power socket

Operating conditions

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the electrical system of the vehicle!

▸ Use the sockets only for the connection of approved electrical accessories with a total power consumption of up to 120 watts.

NOTICE

Danger of damage to the connected consumers!

▸ Switch off the consumers before switching the ignition on or off and before starting the engine.

230-Volt power socket

Functionality

NOTICE
Danger of damage to the connected consumers!
- Do not connect a light with fluorescent lamp to the socket.
- Switch off the consumers before switching the ignition on or off and before starting the engine.

Status display
- Lit up in green - the socket is switched on.
- Blinking green - the socket is still switched on for about 10 minutes after the engine has been switched off, if a consumer was connected before the engine was switched off.

The socket has a child safety lock. When inserting the plug, the fuse is unlocked and the socket is switched on.

Operating conditions

✓ Running engine

On vehicles with the START-STOP system, the socket also works in STOP mode.

Troubleshooting

The indicator light flashes red
The socket is turned off e.g. for the following reasons:
- Excessive current
- Low state of charge of the 12-volt vehicle battery
- Overheating of the socket

› If the reasons given above no longer exist and the socket is not switched on automatically, disconnect the connected load from the socket and reconnect after a short time.

230 volt socket and USB connections



The USB connections are for charging only.

48-volt battery

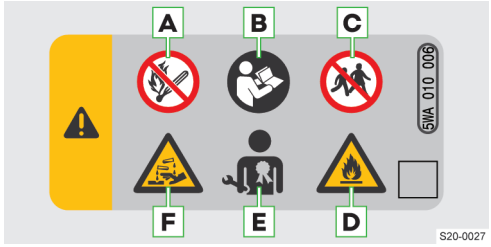
Usage

Due to the recuperation, the electrical energy generated during braking is stored in the 48-volt battery.

The electrical energy stored in this way is then used to start the engine, as a short-term acceleration assist and to power the consumers in the vehicle.

What you should be mindful of

Depending on the equipment, the vehicle can have a 48-volt battery.



Warning sign on the vehicle battery

A Do not expose the vehicle battery to fire, sparks or open flames.

B Further information can be found in the Operating Manual.

C Keep children away from the vehicle battery.

D Use caution when handling flammable or combustible materials.

E Have work on the vehicle battery carried out by qualified service technicians.

F If the vehicle battery is damaged, avoid contact with leaking liquids.

⚠ **WARNING**
- Do not perform any work on the vehicle battery.
- This work may only be carried out by qualified service technicians.
- The vehicle battery must not come into contact with any liquids.

Overview

The 48-volt system and the 48-volt battery in the vehicle consist of the following components:
- Vehicle battery
- Power electronics
- Violet coloured cables and plugs

Storage compartment with air outlet nozzle

Overview

In the compartment, there is a card holder and a pen holder.

The maximum load for the compartment is 3 kg.

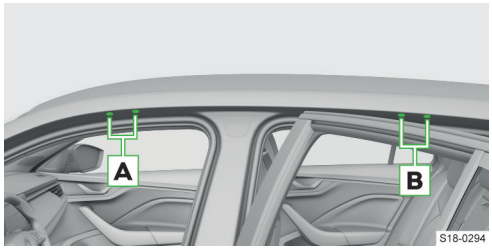
› Turn the knob in the compartment to position ☼ to open the air outlet nozzle.

Roof rack and hitch

Roof rack

Technical data

The maximum weight of the load incl. roof rack is 75 kg.



Depending on the equipment, the roof bars can be attached at the attachment points A and B.

Swivelling hitch

What you should be mindful of

Applies to natural gas vehicles.

⚠ **WARNING**
An improperly installed or unsuitable tow hitch can damage the natural gas reservoir of the vehicle in an accident and thus deepen the consequences of the accident or cause fatal injuries.
- Due to the specific structure of the vehicles with natural gas reservoirs, we recommend using only the original ŠKODA tow hitch. With these accessories, ŠKODA stands for safety, reliability and suitability for this vehicle type.
- We recommend that all related assembly work be carried out by ŠKODA service partners.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
- Do not manipulate the switch for swinging the tow bar in and out while a trailer or another accessory is coupled to the tow bar. The tow bar could be unlocked.

⚠ **CAUTION**
Risk of injury!
- Handle the trailer coupling carefully.
- When swinging out the tow bar, do not stand in the middle area of the rear bumper.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Risk of damage to the trailer coupling!
- When not using the towing device, swing the tow bar under the bumper.

Retrofitting a tow hitch

NOTICE
Risk of damaging the fuel tank!
With certain vehicles, it is necessary to remove the aerodynamic panelling of the exhaust system on the underbody before retrofitting a tow hitch.
▸ Ask a specialist garage if it is necessary to remove the aerodynamic panelling on your vehicle.

Tow bar: swivel out/in

Swing out the tow bar



› Pull on the switch. The tow bar swings out. The indicator light inside the switch illuminates.



› Press the tow bar until it audibly clicks into place.

Check latchings: the indicator light within the switch lights up.

Swivel tow bar

NOTICE
▸ No trailer or any other accessory can be connected to the tow bar.
▸ A socket or adapter may not be plugged into the socket.



› Pull on the switch. The tow bar is unlocked. The indicator light inside the switch illuminates.



› Swing in the tow bar under the bumper until it audibly clicks into place.

Check latchings: the indicator light within the switch lights up.

Coupling or uncoupling a trailer or accessory

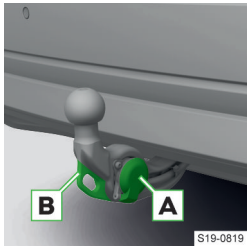
The following information describes the procedure for coupling and uncoupling a trailer. The information also refers to another accessory, e.g. a bike carrier.

WARNING
Risk of an accident!
▸ Do not use the safety eye for towing.
▸ Distribute and fix the load correctly.

The trailer has a 13-pin electrical socket. If the trailer has a 7-pin connector, use a corresponding adapter from the ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Coupling

› Swing out the tow bar.
› Put the trailer drawbar onto the ball head.



› Plug the electrical trailer plug into the socket A.
› Hook the tear-off rope of the trailer onto the safety eye B. The tear-off rope must sag against the vehicle in all trailer positions.

Uncoupling

Uncoupling takes place in reverse order.

Power supply of the trailer power network

In the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer, the trailer is powered by the vehicle.

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the vehicle electronics!
The total power consumption of all consumers connected to the trailer power supply must not exceed 350 watts.

Troubleshooting

Trailer coupling error

The indicator light inside the switch does not light up or flash, or the tow bar does not lock into place.

› Do not use the trailer coupling.

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

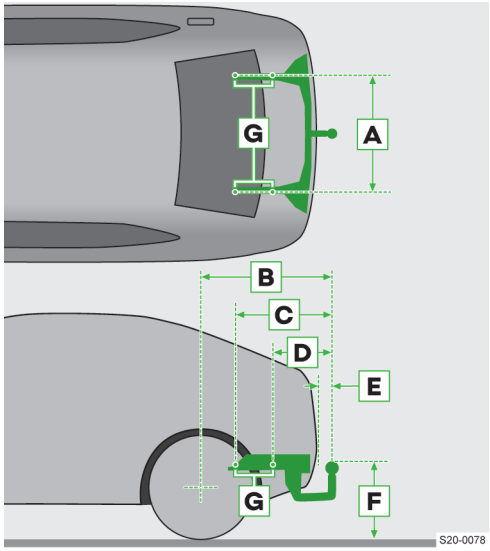
Tow bar not locked

illuminates

› Engage the tow bar.

Technical data

Tow hitch attachment points



- **A** Distance of the attachment points
- **B** Length of the rear overhang to the centre of the ball head
- **C** Distance of the front attachment point to the centre of the ball head
- **D** Distance of the rear attachment point to the centre of the ball head
- **E** Distance of the rear bumper to the centre of the ball head (according to the ECE-55 standard)
- **F** Distance from the centre of the ball head to the road (according to the standard ECE-55)
- **G** Fastening points on the body

In mm	
A	1040
B	1185.5
C	587.3
D	367.3
E	min. 65
F	350-420

Maximum vertical load for trailer operation

The maximum vertical load for trailer operation depends on the engine type and the vehicle equipment.

The valid specification for your vehicle can be found in the technical vehicle documentation, (e.g. vehicle approval documentation, the COC document) or at a ŠKODA partner.

Other information (e.g. on the nameplate of the trailer device) merely provides information on the test values of the device.

Support load with mounted accessories

When using the accessories (e.g. bicycle carrier), the maximum length and the permissible total weight including load must be considered.

The maximum length of the mounted accessories (from the ball of the towing device) may not exceed 70 cm.

The permissible total weight of the mounted accessories including its load corresponds to the maximum vertical load for trailer operation; the value can be found in the vehicle registration documentation.

If the maximum load in trailer operation is more than 75 kg, then the permissible total weight of the mounted accessories including their load must not exceed 75 kg.

This value applies if the centre of gravity is at a distance of no more than 30 cm from the towing device ball head.

If the distance of the centre gravity of the load to the ball head of the towing device is greater than 30 cm, then the max. permissible total weight of the accessory, including its load, decreases (e.g. at a distance of 60 cm from the ball head, the permissible weight decreases by half).

If the distance between the centre of gravity of the load and the ball head of the towing hitch is 70 cm, the permissible total weight of the accessories including their load is reduced to 0 kg.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

- ▸ Do not exceed the maximum vertical load.
- ▸ The permissible trailer load and the weight of another accessory, e.g. of the bike carrier, is not to be exceeded.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the trailer and the vehicle itself!

- ▸ When using the accessory (e.g. bicycle carrier), observe the maximum length and the permissible total weight of the accessory incl.

Maintaining and cleaning

Service events

service intervals
Compliance with service intervals is crucial for the life and value of the vehicle.

You will be notified of the due date for service with the symbol and the corresponding message on the display of the instrument cluster.

The specialist garage will inform you of the type of service interval, the option of changing this and the scope of service.

All services and the replacement or refilling of operating fluids are chargeable to the customer, even during the warranty period, unless the ŠKODA AUTO warranty conditions or other binding agreements determine otherwise.

Proof of service
A specialist garage stores the proof of service in the information system called Digital Service Plan.

The proof of service can be printed out.

Show service appointment
› In Infotainment, select the following menu:

CAR › › Menu item for the Service

Or:

MENU › › › Menu item for the Service

Resetting information
We recommend that you do not reset the information regarding service events on your own. It can lead to incorrect setting of the service intervals and thus also to possible faults in the vehicle.

For vehicles with a variable service interval, new service interval values calculated according to the previous operating conditions will be displayed after the oil change service indicator is reset. These values will then continue to be adjusted according to the current operating conditions.

Service work, adjustments and technical changes

The instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO must be observed when carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to the vehicle.

Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep the vehicle in a good technical condition.

We advise only using ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts which have been expressly approved for use on your vehicle. Reliability, safety and suitability for your vehicle are guaranteed with these.

ŠKODA Service partner
All ŠKODA service partners work according to the instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO. Service and repair work is therefore carried out on time and at the appropriate quality. Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep the vehicle in a good technical condition.

We therefore advise having all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to the vehicle carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

ŠKODA original parts
We recommend the use of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for your vehicle, as these parts are approved by ŠKODA AUTO. These parts comply wholly with ŠKODA AUTO regulations and are identical to the parts used in series production.

ŠKODA AUTO is able to warrant the safety, suitability, and long life of these products.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years after sale in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement.

ŠKODA original accessories
We recommend that you use ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in your vehicle. With these accessories, ŠKODA AUTO stands for safety, reliability and the suitability for your vehicle type.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories for a period of 2 years after installation or delivery in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement or any other agreements.

Spoiler

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
- ▸ Only use the original spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the original spoiler on the boot lid.
- ▸ The original spoiler on the front bumper cannot be left on its own without the spoiler on the luggage compartment lid or in combination with an unsuitable spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
- ▸ We recommend that you consult the ŠKODA Service Partner for any repairs to or replacement, addition or removal of spoilers.

Component protection
Some electronic vehicle components (such as the instrument cluster) are factory-equipped with component protection. This component protection ensures the functional limitation of these components in a

non-legitimate installation in another vehicle (e.g. after a theft) or operation outside the vehicle.

Interior

What you should be mindful of

NOTICE
- ▸ Use cleaning agents intended for cleaning and care of the individual materials.
- ▸ Do not use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents.

Natural leather / Faux leather / Alcantara ® / Suedia / material

NOTICE
- ▸ Remove impurities as soon as possible.
- ▸ Do not use solvents, floor wax, shoe cream, stain remover or similar agents on Alcantara® and Suedia suede seat upholstery.
- ▸ Make sure that natural leather is not moistened when cleaning and that no water seeps into the seams.
- ▸ Do not clean the roof cladding with a brush.

NOTICE
Risk of fading to the cover fabric!
- ▸ If necessary, do not leave the covers for long periods in the blazing sun.

- ▸ During use, the leather and Alcantara®- and Suedia and materials may show minor changes (e.g. folds or discolouration). This does not constitute a material defect.
- ▸ Some clothing fabrics, e.g. dark denim, sometimes do not have sufficient colour fastness. As a result, discolouration that is clearly visible on the seat upholstery can occur. This is not a defect in the fabric.
- ▸ Sharp-edged zippers, rivets, clamps and similar garments can damage the upholstery in the vehicle. Such damages cannot be subsequently recognised as a justified complaint.

Plastic parts

NOTICE
Risk of damaging the dash panel!
- ▸ Do not attach fragrances and air fresheners to the dash panel.

Windows

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the filaments or the glass antenna!
- ▸ Do not stick stickers on the heating filaments.
- ▸ Do not use sharp objects (such as pot scrapers, etc.) to clean the windows.

Covers on electrically heated seats

NOTICE
Risk of damaging the heating system!
- ▸ Do not clean the seats with water or other liquids.
- ▸ Do not dry the seats by switching on the heating.

Seat belts

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the seat belts!
- ▸ Do not dry clean the seat belts.
- ▸ Allow cleaned belts to dry before rolling up.

Instructions for cleaning

Natural leather / Faux leather / Alcantara ® / Suedia / material
- › Remove dust and dirt on the surface with a vacuum cleaner.
- › Remove fresh impurities with water, slightly moistened cotton cloth or woollen cloth; if necessary, use a mild soap solution [1] and wipe with a dry cloth.
- › Remove stubborn stains with a suitable cleaning agent.
- › For regular care of natural leather, use the equipment provided for this purpose. After each clean, use a care cream with light protection and impregnation effect.
- › When looking after Alcantara®-, Suedia and and fabric surfaces, remove stubborn hair with a cleaning brush. Remove pills from materials with a brush.

Plastic parts
- › Remove impurities with water, slightly moistened cloth or sponge with a suitable cleaning agent if necessary.

Windows
- › Remove impurities with clean water and dry with a cloth provided for this purpose.

Infotainment screen
- › Remove any impurities on the screen using the cleaning agents provided.

NOTICE
Danger of screen damage!
- ▸ When removing dirt, do not press on the screen.

Covers on electrically heated seats
- › Remove impurities with a suitable cleaning agent.

[1] A mild soap solution consisting of 2 tablespoons of white neutral soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

Seat belts

› Remove impurities with a soft cloth and mild soap solution.[1)]

Exterior

What you should be mindful of

⚠ **WARNING**

Risk of accident!

After washing the vehicle, the functionality of the brake system may be affected by moisture and, in winter, by ice.

▶ Dry and clean the brakes by braking several times.

NOTICE

▶ Bird droppings, insect residues, litter and sea salt residues, overflowed fuel,AdBlue® etc. are to be removed as soon as possible.

▶ Do not use rough sponges, scourers or similar to remove dirt.

▶ Use cleaning agents intended for cleaning and care of the individual materials.

▶ Do not use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents.

▶ Do not polish the vehicle in a dusty environment.

NOTICE

AdBlue® picks up some materials, e.g. paint and plastics.

▶ Clean the affected area with a damp cloth and cold water.

▶ Remove any dried solution with warm water and a sponge.

NOTICE

▶ Paint damage should be repaired as soon as possible.

▶ Do not treat matt lacquered parts with polish or hard wax.

▶ Do not polish foils.

▶ We recommend treating door seals and window guides with the appropriate tools from ŠKODA original accessories. These ensure that the protective lacquer layer of the seals and window guides is not attacked.

▶ Do not use abrasive cleaning agents to clean the rear view camera.

Before driving through a car wash

› Observe the usual specifications of the car wash, e.g. close all windows, fold the mirrors, etc.

› Move the windscreen wiper lever to position **OFF** to adjust.

› If there are special attachments on your vehicle, observe the instructions of the car wash operator.

NOTICE

Before driving through a car wash, the following conditions must be met if rolling the vehicle is required:

✓ Ignition on

✓ In vehicles with manual gearbox, where the gear-shift lever is in neutral position

✓ In vehicles with an automatic gearbox, where the selector lever in the N position

✓ Electric parking brake switched off

✓ Auto Hold function deactivated

NOTICE

In vehicles with an electric luggage compartment lid, this can open automatically due to the pressure of the washing brushes.

▶ Lock the vehicle, e.g. with the central lock button.

After washing with a wax preservation

› Wipe off the windscreen wiper blades with a dry cloth.

Wash with a pressure washer

NOTICE

▶ Follow the operating instructions for the high-pressure cleaner, in particular the instructions relating to the pressure and the spray distance to the vehicle surface.

▶ Do not direct the water jet directly at the following vehicle parts
  ▶ Films
  ▶ Lock cylinder
  ▶ Columns on the vehicle
  ▶ Trailer connection
  ▶ Swivelling ball bar
  ▶ Camera lenses and sensors
  ▶ Plastic, chromed and anodised parts

Remove snow and ice

NOTICE

▶ Remove snow and ice with a plastic scraper or a suitable deicing agent.

▶ Clean the cameras with a hand brush.

▶ Only move the scraper in one direction.

▶ Do not use scratchers or other sharp objects for foils.

▶ Do not remove snow and ice with hot or warm water.

▶ Do not remove snow and ice from surfaces with coarse dirt.

---

1) A mild soap solution consisting of 2 tablespoons of white neutral soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

Instructions for cleaning

Handwash

› Wash the vehicle from top to bottom with a soft sponge or wash glove and plenty of water, if necessary with additional suitable cleaning agents.
› For foils and headlights, use a mild soap solution that contains two tablespoons of white neutral soap to one litre of lukewarm water.
› Use a glass cleaner for the windscreen wiper blades.
› Wash the cameras with clean water and dry with a suitable clean wipe.

NOTICE

▸ Wash out the sponge or wash mitt regularly.
▸ Use a different sponge for wheels, sills and the lower part of the vehicle than that used for the other vehicle parts.
▸ Do not wash the vehicle in the blazing sun.
▸ Do not dry the headlights or use sharp objects.
▸ Do not put pressure on the bodywork when washing.
▸ The temperature of the washing water may be a max. 60 °C.

After hand washing

› Rinse the vehicle and wipe it with a suitable clean cloth.

Vehicle paint

› Preserve the varnish at least twice a year with hard wax.
› Use a polish for matt lacquers.

Films

Films will age and become brittle – this is entirely normal: this is not an error.

The following factors have a negative effect on the life or colour fastness of the films:

▸ Sun rays
▸ moisture
▸ Air pollution
▸ Stones, e.g. due to the rebound of the cargo during transport on the roof rack

Protection of hollow spaces

Corrosion-prone cavities of the vehicle are permanently protected by preservative wax at the factory.

› Remove spilled wax with a plastic scraper, clean stains with mineral spirits.

Underseal

The underside is permanently protected by the factory against chemical and mechanical influences.

› Have the protective coating checked by a specialist garage before starting and at the end of the cold season.

Wheels

› After washing, preserve the wheels with suitable means.

WARNING

Risk of an accident!

▸ Severe dirt on the wheels can result in the wheels unbalancing.

Car jack

› If necessary, treat moving parts with suitable grease.

Tow hitch

› Coat the ball head of the towing device with a suitable grease whenever necessary.

Ice scraper

On the fuel filler flap



Technical data and specifications

Requirements for the technical data

The emission standard, information on fuel consumption and other information pertaining to your vehicle can be found listed in the technical vehicle documentation and in the declaration of conformity (in the so-called COC Document).

The information listed was determined in accordance with rules and under conditions that are stipulated by legal or technical regulations.

This and other information about your vehicle and the declaration of conformity can be obtained from a ŠKODA Partner.

The details in the technical vehicle documentation and in the declaration of conformity take precedence over the information in this Owner's Manual. These specifications and values apply to your vehicle in its condition and configuration at the time of delivery from the manufacturer. Retrofitting an accessory can have a negative impact on this information and values, in particular the values regarding fuel consumption and carbon dioxide (CO_2), which are specified in the vehicle documentation and in the declaration of conformity.

The performance values listed were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

Vehicle identification data

Vehicle identification number (VIN)
The vehicle identification number is found at the following locations:

- Directly in the engine compartment on the suspension turret
- On a plate under the windscreen in the lower left corner
- On the type plate at the bottom of the middle body pillar of the vehicle



Type plate

A Vehicle manufacturers

B Vehicle identification number (VIN)

VIN display
The display of the VIN takes place in the infotainment in the following menu item:

CAR > > Menu item for the Service

Or:

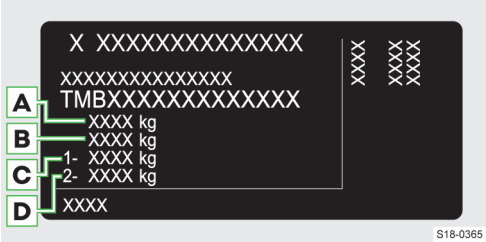
MENU > > > Menu item for the Service

Engine number
The engine number is embossed on the engine block.

Maximum permissible weights

The maximum permissible weights are listed on the nameplate.

The type plate is located at the bottom of the middle body pillar of the vehicle.



A Maximum permissible gross weight

B Maximum permissible towed weight (towing vehicle and trailer)

C Maximum permissible front axle load

D Maximum permissible rear axle load

Maximum permissible towed weight
The specified value is valid for altitudes up to 1000 m above sea level.

The engine output falls as the height increases, as does the ability to climb.

Therefore, for every additional 1,000 m in height (or part), the maximum permissible towed weight must be reduced by 10 %.

The towed weight is made up of the actual weights of the loaded towing vehicle and the loaded trailer.

Payloads
It is possible to calculate the approximate maximum payload from the difference between the permissible total weight and the operating weight.

The payload consists of the following components:

- The weight of the passenger
- The weight of all luggage and other loads
- The weight of the roof, including the roof rack system

- The weight of the equipment that is excluded from the operating weight
- Trailer bearing load for trailer towing » page 216

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of accident and danger of vehicle damage!
- Do not exceed the specified values for the maximum permissible weights.

Operating weight

Information about the operating weight

The specification corresponds to the lowest possible operating weight without additional weight-increasing equipment. This includes 75 kg driver's weight, the weight of the operating fluids and the on-board tool kit and a fuel tank filled to min. 90%.

Operating weight

Engine type	Gearbox	Operating weight (kg)	
		Octavia	Octavia Combi
1.5 l/96 kW TSI G-TEC	Manual gearbox	- [a]	- [a]
	DSG [b]	1414	1426
1.0 l/81 kW TSI e-TEC	DSG [b]	1341	1353
1.5 l/110 kW TSI e-TEC	DSG [b]	1378	1390
1.0 l/81 kW TSI	Manual gearbox	1301	1313
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	Manual gearbox	1315	1327
	Automatic gearbox	1341	1353
1.5 l/110 kW TSI	Manual gearbox	1338	1350/1392 [c]
2.0 l/140 kW TSI	DSG [b]	1438	1450
	DSG [b] 4x4	- [a]	- [a]
1.6 l/81 kW MPI	Automatic gearbox	1311	1323
2.0 l/85 kW TDI CR	Manual gearbox	1423	1435/1477 [c]
	DSG [b]	1438	1450
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	Manual gearbox	1424	1436
	DSG [b]	1461	1473
	DSG [b] 4x4	1554	1566/1608 [c]
2.0 l/147 kW TDI CR	DSG [b] 4x4	1548	1560/1602 [c]

[a] The values were not available at the time of going to press.
[b] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.
[c] Applies to the vehicles Octavia Combi Scout.

Engine type	Gearbox	Operating weight (kg)	
		Octavia RS	Octavia Combi RS
2.0 l/180 kW TSI	Manual gearbox	1501	1523
	DSG [a]	1532	1554
2.0 l/147 kW TDI CR	DSG [a]	1557	1579
	DSG [a] 4x4	1643	1665

[a] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.

ⓘ Ask for the exact vehicle weight in a specialist garage.

Vehicle dimensions

Dimensions

Specification		Value (in mm)	
		Octavia	Octavia Combi
Vehicle height	Basic dimension	1470	1468/1488 a)
	Vehicles with the 1.5 l./96 kW TSI G-TEC and 2.0 l./140 kW TSI engine	1469	1467
Vehicle width with folded-in mirrors		1829	1829
Vehicle width with folded-out mirrors		2003	2003
Ground clearance of the vehicle	Basic dimension	143	142/163 a)
	Applies to vehicles with a 1.5 l/96 kW TSI G-TEC engine	143	143
	Vehicles with 2.0 l/ 140 kW TSI engine	140	140
Vehicle length		4869	4869/4703 a)

a) Applies to the vehicles Octavia Combi Scout.

Specification	Value (in mm)	
	Octavia 4x4	Octavia Combi 4x4
Vehicle height	1468	1467/1487 a)
Vehicle width with folded-in mirrors	1829	1829
Vehicle width with folded-out mirrors	2003	2003
Ground clearance of the vehicle	139	141/161 a)
Vehicle length	4689	4689/4703 a)

a) Applies to the vehicles Octavia Combi Scout.

Specification	Value (in mm)	
	Octavia RS	Octavia Combi RS
Vehicle height	1456 a)/1457	1454 a)/1455
Vehicle width with folded-in mirrors	1829	1829
Vehicle width with folded-out mirrors	2003	2003
Ground clearance of the vehicle	128 a)/129	128 a)/129
Vehicle length	4702	4702

a) Applies to Octavia 4x4.

Engine specifications

1.5 l/96 kW TSI G-TEC engine

Output (kW at rpm)	96/5000-6000			
Highest torque (Nm at rpm)	200/1400-4000			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1498			
Body	Octavia		Octavia Combi	
Gearbox	Manual gearbox	DSG [a]	Manual gearbox	DSG [a]
Maximum speed (km/h)	- [b]	218	- [b]	212
With specified gear engaged	- [b]	6	- [b]	6
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	- [b]	9.6	- [b]	9.6

[a] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.

[b] The values were not available at the time of going to press.

1.0 l/81 kW TSI e-TEC engine

Output (kW at rpm)	81/5500	
Highest torque (Nm at rpm)	200/2000-3000	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	3/999	
Gearbox	DSG [a]	
Body	Octavia	Octavia Combi
Maximum speed (km/h)	208	201
With specified gear engaged	6	6
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.5	10.6

[a] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.

1.5 l/110 kW TSI e-TEC engine

Output (kW at rpm)	110/5000-6000	
Highest torque (Nm at rpm)	250/1500-3500	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1498	
Gearbox	DSG [a]	
Body	Octavia	Octavia Combi
Maximum speed (km/h)	230	218 [b]/224
With specified gear engaged	6	6
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.5	8.6/8.7 [b]

[a] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.

[b] Applies to the vehicles Octavia Combi Scout.

1.0 l/81 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at rpm)	81/5500	
Highest torque (Nm at rpm)	200/2000-3000	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	3/999	
Gearbox	Manual gearbox	
Body	Octavia	Octavia Combi
Maximum speed (km/h)	208	202
With specified gear engaged	6	6
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.8	10.9

1.4 l/110 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at rpm)	110/5000			
Highest torque (Nm at rpm)	250/1500-4000			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1395			
Body	Octavia		Octavia Combi	
Gearbox	Manual gearbox	Automatic gearbox	Manual gearbox	Automatic gearbox
Maximum speed (km/h)	226	221	220	216
With specified gear engaged	6	6	6	6
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.2	9.0	8.3	9.2

1.5 l/110 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at rpm)	110/5000-6000	
Highest torque (Nm at rpm)	250/1500-3500	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1498	
Gearbox	Manual gearbox	
Body	Octavia	Octavia Combi
Maximum speed (km/h)	231	220 [a]/225
With specified gear engaged	5	5
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.5	8.6/8.7 [a]

[a] Applies to the vehicles Octavia Combi Scout.

2.0 l/140 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at rpm)	140/4180-6000			
Highest torque (Nm at rpm)	320/1500-4180			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1984			
Body	Octavia		Octavia Combi	
Gearbox	DSG [a]	DSG [a] 4x4	DSG [a]	DSG [a] 4x4
Maximum speed (km/h)	240	- [b]	236	- [b]
With specified gear engaged	6	- [b]	6	- [b]
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	7.4	- [b]	7.4	- [b]

[a] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.

[b] The values were not available at the time of going to press.

2.0 l/180 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at rpm)	180/5000-6500 (5000-6700) [a]			
Highest torque (Nm at rpm)	370/1600-4300			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1984			
Body	Octavia RS		Octavia Combi RS	
Gearbox	Manual gearbox	DSG [b]	Manual gearbox	DSG [b]
Maximum speed (km/h)	250	250	250	250
With specified gear engaged	6	6	6	6
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	6.8	6.7	6.8	6.8

[a] Applies to cars with the EU6ZD emission standard.

[b] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.

1.6 l/81 kW MPI engine

Output (kW at rpm)	81/5800	
Highest torque (Nm at rpm)	152/3850-4100	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1598	
Gearbox	Automatic gearbox	
Body	Octavia	Octavia Combi
Maximum speed (km/h)	199	192
With specified gear engaged	5	5
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	12.4	12.5

2.0 l/85 kW TDI CR engine

Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1968			
Body	Octavia		Octavia Combi	
Gearbox	Manual gearbox	DSG [a]	Manual gearbox	DSG [a]
Output (kW at rpm)	85/2750-4250	85/3250-4250	85/2750-4250	85/3250-4250
Highest torque (Nm at rpm)	300/1600-2500	250/1500-3250	300/1600-2500	250/1500-3250
Maximum speed (km/h)	212	211	201 [b]/206	205
With specified gear engaged	6	7	6	7
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.3	10.6	10.4/10.6 [b]	10.8

[a] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.

[b] Applies to the vehicles Octavia Combi Scout.

2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR engine

Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1968					
Vehicle version	Octavia			Octavia Combi		
Gearbox	Manual gearbox	DSG [a]	DSG [a] 4x4	Manual gearbox	DSG [a]	DSG [a] 4x4
Output (kW at rpm)	110/3250 -4200	110/3000 -4200	110/3000 -4200	110/3250 -4200	110/3000 -4200	110/3000 -4200
Highest torque (Nm at rpm)	340/1600 -3000	360/1600 -2750	360/1600 -2750	340/1600 -3000	360/1600 -2750	360/1600 -2750
Maximum speed (km/h)	231	229	222	225	223	211 [b]/218
With specified gear engaged	6	7	7	6	7	7
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.7	8.7	8.4	8.8	8.8	8.5/8.7 [b]

[a] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.

[b] Applies to the vehicles Octavia Combi Scout.

2.0 l/147 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW at rpm)	147/3600-4100	
Highest torque (Nm at rpm)	400/1750-3500	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1968	
Gearbox	DSG [a] 4x4	
Body	Octavia	Octavia Combi
Maximum speed (km/h)	241	230 [b]/236
With specified gear engaged	7	7
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	6.6	6.7/6.8 [b]

[a] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.

[b] Applies to the vehicles Octavia Combi Scout.

Output (kW at rpm)	147/3600-4100			
Highest torque (Nm at rpm)	400/1750-3500			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1968			
Body	Octavia RS		Octavia Combi RS	
Gearbox	DSG [a]	DSG [a] 4x4	DSG [a]	DSG [a] 4x4
Maximum speed (km/h)	249	243	245	238
With specified gear engaged	7	7	7	7
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	7.4	6.8	7.4	6.8

[a] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.

Accident data recorder (Event Data Recorder)

The vehicle is equipped with an accident data recorder, hereinafter called as “EDR”. The purpose of the EDR lies in the data recording during a traffic accident or another extraordinary traffic situation, hereinafter called as “accident”.

Data is only recorded in the event of an accident in which the restraint systems are triggered.

The EDR records the accident in a short time (approximately 10 s), by showing the following information, for example:

- The function of certain systems in the vehicle.
- The seat belt status of the driver and front passenger.
- The actuation of the brake and accelerator pedals.
- The speed of the vehicle at the time of the accident.

The recorded data support the analysis of how the vehicle systems behaved shortly before, during and shortly after the accident. This enables them to clarify the circumstances of the accident.

The data relating to assist systems in the vehicle is also recorded. Whether for instance the affected systems were switched on or off at the corresponding time, whether they were only partially available or were inactive. There is also the possibility of tracking whether these vehicle functions controlled, accelerated or decelerated the vehicle during the accident. Depending on the equipment, these functions are, e.g:

- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC).
- Lane Assist (Lane Assist).
- Park Assist.
- Emergency braking function (Front Assist).

Under normal driving conditions, data is not recorded. There is no audio or video recording from the vehicle interior or surroundings. Personal data such as name, gender, age or place where the accident occurred is not stored in the EDR. However, third parties such as law enforcement authorities may use certain resources to connect EDR content to other data sources, and therefore deduce the identification of some of the people involved in the accident when investigating the causes of the accident.

For reading the EDR-Data, special equipment is required and the ignition switched on.

ŠKODA AUTO will not read or otherwise process any accident data from the EDR without the approval of the vehicle owner or other person authorised for use of the vehicle. Exceptions are specified in the contractual arrangements, or these are subject to generally binding regulations.

Due to legal requirements, ŠKODA AUTO is required to monitor the quality and safety of its products, meaning that it is only entitled to use data from the EDR to monitor the product on the market, for further research and development, and to improve the quality of the vehicle's safety systems. For the purpose of research and development, ŠKODA AUTO will also make data available to third parties. This is done exclusively in anonymous form, i.e. without any connection to the specific vehicle, the vehicle owner or any other authorised user.

Personal data

Personal customer data is collected, processed and used by ŠKODA AUTO in accordance with the provisions of the generally binding legal provisions in the area of personal data protection.

The current declaration on the protection of personal data is displayed using the following link or by reading the QR code:

https://www.skoda-auto.com/other/personal-data

Information about the radio systems in the vehicle

Your vehicle has various radio systems.

Manufacturers of this radio equipment declare that this equipment complies with the requirements of **Directive 2014/53 / EU** and the **Technical Regulation on Radio Equipment, approved by the Decision of the Cabinet of Ministers of Ukraine of 25 May 2017 no. 355**.

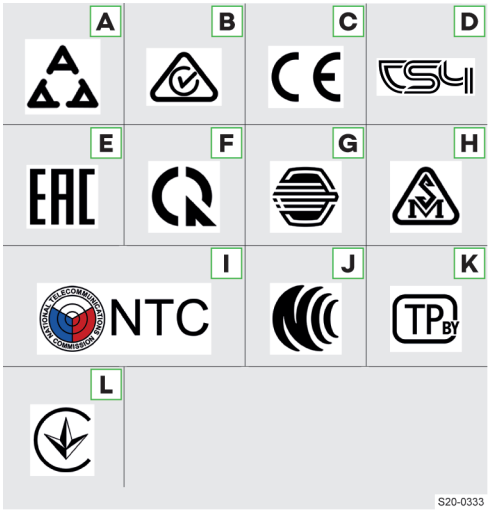
Information about **Directive 2014/53 / EU**on the approximation of the laws of the Member States relating to the marketing of radio equipment, **Technical regulation on radio equipment, approved by the decision of the Cabinet of Ministers of Ukraine of May 25, 2017 No. 355** as well as regarding **declaration of conformity** ,can be viewed on ŠKODA web pages using the following link or by scanning the QR-code:

https://www.skoda-auto.com/services/red-doc

After this, proceed as follows:

1. Select the desired region.
2. Select Download Declaration of conformity against the desired model, to receive the certificates.

Examples of labelling of radio systems



- **A** Serbia
- **B** Australia and New Zealand
- **C** Europe (countries that approve radio equipment as per EU guidelines)
- **D** Armenia
- **E** Russia
- **F** Vietnam
- **G** Mongolia
- **H** Moldova
- **I** Philippines
- **J** Taiwan
- **K** Belarus
- **L** Ukraine

Rights arising from defective performance, ŠKODA warranties

Rights arising from defective performance
Your ŠKODA Partner, as a seller, is liable to you for material defects in your new ŠKODA vehicle, ŠKODA Genuine Parts and ŠKODA Genuine Accessories, in accordance with the legal requirements and the purchase contract.

The buyer is entitled to assert the rights arising from defective performance with the responsible ŠKODA partner from the time of vehicle handover. The date of the vehicle handover and the vehicle identification number (VIN) are properly documented in the “Vehicle delivery documentation” chapter in this Owner's Manual.

ŠKODA warranty for new cars
As well as the legal rights arising from defective performance, ŠKODA AUTO grants you the ŠKODA warranty for new cars (hereinafter referred to as the “ŠKODA Warranty”), according to the conditions described below.

Under the ŠKODA Warranty, the company ŠKODA AUTO shall provide the following services[1)]:

- Free repair of damage due to a defect that occurs in your vehicle within two years of the start of the ŠKODA Warranty.
- Free repair of damage due to paintwork flaws that occur on your vehicle within three years of the start of the ŠKODA Warranty.
- Free repair of rust corrosion on the body, which occurs on your vehicle within twelve years of the start of the warranty. In terms of rust corrosion on the body, the ŠKODA Warranty shall cover only rust corrosion through body panels from the inside to the outside.

The start of the ŠKODA Warranty is the day on which the new car is handed over for use by a ŠKODA partner to the first buyer who is not a ŠKODA Partner[2)].

The ŠKODA Partner enters this date into the corresponding systems of the manufacturer. Any one ŠKODA Partner Partner can notify you of this date on request.

Fault rectification under the ŠKODA Warranty can be carried out by means of a replacement or repair of the defective parts. The ŠKODA Service Partner decides about the type of vehicle repair. The fault rectification takes place in accordance with the availability of the ŠKODA Service Partners and within a reasonable period of time. Replaced parts become the property of the ŠKODA Service Partner.

There shall be no further claims arising from the ŠKODA Warranty. In particular, no claim for replacement, no right of withdrawal, no claim to purchase price reduction, or provision of a replacement car for the duration of repair and compensation.

---

1) Based on the requirements of generally binding legal regulations or country-specific market requirements, the ŠKODA partner or importer can provide a warranty beyond the scope of the stated ŠKODA Warranty. This local warranty extends the scope of performance in accordance with the specific warranty conditions of ŠKODA partners or importers.

2) Due to the requirements of the generally binding country-specific regulations, the date of first registration can be given instead of the date of the vehicle handover.

The ŠKODA Warranty can be claimed at any ŠKODA Service Partner.

There are no claims under the ŠKODA Warranty if vehicle damage has occurred in causal connection with one of the following circumstances:

- The service work was not carried out on time and professionally according to the provisions of ŠKODA AUTO, or its execution was not proven by the customer when asserting claims under the ŠKODA Warranty.
- Damage has not been reported immediately to a specialist company or has not been properly remedied.
- Damage refers to parts that are subject to natural wear, such as tyres, spark plugs, wiper blades, brake pads and brake discs, clutch, bulbs, synchronizer rings, batteries, etc.
- External impact or influences (e.g. accident, hail, flood, fire etc.).
- Installation, connection of parts or accessories, other adaptation or technical modification of the vehicle not approved by ŠKODA AUTO (e.g. Tuning).
- Unauthorized use, improper handling (e.g. use in motor sport competitions or overloading), improper care or unauthorized maintenance.
- Non-compliance with provisions in the Owner's Manual or other factory-supplied instructions.

The customer shall prove the lack of causation.

The present ŠKODA Warranty shall not affect the purchaser's statutory rights arising from unsatisfactory performance in respect of the seller of the vehicle and possible claims arising from product liability laws.

ŠKODA Mobility warranty

The Mobility Warranty provides you with a sense of certainty for journeys in your vehicle.

If your vehicle is left on the road due to an unexpected fault, we can provide services to keep you moving as part of the mobility guarantee, including the following: technical assistance on the phone, breakdown assistance at the breakdown location, start-up on site, and towing to the ŠKODA service partner, if necessary.

If your vehicle is not repaired on the same day, then the ŠKODA Service Partner may, if necessary, arrange additional subsequent services, such as replacement transport (bus, train, etc.), the provision of a replacement vehicle, and the like.

Specific claims for free provision of services under the ŠKODA Mobility Warranty only exist if your vehicle has remained in a causal connection with a defect which is to be remedied on the basis of fulfilment under the ŠKODA Warranty.

Check the conditions for provision of the Mobility Warranty for your vehicle with your ŠKODA Partner. They will also inform you of the detailed terms and conditions of the Mobility Warranty in relation to your vehicle. In the event that your vehicle is not covered by a mobility warranty, he will inform you of the possibilities for subsequent conclusion.

Optional ŠKODA Extended Warranty

If you also purchased a ŠKODA Extended Warranty when purchasing your new car, ŠKODA AUTO will provide you with a free repair of vehicle damage caused by a defect in the vehicle during the warranty period.

The ŠKODA Extended Warranty for your vehicle is valid for the agreed period or until the agreed mileage limit is reached, whichever comes first.

For the assessment of claims from the ŠKODA Extended Warranty, the conditions of the ŠKODA warranty described above apply to the appropriate extent.

The fault rectification under the ŠKODA Extended Warranty can only be carried out by replacement or repair of the defective parts, whereby the ŠKODA service partner decides on the type of vehicle repair. The fault rectification takes place in accordance with the availability of the ŠKODA Service Partners and within a reasonable period of time.

There shall in any case be no entitlement to further claims from the ŠKODA Extended Warranty. In particular, no claim for replacement, no right of withdrawal, no claim to purchase price reduction, or provision of a replacement car for the duration of repair and compensation.

The previously mentioned paint warranty and the warranty against rust perforation are unaffected by the ŠKODA extended warranty.

The ŠKODA Extended Warranty does not apply to exterior and interior foils.

Your ŠKODA partner will provide you with information about the detailed conditions of the ŠKODA Extended Warranty.

The ŠKODA Mobility Warranty and the ŠKODA Extended Warranty are only available in some countries.

Index

Numbers and symbols

12 volt vehicle battery 185
Charge 185
Checking the condition 185
Discharge protection 185
Disconnecting and connecting 186
Fault 185
Safety 17
see 12 volt vehicle battery 185
12-Volt-vehicle battery 185

A

ABS 156
ACC 160
Automatic stop and start 160, 161
Distance adjustment 161
Interruption of cruise control 162
Accident data recorder 227
Activation of online services 139
Adaptive Cruise Control 160
Adaptive suspension 151
AdBlue
Checking 179
functionality 179
Indicator light 179
Refilling 179
Safety 17
standard 179
tank capacity 180
Air conditioning
see Climatronic 57
see Manual air conditioning 56
Airbag 45
Deactivating the airbags 46
Deactivating the front passenger airbag 47
Fault 46
Installation locations 46
Release 45
Safety 45
Alarm system 26
Trailer 27
All-season tyres 191
Ambient lighting 53
Analogue instrument cluster 64
Android Auto
Infotainment Bolero 104
Infotainment Columbus 130
Infotainment Swing 82
see digital version of the manual 5
Anonymous vehicle data 139
Apple CarPlay
Infotainment Bolero 104
Infotainment Columbus 130
Infotainment Swing 82
see digital version of the manual 5
Armrest
Front 38
rear 38
ASR 156
Assist systems
Driver assist 156
Park Assist 169
Safety 19
Assist systems for emergency situations 167
Auto Hold 155
Automatic braking
see Front Assist 157
Automatic gearbox 148
Manually changing gear with the shift paddles on the steering wheel 149
Automatic recuperation assistant
see Eco Assist 168
Auxiliary heating and ventilation 60
Change the battery in the remote control 62
Troubleshooting 61
Availability of the ŠKODA Connect services 138

B

Background lighting 53
Backrest
Load-through device 38
Battery acid 185
Bonnet 175
Boot
Double-sided floor covering 203
Fasteners 198
Fastening nets 201
Multifunctional pocket 201
Net partition 202
Rigid cover 203
roll-up cover 204
Transporting objects safely 19
Boot cover 203
Boot lid 31
Automatic locking 31
Contactless operation 32
manual operation 31
Manually unlock 33
to be set to the highest position 32
Troubleshooting 32
Boot storage
see boot lid 31
Brake fluid 154
Safety 17
Brake pads 154
Brakes 154
Breakdown call 145

C

Car adaptations
Recommendations 217
Safety 16
Cargo elements 198
Ceiling 211
Central locking 24
SAFE function 24
Central locking button 24
Centre console 11
Charging your phone wirelessly 210
Check the vehicle before your journey 17
Child lock 27
Child seat 42
Fastening using a belt 44
Grouping 43
i-Size 44
ISOFIX 44
Keyword child seat 42
on the passenger seat 42
Recommended child seats 43
Securing children properly 18
TOP TETHER 45
Types of mounting 45
Climatronic 57
Display in the centre console at the rear 59
Set classic air conditioning system for Columbus infotainment 59
set smart air conditioning 58
Set the classic air conditioning system for the Infotainment Swing 59
Start the operating menu 58
CNG 182
Comfort flasher 49
Setting 50
COMING HOME 51
Coming home, Leaving home
see digital version of the manual 5
Compartments 206, 207
Compressed natural gas 182
Control Centre
Infotainment Bolero 89
Infotainment Columbus 116
Infotainment Swing 71
see digital version of the manual 5
Coolant 176
Checking 177
Refilling 177
Safety 17
Specification 177
Temperature display 176
Troubleshooting 177
Warning lights 177
Cooling system 56, 58
Crew Protect Assist
see Proactive occupant protection 166
Cruise control system 159
Cup holder 211
Cybernetic security
Infotainment Bolero 98
Infotainment Columbus 124
Infotainment Swing 78

D

Data connection 143
Daylight running lights 48
DCC 151
Deactivating the front passenger airbag 47
Diesel 181
Misfuelling protection 182
Prescribed fuel 182
Refilling 182
Requirements for refuelling 181
Standards 181
Tank capacity 182
troubleshooting 182
Digital assistant Laura
Infotainment Columbus 115
Digital Assistant Laura
Infotainment Bolero 88
Digital instrument cluster 65
Distribution of the cargo 151
Door
Opening/closing 27
Drive assistant
see Travel Assist 164
Driver Alert 167
see fatigue detection assistant 167
Driver's seat 11
Driving data 66
Reset to default 67
Driving in neutral 149
DSR 156
Dynamic cornering lights
Activate 50
Deactivating 50
Full LED headlights function 48
Dynamic Light Assist
see Headlight Assist System 51

E

Earth point 186
Eco Assist 168
Economical driving 151
Economical driving style
see digital version of the manual 5
EDL 156
Electric parking brake 154
Electric windows 28
Activation 29
Force limiter 28
Operation 28
Troubleshooting 29
Electronic brake force distribution 157
Emergency
Emergency call 20

Using jump start cables 186
What to do after an accident 21
What to do in the event of a fire 22
Emergency Assist
see assist systems for emergency situations 167
Emergency call 20
Emergency equipment 197
Car jack 198
Tool kit 198
Emergency wheel 191
safe driving 19
Engine compartment 12
Coolant 176
Engine oil 175
Flap 175
Safety 17
Engine number 221
Engine oil 175
Changing 176
check with the dipstick 175
Indicator light 176
Refilling 176
Safety 17
Specification 176
Engine specifications
see digital version of the manual 5
EPC 178
Equipment in the luggage compartment 197
ESC 156
ESC Sport 156, 157
Exhaust gas control system 178
Exit warning 172
Explanations 7
Exterior
lighting 48
Exterior mirrors 39
Extinguisher 198

F

Fasteners in the boot 198
First aid kit 197
Flooring in the boot 203
Fog lights 49
front 49
Fogged windows 57, 60
Force limiter 29
Freewheel
Free-wheelingSee Driving in neutral 149
Front Assist 157
distance warning system 157
Front seat
Electrically operated 34
Manually operated 34
Front vehicle area 8
Fuel
CNG 182
Diesel 181
Petrol 180
Fuel filler flap 179
Fuel filter 178
Fuel tank
Opening the flap 179
Full LED headlights 48
Fuses 187
In the engine compartment 189
Replacing 187

G

G-TEC (natural gas vehicle) 182

H

Hand Brush 210
Hazard warning light system 49
Head-Up display 66
Headlight Assist System 51, 52
Headlights
Full LED 48
Full LED setting 50
Headlight range control 50
Headrests 37
Heated steering wheel 63
Heated windscreen 62
HHC
see Hill Hold Control 156
High beam
Headlight Assist System 51
High-beam
High-beam assist system 51
High-beam assist system 51
Hill Hold Control 156, 167
functionality 167
working conditions 168
Hook
in interior 207
in the luggage compartment 198

I

i-Size 44
Ice scraper 10
Immobilizer 147
Indicator lights
Overview 12
Info call 145
Infotainment Bolero 85
Infotainment Columbus 111
Infotainment keyboard
see digital version of the manual 5
Infotainment overview
Infotainment Bolero 85
Infotainment Overview
Infotainment Columbus 111
Infotainment Swing 69
Infotainment screen
Infotainment Bolero 86
Infotainment Columbus 112
see digital version of the manual 5

Infotainment Screen
Infotainment Swing 70
Infotainment settings
Infotainment Bolero 85
Infotainment Columbus 111
Infotainment Swing 69
Infotainment Swing 69
Infotainment system
see digital version of the manual 5
Instrument cluster
analogue 64
digital 65
Instrument cluster display 64
Instrument cluster display 64
Interior
lighting 52
Interior fittings
12 volt socket 207
230 volt socket 207
Car park ticket holder 206
Coat hook 207
Glasses compartment 206
Make up mirror 206
Map pockets 207
Storage compartments 206, 207
Ticket holder 206
Interior lighting 52
Ambient lighting 53
Operation 52
see digital version of the manual 5
Interior mirror 39
ISOFIX 45
eyelets 45
Placement on the seat 44

J

Jump start cables 186

K

Key 23
Key switch for airbag deactivation 47
Key switch for the front passenger airbag
Key switch faulty 47
Keyboard
Infotainment Bolero 87
Infotainment Columbus 114
Infotainment Swing 70
Keyless locking (KESSY) 25
Kick-down 149

L

Lane Assist 163
see Lane Assist 163
Lane change assist system
siehe Side Assist 164
Launch control 149
LEAVING HOME 51
Lever
buttons 64
Headlight Assist System 52
High-beam assist system 51
Main beam 49
Turn signal 49
Windscreen wipers and washers 54
Liability for defects
see warranty 229
Light 48
Automatically switch on and switch off 48, 49
Clean headlights 54
CORNER function 48
Daylight running lights 48
Driving in the opposite direction of traffic 50
Fog light 49
Full LED headlights 48
Hazard warning light system 49
Headlamp flasher 49
Headlight Assist System 51
Headlight range adjustment of headlights 50
High-beam assist system 51
Indicator light 50
Low beam 48, 49
Main beam 49
Operation 48
Parking light 49
Side light 49
Troubleshooting 50
Turn signal 49
Light Assist
see high beam assist system 51
Light switch 48
Lighting
Ambient lighting 53
interior 52
outer 48
Lighting range 50
Limiter
see speed limiter 158
Load-through bag 206
Load-through device 38
Lock 24
Locking elements
in dash panel 187
Low beam 48
luggage compartment
Variable loading floor 204
Luggage compartment 197
12 volt socket 197
Hitch switch 197
Lever for folding forward the rear seat backrests 197
Storage compartments 197

M

Main beam 49
Management of online services 142
Manual air conditioning 56

Settings 56
Start the operating menu 56
Manual gearbox 148
MATRIX headlights
see Headlight Assist System 51
MCB 157
Media
Infotainment Bolero 94
Infotainment Columbus 120
Infotainment Swing 75
see digital version of the manual 5
Traffic 76
Memory function of the seat 35
see digital version of the manual 5
Mirror
see exterior mirror 39
MirrorLink
Infotainment Bolero 104
Infotainment Columbus 130
Infotainment Swing 82
see digital version of the manual 5
Mirrors
see interior rear-view mirror 39
Mobile device management
Infotainment Bolero 98
Infotainment Swing 78
Mobile Device Management
Infotainment Columbus 124
Infotainment Swing 78
MSR 156
Multi-collision brake
see MCB 157
Multifunctional pocket 201
Multimedia holder 211
see digital version of the manual 5

N

Navigation
Infotainment Bolero 106
Infotainment Columbus 133
see digital version of the manual 5
Net partition 202
Nets 201
Notes on starting 147

O

Offroad 150
Oil
see engine oil 175
Online services
Breakdown call 145
Info call 145
User management 140
Online Services
Availability 138
Data connection 143
Management of online services 142
Personalisation 142
Remote access to the vehicle 146
Service Scheduling 146
Shop 144
ŠKODA Connect 138
ŠKODA Connect application 138
System update 143
User registration and activation of the ŠKODA Connect services 139
Vehicle status report 146
Operating the vehicle
Use jump start cables 186

P

Park Assist systems 169
Park steering assistant 173
Troubleshooting 175
Parking
Parking aid 169
Rear Traffic Alert 172
Reversing camera 170
Stop the vehicle safely! 20
Parking aid 169
Parking brake 154
see electric parking brake 154
Parking light 49
ParkPilot
see parking aid 169
Partition in the boot 205
Passenger seat 11
Pedestrian recognition 158
Personal data 139, 228
Personalisation 142
see digital version of the manual 5
Petrol 180
prescribed fuel 181
prescribed petrol 180
Refilling 180
Requirements for refuelling 180
Standards 180
Tank capacity 181
Troubleshooting 181
Phonebox 210
Power steering 39
Practical equipment
12 volt socket 197, 212
230 volt socket 213
Cup holder 211
Load-through bag 206
Multimedia holder 211
Storage compartment for hand brush 210
Storage compartment for the umbrella 210
Storage compartment under the front seat 209
Tablet holder 211
Predictive cruise control 160

R

Radiator blinds 178
Radio

Infotainment Bolero 90
Infotainment Columbus 116
Infotainment Swing 72
see digital version of the manual 5
Radio systems in the vehicle 228
Rear armrest
see digital version of the manual 5
Rear fog light 49
rear 49
Rear seats
Folding down 36
Rear Traffic Alert 172
Rear vehicle area 10
Rear view camera 170
Rear View Camera
Operation 170
Recirculated air mode 56, 58
Refilling
AdBlue 179
Coolant 177
Diesel 182
Engine oil 176
Petrol 180
Reflective vest 197
Release 24
Remote access to the vehicle 146
see digital version of the manual 5
Remote control of auxiliary heating and ventilation
Change the battery 62
Restarting the Infotainment system
Infotainment Bolero 86
Infotainment Columbus 112
Infotainment Swing 70
Rights arising from defective performance
see warranty 229
Roll-up boot cover 204
Roof rack 214
Attaching the carrier 214
Roof load 214
safe driving 20

S

Safe driving 19
SAFE function 24
Safety
Before your journey 16
Car adaptations 16
Child seat 18
Driving through water 20
Emergency call 20
Exiting the vehicle 20
New brake pads 16
New tyres 16
Running in the engine 16
safe driving 19
Sensors and cameras 16
sit properly 18
Transport cargo and objects 19
Transporting children 18
Warning lights 19
Weather conditions 20
Webbing route 18
What to do after an accident 21
What to do in the event of a fire 22
Seat belts 41
Adjusting the height 41
Automatic belt retractor 41
Belt tensioners 41
Blocked strap 42
correct arrangement 18
Fastening and unfastening 41
Reversible belt tensioner 41
Status display 41
Seat heating 63
Seat massage function 36
see digital version of the manual 5
Seat ventilation 63
Seats 34
Folding down 36
Heating 63
ISOFIX 45
Memory function of the seat 35
sit safely 18
TOP TETHER 45
Ventilation 63
Service events 217
Interval 217
Resetting information 217
Show service appointment 217
Service position for windscreen wiper arms 55
Service schedules
see digital version of the manual 5
Service Scheduling 146
Service work 217
SET button 68
Set tyre pressure values 196
Setting personal data protection 139
Shop 144
Side Assist 164
Side light
see Parking light 49
Skis 206
Sliding/tilting roof 29
electric operation of the sun blinds 30
Operation 29
SmartLink
Infotainment Bolero 104
Infotainment Columbus 130
Infotainment Swing 82
see digital version of the manual 5
Snow chains 191
Sockets
12-volt socket 212
230-volt socket 213
safety 17
Spare wheel 191
safe driving 19

Speed limiter 158
Indicator light 158
Start 147
START-STOP 147
Starter button 147
Steering column lock 39
Steering wheel 38
buttons / dial 64, 65
Buttons/dial: 38
correct position 18
Heating 63
Manually changing gear with the shift paddles on the steering wheel 149
Stopping the engine 147
Storage 206, 207
Sun protection 31
electric operation of the sun blinds 30
Operation of the rear sun protection roller blind 30
Operation of the sun blinds for the rear door windows 30
Supported media files
see digital version of the manual 5
Supported media sources
see digital version of the manual 5
Surround View
see Top View 171
Switching low beam on automatically 48
Switching process
Manual gearbox 148
System
Infotainment Bolero 85
Infotainment Columbus 111
Infotainment Swing 69
System update 143

T

Tablet holder 211
see digital version of the manual 5
Tank capacity
Diesel 182
Petrol 181
Technical data 221
Dimensions 223
Telephone
Infotainment Bolero 99
Infotainment Columbus 125
Infotainment Swing 79
see digital version of the manual 5
Tips for economical driving 151
Tiptronic 149
Tool 198
TOP TETHER 45
eyelets 45
Top View 171
Topping up
Windscreen washer fluid 55
Touch operation
Infotainment Bolero 86
Infotainment Columbus 113
Infotainment Swing 70
Tow hitch 214
Troubleshooting 215
Vertical load 216
Tow rope 153
Towing a trailer 151
Safety 20
Trailer Stability Assist 157
Towing lug 153
Towing the vehicle 153
Traffic accident
Data recorder 227
Emergency call 20
What to do after an accident 21
Traffic Sign Recognition 165
Trailer 151
Alarm system 27
Coupling and uncoupling 215
Permissible load 152
safe driving 20
Swing out the tow bar and back in 215
Trailer Stability Assist 157
Transport
Roof rack 214
Tow hitch 214
Transporting objects safely 19
Travel Assist 164
TSA
see Trailer Stability Assist 157
Turn signal 49
Type plate 221
Tyre pressure monitor 195
Tyres 190, 191
Breakdown set 194
Labelling overview 190
Pressure 195
Snow chains 191
Tread wear indicators 190
Tyre pressure monitor 195
Wear indicator 190

U

Umbrella 210
Unlock 25
Update Infotainment
Infotainment Columbus 112
Infotainment Swing 70
Update of the system and infotainment
see digital version of the manual 5
Updating infotainment
Infotainment Bolero 86
USB 206, 207
User management 140
User registration 139

V

Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment 204
Vehicle battery
48 V battery 213
Vehicle cleaning
Exterior 219
Instructions for cleaning the interior 218
Instructions for cleaning the outer area 220
Interior 218
Vehicle dimensions 223
Vehicle driving mode 150
Eco 150
Individual 150
Normal 150
Offroad 150
Sport 150
Vehicle height 223
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 221
Vehicle length 223
Vehicle status 68
Vehicle status report 146
see digital version of the manual 5
Vehicle width 223
Vest
see reflective vest 197
VIN
see vehicle identification number 221
Virtual cockpit
see digital instrument cluster 65
Voice control
Infotainment Bolero 88
Infotainment Columbus 115
see digital version of the manual 5

W

Warning lights
Foreword 12
Warning triangle 197
Warranty 229
Mobility warranty 230
Optional Extended Warranty 230
Rights arising from defective performance 229
Warranty for new cars 229
Waste container 211
Water in the fuel filter 178
Weight 221
Wheels 190
Breakdown 191
Change 192, 193
Cover caps for the screws 196
Full wheel covers 196
Overview of tyre labelling 190
Pressure change 191
Spare wheel and emergency wheel 191
Tread wear indicators 190
Tyre pressure 195
Tyre pressure monitor 195
Wear indicator 190
Wi-Fi
Infotainment Bolero 102
Infotainment Columbus 128
Infotainment Swing 81
see digital version of the manual 5
Window 28
heating 62
Windscreen washer fluid
How is the washer fluid refilled? 55
Level too low 55
Windscreen washer system
see windscreen wiper and washer 54
Windscreen wiper and washer
Refill windscreen washer fluid 55
Windscreen washer fluid level too low 55
Windscreen wipers and washers 54
automatic rear window wiping 54
automatic wiping 55
Replace the windscreen wiper blade 56
Unfold the windscreen wiper arms 55
Winter tyres 191

X

XDL + 156